



DME Server Administration Reference

DME 4.6

Document version 1.11

Published 10-05-2017

Contents

Introduction	11
Copyright information	11
Company information	12
Typographical conventions	12
About DME	13
<i>Features and benefits</i>	<i>13</i>
About the DME Server	15
<i>Supported platforms</i>	<i>15</i>
DME server architecture	17
One server, many connectors	17
The DME server	19
The connector	20
<i>The group graph</i>	<i>21</i>
<i>Load balancing and failover</i>	<i>22</i>
The AppBox Gateway	22
The MDM server	23
Multiple domains and directory servers	23
<i>Connector broadcasting</i>	<i>24</i>
<i>Connector routing</i>	<i>26</i>
<i>Multiple AD domains</i>	<i>28</i>
DME services	28
Navigating the web interface	29
Browser requirements	30
Logging in to the DME server	31
Main tabs	32
Page menu	33
Table	34
Toolbars	35
<i>Tab toolbar</i>	<i>35</i>
<i>Filter bar - old style</i>	<i>35</i>
<i>Filter bar - new style</i>	<i>36</i>
<i>Table navigation bar</i>	<i>41</i>

<i>DME toolbar</i>	42
About DME	42
Keyboard shortcuts.....	43
Online help.....	43
Devices	46
Columns	47
<i>User ID</i>	47
<i>User name</i>	48
<i>Phone model</i>	48
<i>Phone number</i>	49
<i>Version</i>	50
<i>Key</i>	50
<i>Last sync.</i>	51
<i>License</i>	51
<i>Platform</i>	52
<i>Operator</i>	52
<i>Country</i>	52
<i>OS</i>	53
<i>Groups</i>	53
<i>Roaming</i>	53
Tab actions.....	53
<i>New user</i>	53
<i>New device</i>	55
Page menu	56
<i>User actions</i>	56
<i>Device actions</i>	58
<i>Send to device</i>	63
<i>Client signing</i>	70
<i>Misc. actions</i>	71
Setting up users	74
<i>User</i>	75
<i>Collab.conf</i>	81
<i>Devices</i>	83
<i>Filter groups</i>	83

<i>RSS feeds</i>	84
Setting up devices	84
<i>Information</i>	86
<i>Settings</i>	89
<i>Files</i>	91
<i>Applications</i>	92
<i>Sync. table</i>	93
<i>Schedule</i>	94
<i>SIM</i>	95
<i>Users</i>	96
<i>Group</i>	96
<i>Asset</i>	96
<i>Provisioning</i>	97
<i>OMA DM</i>	99
<i>Apple MDM</i>	99
<i>Apple profiles</i>	102
Provisioning	103
Android MDM options	103
<i>Android client provisioning</i>	103
<i>Android device management</i>	113
Apple iOS MDM options	113
<i>Apple iOS client provisioning</i>	114
<i>Apple MDM enrollment</i>	115
<i>Apple iOS profiles</i>	120
<i>Apple iOS in-house software</i>	126
<i>Apple iOS device management</i>	127
Windows Phone MDM options	128
<i>Windows Phone client provisioning</i>	128
Log	130
Finding information	131
Columns	131
Log categories	133
<i>Adaptive push</i>	133
<i>Audit</i>	134

Central Services	134
Collaboration.....	136
Connector	139
Device	140
Network.....	140
Notification	143
Provisioning	144
Software install	144
Synchronizing.....	145
System	147
Log4j setup.....	149
Example one: S/MIME warnings	150
Example two: Surveillance log	151
Settings and log output.....	152
Logging AppBox File Browser	153
Analyzer	155
Statistics	155
DME traffic	155
Voice traffic	161
Messaging traffic	164
Data traffic.....	164
Analyzer reports.....	164
Manage reports	166
View reports	168
Device statistics	170
View device list.....	170
Server	172
Server configuration	172
Client	172
Authentication	174
Collaboration.....	178
Data.....	183
SMS modem	186
Central Services	189

Web.....	191
Monitor.....	194
Notifications	202
Schedule.....	204
Clients.....	212
Process.....	214
History	219
Pending.....	220
Log.....	221
Notifications on iOS devices	221
Notifications on Android devices	224
Notifications on Windows Phone devices	225
File browser	227
Setting up WebDAV.....	227
Creating and editing file shares	228
Enabling the file shares in AppBox.....	232
Default settings.....	233
Settings.....	234
Schedule.....	234
Files	234
Applications	235
RSS feeds	236
Group management.....	237
Group hierarchy and inheritance.....	237
Adding groups	240
View and apply settings	242
Delete group.....	246
Update references.....	246
Directory group priority	246
Certificates.....	247
S/MIME certificates.....	247
MDM.....	251
License.....	259
Company	260

Server	261
Users and devices	261
Limits	262
Usage	263
EULA	265
Runtime	265
SMS commands	265
Active clients	265
Show directory groups	267
Connector	268
Connectors	268
Users	271
Connector tab actions	272
Setting up connectors	273
Main	274
Domain	276
Authentication	283
E-mail and PIM	285
Functions	304
Search	304
Log	311
Appendix A: Device settings	312
E-mail and PIM settings	312
E-mail settings	313
E-mail folder settings	317
Calendar settings	319
Contacts settings	322
To-do settings	324
Notes settings	325
Preferences settings	326
General settings	326
Security settings	331
Scheduled sync. settings	338
Adaptive Push settings	339

<i>Android security settings</i>	341
Miscellaneous settings	343
<i>Desktop settings</i>	344
<i>Shortcuts settings</i>	345
<i>File sync. settings</i>	346
<i>RSS settings</i>	346
<i>SmartLink settings</i>	346
<i>AppBox settings</i>	347
<i>VoIP settings</i>	348
Appendix B: External MDM integration	350
Integrating DME and MobiControl	351
<i>Existing DME MDM enrollment</i>	352
Workflows	352
Add device in MobiControl	353
DME installation through external MDM	355
<i>Application Catalog rules</i>	355
<i>DME installation message template</i>	360
Appendix C: File synchronization	362
Rules	363
<i>New file sync rule</i>	364
<i>Delete file sync rule</i>	370
Files.....	371
<i>New file</i>	371
<i>Maximum file size</i>	372
<i>Delete file</i>	373
Appendix D: Traffic logging	374
Enabling traffic logging	374
Voice traffic.....	375
GPRS traffic.....	376
Messaging traffic	377
MCC, MNC and operator names.....	378
Appendix E: myDME	380
Device overview	381
Certificates.....	382

<i>Brief introduction to S/MIME</i>	382
<i>S/MIME and DME</i>	386
Appendix F: AdaptivePush™	388
The technology behind AdaptivePush™	388
Troubleshooting network push	389
Appendix G: The Basic MDM client	391
Basic MDM client features	391
<i>Settings synchronization</i>	392
<i>Cost control</i>	393
<i>Security</i>	393
<i>Asset management</i>	393
<i>File synchronization</i>	394
Managing Basic MDM clients	394
<i>Deploying Basic MDM</i>	394
<i>Anonymous users</i>	395
Appendix H: Provisioning on legacy platforms	396
Client deployment recommendations	397
<i>Deploying to BlackBerry devices</i>	398
<i>Deploying to Java devices</i>	399
<i>Deploying to Symbian devices</i>	399
<i>Deploying to UIQ devices</i>	400
<i>Deploying to Windows Mobile devices</i>	400
Installing software	402
<i>Push installation</i>	402
<i>OMA DM installation</i>	403
<i>Mark for installation</i>	408
<i>SSL certificates</i>	408
<i>Other modes of deployment</i>	410
Software	411
<i>New devices vs. existing devices</i>	411
<i>DME clients</i>	412
<i>Other software</i>	431
<i>Status</i>	431
<i>Installation log</i>	437

<i>Device types</i>	437
Access points	440
<i>GPRS</i>	441
<i>WLAN</i>	444
Provisioning status.....	446
<i>Provisioning actions</i>	448
Send to device	449
Appendix I: Other methods of deployment	450
Ad-hoc installation	450
Symbian auto-installation	450
<i>Preparing the memory card</i>	451
<i>Auto-install process</i>	452
Self-provisioning	453
<i>Setting up</i>	453
<i>Requesting software or configuration</i>	454
<i>Examples</i>	455
Web-based self-provisioning	456
<i>Accessing the service</i>	457
<i>Acceptable POST parameters</i>	457
Appendix J: Custom graphics on Android and iOS	459
Custom graphics on Android	459
Using pngMagic	461
Custom graphics on Apple iOS.....	464
Appendix K: Web Services	467
API versions	467
Syntax	467
DmeAdminWS operations.....	468
<i>approveDevice</i>	468
<i>deleteDevice</i>	468
<i>getLogEntries</i>	469
<i>removeClientSignature</i>	470
<i>wipePhone</i>	470
MyDmeWS operations.....	471
<i>approveDevice</i>	471

<i>deleteDevice</i>	472
<i>getApiVersion</i>	473
<i>getDevices</i>	473
<i>getLogEntries</i>	473
<i>getRoleIds</i>	474
<i>getSettings</i>	474
<i>removeClientSignature</i>	475
<i>resetSettings</i>	476
Types	476
<i>Device</i>	476
<i>DeviceSetting</i>	477
<i>LogEntry</i>	480
Exceptions	481
<i>MyDMEException</i>	481
List of procedures	482
Index	485

Introduction

Welcome to the reference manual for the DME server. This manual goes through every feature of the DME Server version 4.6, describing how they are used, and making recommendations of best practice. The manual describes the latest minor release (build or service pack) of the DME server - small variations in the user interface may occur between minor releases.

Copyright information

Copyright © 2007-2017 Soliton Systems.
All rights reserved.

Due to continued product development, this information may change without notice. The information and intellectual property contained herein is confidential between Soliton Systems and the client, and remains the exclusive property of Soliton Systems.

If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us through our customer support services. Soliton Systems does not warrant that this document is error-free. Furthermore, Soliton Systems does not warrant that the illustrations and screenshots used in this document reflect your version or the latest version of the program described. For the latest version of this product documentation, go to the **DME Resource Center**
<http://resources.solitonsystems.com>.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of Soliton Systems.

DME, DME Sync, and AdaptivePush are trademarks of Soliton Systems.

Microsoft SQL Server, Microsoft Exchange, Windows, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Active Directory are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Lotus Notes® and Domino® are trademarks or registered trademarks of IBM Corporation, registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Apple, Apple iPhone, iPod touch, and iPad are trademarks or registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

All other trademarks are property of their respective owners.

DME is in part developed and sold under license from Good Technology.

Company information



Spotorno Allé 12

2630 Taastrup

Denmark

Phone: +45 70 21 68 00

E-mail: mail@solitonsystems.com

Website: **Soliton website** <http://solitonsystems.com/>

Typographical conventions

This guide uses special formatting to signify that a text has a special meaning. The following kinds of formatting is used:

Formatting	Type of information
Bold	Interface elements that you can select, such as menu options or command buttons.
Special Bold	Items that can be selected from a list of options, or text that you must type.
<i>Emphasis</i>	Applies emphasis to a point, and is also used for variable expressions such as parameters.
Key+Key	Key combinations where the user must press and hold down one key and then press another, for example, Ctrl+P or Alt+F4 .
	<i>Caution</i> - performing the action described may lead to loss of data or involves other risk.

About DME

DME (Dynamic Mobile Exchange) offers synchronization of push e-mail, PIM information (calendar, contacts, to-dos), and optionally files, to mobile devices. It fully integrates mobile device management with state-of-the-art security and efficient software deployment. DME is a mobile client/server solution that works with mobile phones, smartphones and PDAs using Android, Apple iOS, Symbian, Windows Mobile, and soon Windows Phone 8*) as operating system. DME is developed by Soliton Systems.

The solution enables large and mid-size enterprises to deliver business mobility services to employees and to effectively manage and control mobile devices without compromising security. DME is device, network and operator independent and offers unparalleled TCO, unprecedented data and device security, and a very intuitive interface for users and administrators.

*) Please note that not all server features are supported on all platforms. Contact your DME Partner for specific inquiries.

Features and benefits

- ❖ **Convenient for the user:** Push e-mail, calendar, contacts and to dos
With DME on your mobile phone, smartphone, or PDA, you get

your most critical and often used office tools in your pocket wherever you are, whenever you need it. E-mails appear on your phone the moment they hit your office mailbox.

- ❖ **Quickly back in the game:** *Instant service recovery*
Should your phone get lost or stolen, a new DME client can be pushed to a new phone in a few minutes after you purchase a new DME supported phone or borrow one from someone else – no matter where it happens.
- ❖ **Fretless security:** *Mobile security policy enforcement*
E-mails are encrypted over the air and on the device itself using full encryption (AES 128-bit or stronger). Shell protection of the entire phone, requiring domain password to access all features except picking up calls, gives you further security options.
- ❖ **Freedom and ease-of-use:** *Effective control of all devices*
Gain a complete overview of your devices – regardless of make, model, or platform. Information about the device model, versions and programs installed on the device is listed in the web-based DME control center for easy administration. Features, settings and available applications and network connections are all controlled centrally and can only be changed by the users to the extent this is allowed by centrally applied security policies. Dividing the devices into groups makes it easy to change settings/features for many devices at a time.
- ❖ **Ease-of-use comes in many flavors:** *Simple support and administration*
Push software and upgrades via OMA, Apple MDM, SMS or WAP to the users, permit them to serve themselves, or automatically upgrade software when the users log on. For support purposes, retrieval of device configurations and connection set-up makes it possible for you to help users who cannot connect, and a log of user actions assists you in identifying the problems and solving them. Notification of changes to server status can be sent to the DME administrators to ensure they are alerted to problems quickly.
- ❖ **Freedom of choice:** *Versatility*
Works on any available network (WLAN/Wi-Fi, GSM, GPRS, 4G, 3G/UMTS, EDGE...), operator, and on most devices from leading manufacturers. Works on Lotus Domino and/or Microsoft Exchange collaboration systems.

Please note that the above applies to the full DME client. Note also that due to limitations specific to the some client platforms, a few of the features mentioned above are not supported on DME for those platforms. Contact your DME partner for specific inquiries.

About the DME Server

DME is a client/server application. The DME users, who receive secure push e-mail and PIM information on their devices, and the secure connection to the devices, are called the *clients*. The devices and connections are managed on the *server*.

The server provides a secure link between a collaboration system (Microsoft Exchange or IBM Lotus Domino) and the clients.

The server is controlled through the DME Server Web Administration Interface, which is described in this manual. The DME server interface gives you control of all the many features of the DME server:

- ❖ Access the interface securely (via HTTPS) from anywhere
- ❖ Easy remote control of device functionality
- ❖ Theft/loss protection – flush data on mobile device
- ❖ Push device clients, software upgrades and other applications to existing or new mobile devices
- ❖ Enforce company policies by controlling device settings and blocking applications
- ❖ Send out OTA (for example GPRS settings) and SMS messages to any device
- ❖ Search and filter information
- ❖ View detailed log of all user actions – provide better user support
- ❖ Statistics module for monitoring cost of ownership
- and much more.

In this manual, the term *DME server* or just *DME* is used for the DME Server Web Administration Interface.

Supported platforms

For current information about DME requirements in terms of server hardware, connector hardware, operating systems, browsers, collaboration systems, and database systems, please download the **DME System Requirements** document from the **DME Resource Center**

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/system-requirements>
(Documentation > Find documents).

For current information about supported DME clients, see the **DME Resource Center**

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/support/supported-devices-search>
(Support > Supported devices).

The **DME Server Installation Guide** contains information about how to install the server and connect it to various subsystems. The latest installation guides can be found at the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center -

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist> (Documentation > Installation Checklist) along with related information.

For further information, please contact your DME partner.

DME server architecture

The DME Server is designed to be so flexible that it can be installed into almost any existing IT infrastructure, even when the infrastructure is different at different sites in an enterprise. The price of flexibility is complexity, and the DME Server is a complex system. Reading this section will be helpful to get a deeper understanding of how the DME Server is designed, and how the different components in a DME solution relate to each other.

One server, many connectors

A key feature of the DME server is that it can be installed into enterprises which are geographically separated into many locations and segmented into many networks, possibly using different operating systems and even different collaboration systems. This flexibility is due to the *DME connector*. The concept of connectors allows for the installation of a "DME module" wherever the circumstances call for it. The only requirement for installing a DME connector is that the DME users for the connector in question are found in the same LDAP/AD directory as that of the main DME server.

There is no such thing as a "stand-alone DME server" - at least one connector must be installed to service the users, but it may be installed on the same machine as the DME server.

As of DME 4.0, the installation of a *G/On server* (or *DME AppBox Gateway*) is required to support the licensing model and to provide the DME AppBox functionality to DME clients.

A few examples of the use of connectors:

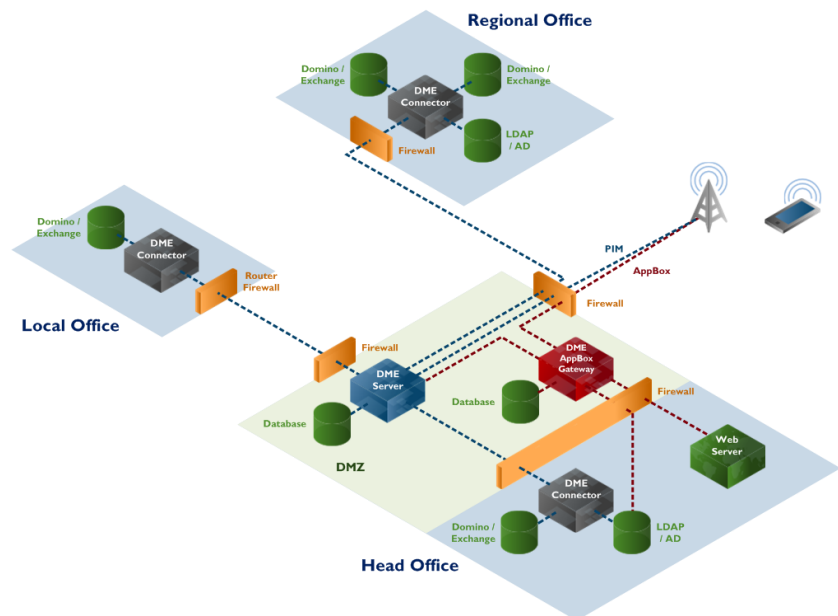
1. The head office is situated in Cape Town, South Africa, and this is also where the DME server is installed. A branch office in Burundi suffers from expensive and unstable international phone lines. A DME connector is installed in the Burundi office, servicing the employees working out of that office only. The connector connects to the DME server at regular intervals, and the connector handles the notification and synchronization using local phone lines.
2. The head office in London, UK, is connected with a branch office across town using a private wide-area network (WAN). However, because the IT security policy restricts the use of firewall rules for incoming traffic from the DME server, a DME connector is installed at the branch office. Since the connector always initiates

communication with the DME server, no rules for incoming traffic need to be defined on the head office firewall.

3. A company running Lotus Domino acquires a company which runs MS Exchange. Before the two systems are integrated, a DME connector is set up at the acquired company to service mobile Exchange users.
4. A large company can split the processing load by installing the DME server and database on one machine, and a number of DME connectors on one or more server machines.

So there can be many reasons to set up connectors instead of letting all users run on the same DME server: Cost control, stability, security, compatibility, and performance.

The DME architecture shown by the above examples can be illustrated thus:

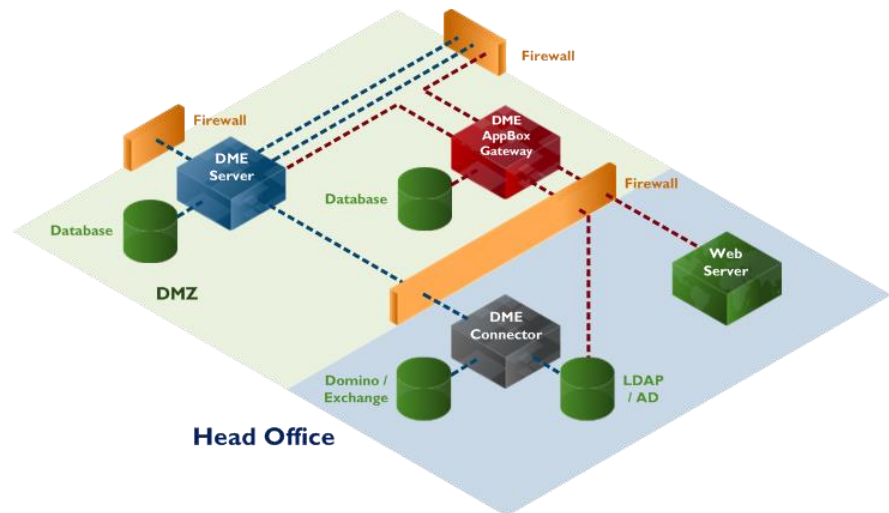


Please note that there are many ways in which a DME system can be set up. The model outlined above is not prescriptive.

The following sections go into more detail about the server and the connector components.

The DME server

The DME server and the DME database are installed into a DMZ section of the company network.

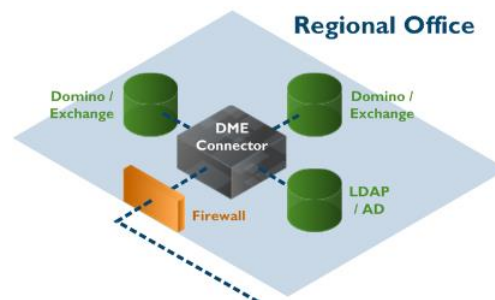


Firewall rules are set up to allow inbound traffic (seen from the perspective of the DME server) for the phones, the DME Administration interface, any connectors that will be set up, and communication with the DME AppBox Gateway. The server and the database can be installed on separate physical servers, using MS Windows or several flavors of Linux as operating system.

The DME server manages all aspects of the DME solution that are the same across all connectors: statistics, device management, logging, and provisioning. Furthermore, it is used to manage the connectors themselves.

The connector

The connector manages the connection to the external collaboration system (or other system). One connector can service any or all users in the system. In order to find out which users are to be serviced by which connector, the DME server issues a *user broadcast*. This means that the first time a user needs to be serviced (for instance the first time the user connects to DME), the server asks all registered connectors if they are able to service the user in question. The server then connects the user to *the first connector* to return with a positive answer. It may be that several connectors are able to service the user in question, but the first one to report back "wins" the right to service that user. In other terms, a *route* has been established to the user. The DME server saves this route and will in future only ask that particular connector to service that particular user - unless the connector is down for some reason. For more information, see **Main** on page 274, which describes the connector configuration.



Separate connectors can be set up to service users in different areas.

- ❖ Authentication (checking user credentials and reporting the user's directory group memberships to the server).
- ❖ Notification and synchronization of any or all of the following resources: e-mail, e-mail folders, out-of-office rules, contacts, calendar information, tasks/to-dos, RSS feeds, and SmartLink URLs. Note that the available resources depend on DME version and license.
- ❖ Search any or all of the following: Free time and rooms & resources (when booking meetings), and contacts (Global Address Book search).

Since the same user can be serviced by different connectors, a user may have several routes to several connectors. See **Users** on page 271, which describes the routing table overview.

The connector can be installed as a separate process on the DME server machine, or on a separate machine anywhere in the network.

All connectors must retrieve information from the same directory server. The directory "tree" (the group graph) is built by one connector in the system, as described below.

The group graph

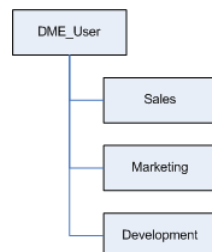
In order for users to be able to synchronize their data using DME, they must be members of a certain group in the directory (LDAP or Active Directory), usually called **DME_User**. The group name can be different, but in the following it will be referred to as **DME_User**.

(A note on terminology: In DME, LDAP and Active Directory are called *directory servers*. Sometimes the term LDAP is used to cover both - AD is just a specific implementation of LDAP.)

Some LDAP servers only return the group of which a particular user is a direct member. In most enterprises, however, the **DME_User** group would consist of other groups, resulting in a nested structure. In order to be able to verify that users belong in the **DME_User** group, even when the group is nested several layers deep, DME system builds a so-called "group graph". The group graph provides an efficient way to evaluate if a subgroup is actually given the right to synchronize or not.

For example: You want to allow the use of DME for the following groups: **Sales**, **Marketing**, **Development**.

You then create a **DME_User** group, and add those subgroups into **DME_User**. This can be represented as follows:



When DME requests user information about user **Tubbs**, the LDAP server might return that **Tubbs** is member of the following groups: **Sales**, **All Users**, **US Users**, **SaaS**.

Using the group graph, DME is able to recognize that the group **Sales** has actually been given **DME_User** rights.

In the **Domain** setup panel of the connector you can specify if the current connector should be used for reading the group graph. For more information, see **Domain** on page 276.

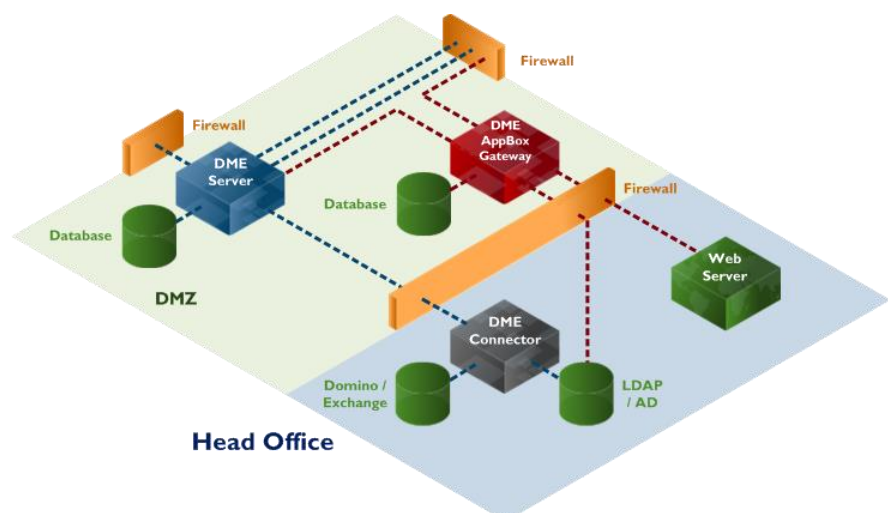
Load balancing and failover

If more than one connector is available to service a user, and all those connectors are labeled as primary connectors, connectors will service the users according to a "round robin" principle. Say there are three connectors associated with the same group of users, the system will consider the load on all three connectors and which connector last serviced the user and, all other factors being equal, will select the next server in line to service the user.

This architecture can also be set up to include a failover scenario where a "failover connector" is dedicated to take over for several or all connectors in the occasion that they fail or are taken out of service for any reason. The failover connector is not used until one or more of the connectors are overloaded. Once this happens, the failover connector assumes the entire traffic burden, regardless of whether or not there are other connectors available to help share the processing load.

The AppBox Gateway

If you want to use the DME AppBox functionality, a DME AppBox Gateway (also known as *G/On* server) is required as part of a DME Server 4.0 installation. The AppBox Gateway controls access to DME AppBox apps. For more information about the DME AppBox, see **AppBox settings** on page 347.



The AppBox Gateway is typically installed in the DMZ, has an inbound connection from the DME server and an outbound connection to the devices. Furthermore, it requires access to a web server and the user directory.

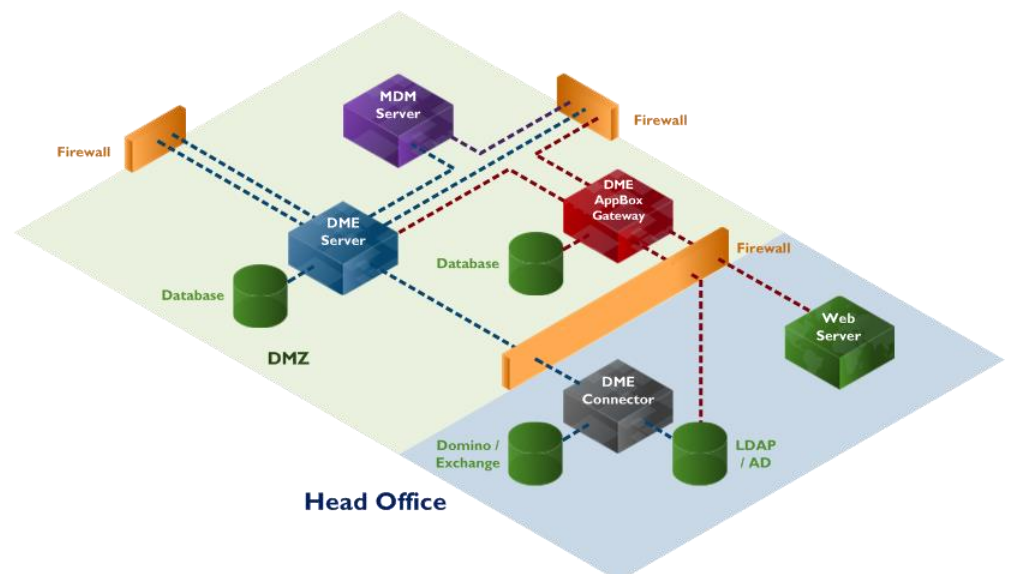
For more information about installing and configuring the DME AppBox Gateway, please see the reference material in the DME installation checklist at the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center -

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist>.

The MDM server

If you have configured DME to use an external MDM server (see **MDM** on page 251), it will typically be placed in the DMZ along with DME. The MDM server will have a connection to devices for management, and a connection to DME. DME uses this connection to check if a device is enrolled with the external MDM server before allowing the device to connect. For more information about setting up the MDM server, see the documentation of your MDM provider.

With external MDM added, the architecture looks like this:



For more information about working with external MDM, see **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350.

Multiple domains and directory servers

In several scenarios, it is relevant to set up multiple connectors:

- ❖ In a mixed Exchange and Domino environment
- ❖ If your AD tree consists of several trusted domains
- ❖ If you run DME for multiple companies (hosting only)

The common denominator between these scenarios is that user information is potentially fetched from different sources (different directory servers).

Only *one* connector should serve as group graph builder, even if you have multiple directory servers. If you use more than one, you must make sure that all directory servers have the exact same structure to represent all groups that are related to **DME_User**. This can easily be done within one enterprise, but in case you are working with multiple companies, you cannot easily enforce the same naming convention for all groups.

In that latter case, for multiple companies (domains), you can build a group graph if you have one central LDAP for all companies (such as Hosted Exchange).

When you have distributed LDAP servers, there are two ways to ensure that users are authenticated correctly:

1. Create a **DME_User** group in each LDAP, and add **users** to them (group nesting is not supported).
- or*
2. Manually specify which users are serviced by a specific connector. This is of course only feasible and manageable for testing and for companies with a very limited number of users (see also the section **Connector routing** on page 26 below).

Connector broadcasting

The default way for a connector to find which users to service is to use *broadcasting*, as mentioned in the section **The connector** on page 20 above. By this method, the DME server poses a request to the joint grouped of connectors, asking: "Which of you is able to synchronize e-mail (or calendar, etc.) for user **xxx** ?". As each function (authentication, e-mail, calendar, contacts, etc.) is independent of the others, there could potentially be a different connector for each function, even for the same user.

When a DME connector sends a positive reply, a *route* is saved for this combination of user and function for the connector.

For example, in order to check if the password of a new user is valid, the DME server asks all the connectors for which the "Authentication" function is enabled to check if they are able to authenticate this user.

Since each connector may in principle be configured to a different domain, the DME server sends the user name as entered in the DME client, which is usually the short name for the user.

Then the specific domain name is appended by each connector, and the credentials are tested against the defined Authentication LDAP server.

Note

In a setup that involves multiple companies, this is a major security risk, since the user name and password are sent to all connectors.

See below for a resolution to this security risk, and see **Connector routing** on page 26 for alternative configuration options in multi-company setups.

DME user domain

To avoid broadcasting across companies, users can be set up to authenticate using their *full user domain name*, such as **user@domain.local** or even something that looks like an e-mail address **user@domain.com** - the difference being that **domain.com** is not always an SMTP domain, but can be an AD domain.

The DME user domain is set up in the **Domain** section of the connector setup page.

The **DME user domain** field should only be completed when users log in to DME using the full **user@domain** format.

The **@domain** part is used by the connector to answer authentication requests concerning this specific domain only.

Note

In 95% of DME installations, there will be only **one** domain, and the field must therefore be left blank.

See **Domain** on page 276 for more information.

Connector settings

When multiple connectors are set to **Automatic** in the **Route users** part of the **Supported users** section of the **Domain** connector setup page (meaning that they use *broadcasting*), they must be configured in exactly the same way.

They must all be set to either **Primary** or **Failover** in the **Main** connector setup section, and they must connect to the same backend servers, both LDAP and collaboration servers in order to service the same users.

If you want to specify which connector should service users from an Exchange 2003 environment compared to users from Exchange 2007/10 (which are two different e-mail systems seen from a DME perspective), you must use a specific *routing*. See below.

Connector routing

In order to ensure correct routing between multiple connectors, you must define groups and configure the connectors to service specific groups. This requires that the user/group membership information is known in order for DME to correctly send the request to the appropriate connector.

The following is an example of a mixed configuration:

 Linux AD Connector		              
 Notes Session 32bit		             
 Linux Exchange 2007		             

In this example, the **Linux AD Connector** is doing group graph and Authentication only. Specific users are routed to the **Notes Session 32bit** connector, and a specific group is routed to the **Linux Exchange 2007** connector.

Since there is only one group graph LDAP, the groups that are relevant for Domino users would need to be created in the Active Directory as well.

Group configuration

As an example of configuring connectors for specific groups, consider an example where you need to support both Exchange and Domino users. You want to configure DME in such a way that members of the **DME_Exchange** group are served by the connector named **DME Exchange**, and members of the **DME_Domino** group are served by the connector named **DME Domino**.

In this scenario, you would have two directory servers: Active Directory and Domino Directory.

As explained in the section about the group graph (see **The group graph** on page 21), you need to build a group graph "tree" in which **DME_Exchange** and **DME_Domino** are members of the same company, so that users of both groups can synchronize with DME.

In this example, we furthermore want to force a specific connector to service only members of a specific group.

You can configure each connector to be responsible for one or the other group only. However, if you do this, you must understand the following:

- ❖ Only one connector must be set up to build the group graph, as the Domino and the AD group structure would differ.
- ❖ You must choose one directory (AD or Domino Directory) where groups from both systems must be created (both **DME_Exchange** and **DME_Domino**).
- ❖ The user name must be the same on AD and Domino in order to build the user/group relationship.

DME caches the user/group relationship in order to send the request to the correct connector. In the above example, when an unknown user tries to connect to DME, the DME server is not able to verify if the user is member of **DME_Exchange** or **DME_Domino**, because the user has not yet been cached. Therefore you will get an error in the log, saying that "No route for user is available".

The DME server will then ask all connectors that are set to **Automatic** (broadcasting) to check which groups this user is member of.

As only one connector is set to broadcasting, this connector will be responsible to get the information that this user is member of either **DME_Exchange** or **DME_Domino**. Once the group membership has been established, DME will be able to route to the appropriate connector.

Therefore the recommendation is to use *Broadcasting*, and to add **DME_Exchange** and **DME_Domino**, respectively, as the LDAP group in which the connector should look for user information. This is done in the field **Additional DME_User group** in the connector setup panel **Domain** (see **Domain** on page 276). This way, the members of **DME_Exchange** would only be served by the connector where **DME_Exchange** is specified as additional **DME_User** group.

Individual user configuration

When you configure a connector to route to a specific list of users, you are not limited by the above mentioned LDAP issues. DME is using the information provided by the DME client, that is the user name, and can match that against the LDAP server defined for the connector.

This way, the DME Server knows that all requests for this user have to be passed to the specific connector. You still need a LDAP server to gather information such as the full user name and e-mail address for the user, as well as group membership to check if the user is member of **DME_User** and thus able to synchronize.

Multiple AD domains

Up until DME 4.1 SPI, you needed one connector per AD domain that you wanted to serve. With 4.1 SPI, DME supports cross-domain search, enabling one connector to serve users from multiple domains through the use of the Microsoft Global Catalog.

You can set up your AD and DME to support AD trees and AD forests. The DME Exchange integration documentation describes two scenarios:

1. Where **AD1** and **AD2** are two top-level domains in a domain forest
2. Using **AD2** as a child domain of **AD1** in a domain tree

You can find this documentation at the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center -

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist>. See also the description of the directory server setup: see **Domain** on page 276.

DME services

The DME Server and the DME connectors are run as services on the operating system. If you should need to restart them for any reason, use the following commands.

On *Windows*, the services are stopped, started, and restarted through the Services control panel in Windows, or you can use `net start <service>` or `net stop <service>` from a command prompt. The service names are the following:

- ❖ The DME Server:

`dmeserver`

- ❖ The DME connector:

`dmeconnector`

On *Linux*, the installer creates start/stop scripts named after the server instance. The default instance name is `base`.

- ❖ The DME Server:

```
service dme_<instance_name> start OR  
service dme_<instance_name> stop
```

- ❖ The DME connector:

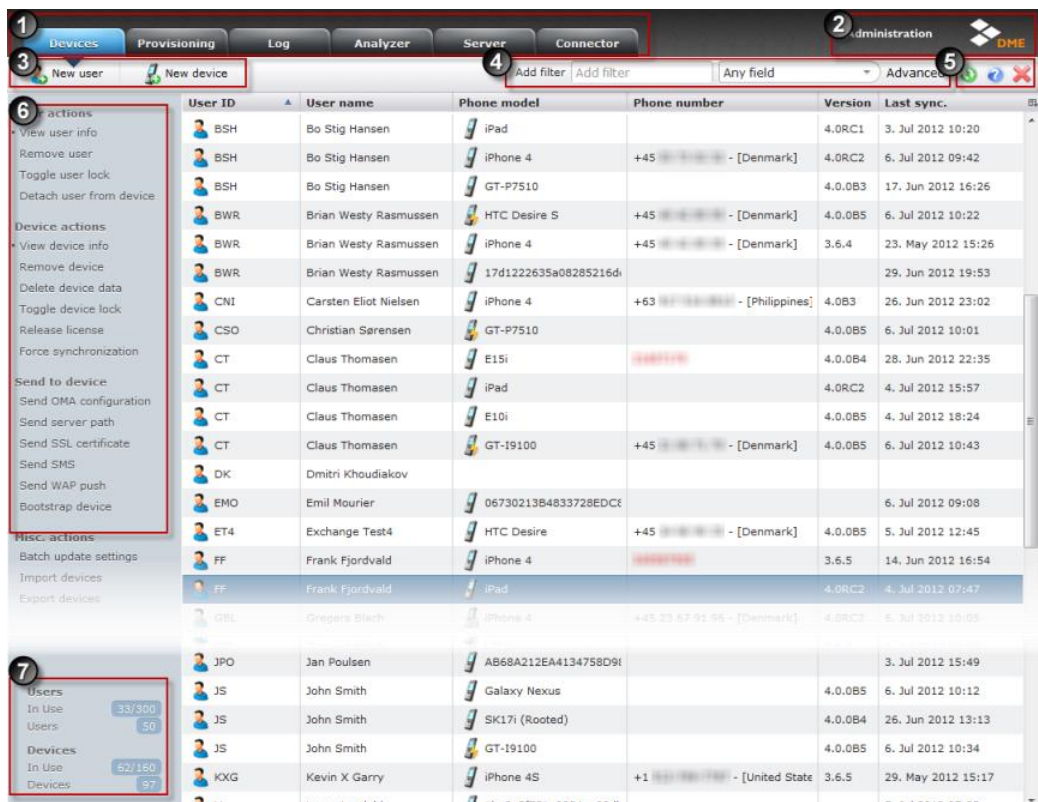
```
sh dmec_<instance>.sh start OR  
sh dmec_<instance>.sh stop
```

The script must be found in the `/etc/init.d` folder.

Navigating the web interface

The information and features in the DME server are presented in a number of browser pages. This section describes each element in the interface. Please note that a number of functions are accessible using keyboard shortcuts. The available keyboard shortcuts are described in the section **Keyboard shortcuts** on page 43.

The illustrations below show a number of interface elements in the DME Server Web Administration interface.



User ID	User name	Phone model	Phone number	Version	Last sync.
BSH	Bo Stig Hansen	iPad		4.0RC1	3. Jul 2012 10:20
BSH	Bo Stig Hansen	iPhone 4	+45 99 99 99 99 - [Denmark]	4.0RC2	6. Jul 2012 09:42
BSH	Bo Stig Hansen	GT-P7510		4.0.0B3	17. Jun 2012 16:26
BWR	Brian Westy Rasmussen	HTC Desire S	+45 99 99 99 99 - [Denmark]	4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:22
BWR	Brian Westy Rasmussen	iPhone 4	+45 99 99 99 99 - [Denmark]	3.6.4	23. May 2012 15:26
BWR	Brian Westy Rasmussen	17d1222635a08285216d			29. Jun 2012 19:53
CNI	Carsten Eliot Nielsen	iPhone 4	+63 99 99 99 99 - [Philippines]	4.0B3	26. Jun 2012 23:02
CSO	Christian Sørensen	GT-P7510		4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:01
CT	Claus Thomasen	E15i	+45 99 99 99 99	4.0.0B4	28. Jun 2012 22:35
CT	Claus Thomasen	iPad		4.0RC2	4. Jul 2012 15:57
CT	Claus Thomasen	E10i		4.0.0B5	4. Jul 2012 18:24
CT	Claus Thomasen	GT-I9100	+45 99 99 99 99 - [Denmark]	4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:43
DK	Dmitri Khoudiakov				
EMO	Emil Mourier	06730213B4833728EDC			6. Jul 2012 09:08
ET4	Exchange Test4	HTC Desire	+45 99 99 99 99 - [Denmark]	4.0.0B5	5. Jul 2012 12:45
FF	Frank Fjordvald	iPhone 4	+45 99 99 99 99	3.6.5	14. Jun 2012 16:54
FF	Frank Fjordvald	iPad		4.0RC2	4. Jul 2012 07:47
GBL	Gregers Blach	iPhone 4	+45 23 87 91 98 - [Denmark]	4.0RC2	6. Jul 2012 10:03
JPO	Jan Poulsen	AB68A212EA4134758D9			3. Jul 2012 15:49
JS	John Smith	Galaxy Nexus		4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:12
JS	John Smith	SK17i (Rooted)		4.0.0B4	26. Jun 2012 13:13
JS	John Smith	GT-I9100		4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:34
KXG	Kevin X Garry	iPhone 4S	+1 951 986 1986 - [United State]	3.6.5	29. May 2012 15:17

The columns of the device table are described in the following sections.

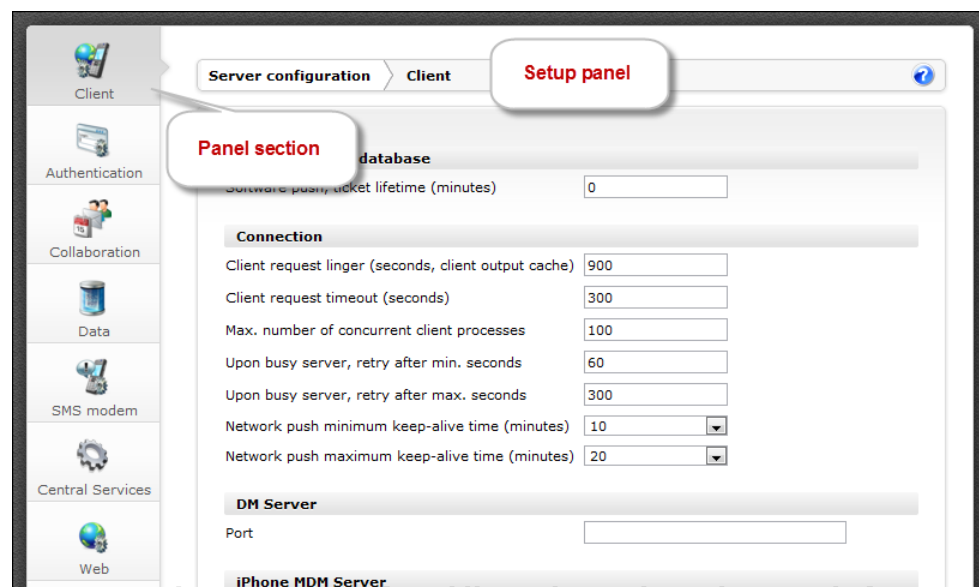
The numbered areas highlighted with a red square are described in these sections:

1. Main tabs - see **Main tabs** on page 32.
2. About DME - see **About DME** on page 42.
3. The tab toolbar, containing the actions that are available in the current context - see **Tab toolbar** on page 35.

4. The filter bar, which lets you filter for relevant information - see **Filter bar - new style** on page 36.
5. The DME toolbar with general options - see **DME toolbar** on page 42.
6. The page menu with the functions that are available in the current context - see **Page menu** on page 56, on page 33.
7. License statistics (**Devices** page only) - At the bottom left on the page, a small table shows license statistics:
 - ❖ Number of User licenses in use/Available
 - ❖ Number of licensed users
 - ❖ Number of Device licenses in use/Available
 - ❖ Number of licensed devices

For an overview of the DME licensing model, see **License** on page 259.

Some pages give access to editing or setting up an item, for instance a device, a user, or an aspect of the server configuration. Such pages are called *setup panels*, and they contain a number of *panel sections*. The image below shows the server configuration setup panel.



The following sections describe the main elements of the DME web interface.

Browser requirements

To access the DME Web Administration Interface, you must use one of the following browsers (minimum version):

- ❖ Google Chrome version 11
- ❖ Safari version 5
- ❖ Firefox version 4

Other browsers may work, but are not officially supported.

Furthermore, some windows in the DME interface require a minimum screen resolution of 1280x1024 pixels. If the screen resolution is less than that, a message will appear when you launch the DME Web Administration Interface:

✓ DME has not been certified to work with this screen size.

Logging in to the DME server

The DME server administration interface is web-based, and you log in to the interface from a supported browser (the **DME System Requirements** document at the **DME Resource Center** <http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/system-requirements>).

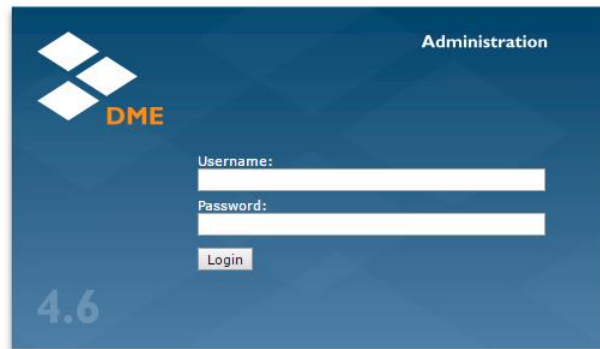
Your DME partner who installed the DME system will provide you with a URL. Note that access to DME must be secure (must use the HTTPS protocol). A typical URL looks like the following:

```
https://dme.your-domain.com:8080
```

The :8080 part of the URL example above is the standard port number. By accessing the DME administration interface through this port, which is defined during installation of the DME server, you can be sure to be able to access the interface, even if the server is very busy. The server has set aside special resources for monitoring this port.

Please note that since DME 3.0 SP 3, you cannot access the DME administration interface using `localhost` or `127.0.0.1` as server address.

When you browse to the supplied URL, the following login screen is shown:



To log in to the DME server, you have to be member of either the **DME_Admin** or **DME_Superuser** group. This can be a local DME group or an LDAP/Active Directory (AD) group. For more information about user access and group memberships, please see **About users** on page 78.

Enter your user name and password, and click **Login**.

In a default installation, a local system user named **SYSADM** exists. This user is member of the local **DME_Admin** group. This way, it is always possible to log in, even if no connection to LDAP/AD is available.

Main tabs

All DME control options in the DME server are divided into *tabs* along the top edge of the window. The currently selected tab is shown in a contrasting color, as in the example below where the **Server** tab is selected.



When you open the DME Server Web Administration Interface, the default tab is **Devices**. You can switch to another tab by clicking the name of the tab. To refresh the data shown in a tab, click the tab again.

This manual is structured around tabs, and describes each tab in its order of appearance.

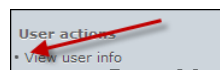
Page menu

To the left on each page, a *page menu* gives access to functions that apply to the current tab. The page menu below is from the **Devices** tab.

In the **Devices** tab, the page menu only enabled the functions that apply to the device or devices currently selected in the table to the right of the menu. In the first version of the page menu below, a device with an associated user has been selected. In the second example, a user with no associated device has been selected. Note the inactive (gray) menu items.

User actions • View user info Remove user Toggle user lock Detach user from device Device actions • View device info Remove device Delete device data Bootstrap device Toggle device lock Send to device Send OTA configuration Send server path Send SSL certificate Send SMS Send WAP push Force synchronization Misc. actions Batch update settings Import devices Export devices	User actions • View user info Remove user Toggle user lock Detach user from device Device actions • View device info Remove device Delete device data Bootstrap device Toggle device lock Send to device Send OTA configuration Send server path Send SSL certificate Send SMS Send WAP push Force synchronization Misc. actions Batch update settings Import devices Export devices

Two items are used more often than the others: **View user info** and **View device info**. They are marked with a small dot to make them stand out more:



Double-clicking a device corresponds to selecting **View device info**. Some functions are general, and do not apply to any device in particular, for example **Import devices**.

The page menu is divided into categories of related functions, each of which is described in separate sections in this manual.

Table

A tab may contain information in a *table*, for example the table listing all the devices owned by your company. The table is divided into *items* (rows) and columns.

Most tables can be sorted. To sort a table, click the header of the column by which you want to sort the information.

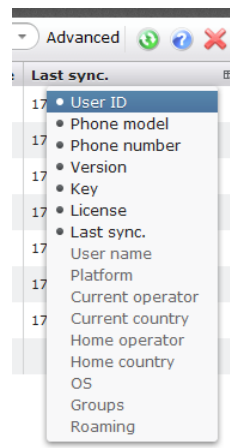
1. Click once to sort in ascending order.
2. Click again to sort in descending order.

The current sort order is shown by a ▲ or a ▼ in the column header.

To select an item in a table, simply click it. Double-click to edit the item.

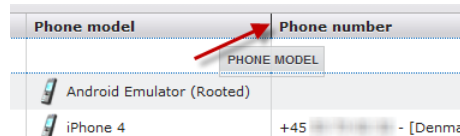
To select multiple items in a table (for instance devices in the **Devices** tab), click one device, and then Ctrl+click other devices to select them individually, or Shift+click to select the devices listed between the last selected device to the device you click on. Selected items are clearly marked in a contrasting blue color.

A number of columns are displayed by default. Click the column selection button  to see the available columns and to choose which columns you want displayed:



In this example from the **Devices** tab, you can choose to see eight more columns: **Key**, **Platform**, **Current** and **Home operator**, **Current** and **Home Country**, **OS**, **Groups**, and **Roaming**. Click each one to add it to the list of visible columns. Note that not all tables allow you to select the columns you want to see.

You can also move the columns around. Simply grab a column header and drag it to the new location. The new location is indicated by a fully drawn line between the column headers where the column will be dropped:



The column settings are retained between DME sessions - DME "remembers" your choices when you log out and log back in again.

Toolbars

A number of toolbars may be displayed below the main tabs area.

Tab toolbar

The **Devices** and **Connector** tabs, as well as several setup panels and elsewhere, show a *tab toolbar* along the top of the page, just below the main tabs. This toolbar contains actions that apply to the current tab or item being edited - for instance, creating, deleting, or performing some action on a device. The tab toolbar actions apply to the currently selected item or items, or to the item currently being edited in a setup panel. The tab toolbar shown above is the tab toolbar from the main **Devices** tab.

The tab toolbar will change depending on which function is selected in the page menu or which panel section is opened.

This is the tab toolbar from the main **Devices** tab. It also contains text:



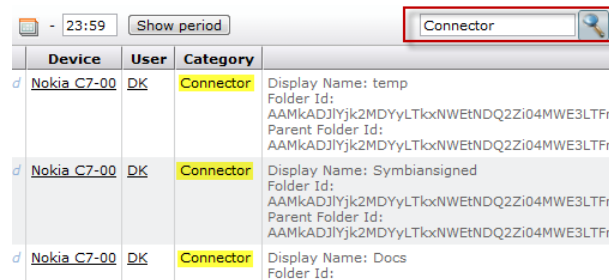
This is the tab toolbar from the device setup panel:



Filter bar - old style

The look-and-feel of the DME web administration interface is undergoing a general brush-up. Until that process is completed, there are two types of **Filter bar** in DME - the old style and the new style.

The old-style filter bar is used in the **Log**, **Provisioning**, **Analyzer**, and **Connector** tabs.



Device	User	Category	
d Nokia C7-00	DK	Connector	Display Name: temp Folder Id: AAMkADJlYjk2MDYyLTkxNWUeNDQ2Zi04MWE3LTNm Parent Folder Id: AAMkADJlYjk2MDYyLTkxNWUeNDQ2Zi04MWE3LTNm
d Nokia C7-00	DK	Connector	Display Name: Symbiansigned Folder Id: AAMkADJlYjk2MDYyLTkxNWUeNDQ2Zi04MWE3LTNm Parent Folder Id: AAMkADJlYjk2MDYyLTkxNWUeNDQ2Zi04MWE3LTNm
d Nokia C7-00	DK	Connector	Display Name: Docs Folder Id: ..

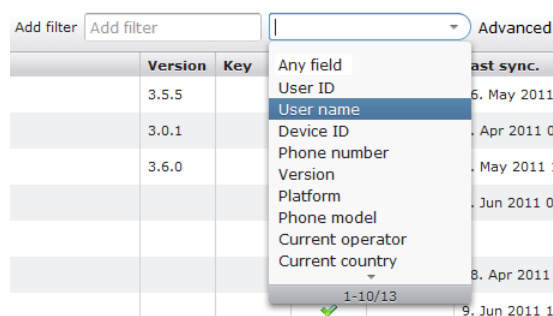
The *filter bar* is located near the middle of the toolbar area. With the filter bar, you can *filter* the items displayed in the current view.

In the text filter box (indicated in red in the graphic above) you can enter a text and click the magnifying glass icon. The table will then only show items that contain the text you entered. The text can be found in any column. For example, in the **Log** tab you can type "Connector" and press **Enter** or click the magnifying glass icon to reduce the list to only show entries that pertain to the **Connector** category. Note that if any of the other rows happen to contain the word "Connector" in any column, then they will be shown as well.

Whenever a filter is applied to a table view, the magnifying glass icon is shown with a recessed background. To turn the filter off, click the magnifying glass icon again.

If you switch to another tab that contains a text filter box, any selection in the filter bar will be retained, and the table will be filtered according to your selection.

Filter bar - new style



Version	Key	
3.5.5		6. May 2011
3.0.1		1. Apr 2011 0
3.6.0		1. May 2011 :
		1. Jun 2011 0
		8. Apr 2011
		9. Jun 2011 1

Another type of *filter bar* is shown in the **Devices** tab. With this filter bar, you can limit your search to just one column, or you can apply advanced filters to the page.

It is important to note that unlike previous versions, there is no *table navigation bar* in the **Devices** tab from version 3.6 (for more information, see **Table navigation bar** on page 41). This means that there is no paging mechanism - all devices are shown on the same page. DME reads the devices from the database as you scroll down the page. This is why DME sometimes stops for a moment and displays something like this:



This happens when the page display cannot keep up with the database activity caused by your scrolling.

To apply a filter to the **Devices** tab, enter some text in the **Add filter** box. Then choose which column you want to search in the drop-down selection box next to the **Add filter** text box. The default selection is **Any field**. Note that you can search in fields that are not currently shown - for instance, you can search for a user name even if the **User name** column is not currently shown.

As you type a column to filter by, the list shrinks as you type. For instance, to select **Version**, you just need to type a **V** to reduce the selection to **Version** only.

With the search criterion and the column selected, press **Enter** to execute the search. The **Devices** page now shows only the items that match your filter. The **Add filter** box is cleared, and your search criterion is added as a button along the top edge of the page. In this example, the user has searched for the devices belonging to the user **AGO**:

User contains ago  Clear all	
User	Phone model
 AGO	 XDeviceEmulator
 AGO	 HTC Snap S521
 AGO	 9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A838741
 AGO	 HD7 T9292

The new, gray button shows the filter criterion used (**User contains**) and the value of the filter (**ago**). To return to the original, unfiltered view, click the small  at the right-hand side of the filter button.

If multiple filters are selected (see the next section), you can click the **Clear all** button to return to the unfiltered view.

Multiple filters

In the **Devices** tab, it is possible to use the filter bar to apply multiple filters to the default view. When you do this, DME used a built-in logic to decide whether to use the filter criterion to add to the list of displayed devices, or to shrink the list. In technical terms, a list grows if a boolean **OR** is used, and a list shrinks if a boolean **AND** is used between the criteria. This is best illustrated with an example.

In the previous section, the DME administrator searched for devices belonging to the user **AGO**:

User contains ago	Clear all
User	Phone model
AGO	XDeviceEmulator
AGO	HTC Snap S521
AGO	9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A83874
AGO	HD7 T9292

If the DME administrator adds the following criterion: **User contains nif**, the list will look like this:

User contains ago

User contains nif

Clear all

User	Phone model
 AGO	 XDeviceEmulator
 AGO	 HTC Snap S521
 AGO	 9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A83874
 NIF	 Nokia E72
 AGO	 HD7 T9292

As you can see, the device belonging to user **NIF** has been *added* to the list.

Now say that the DME administrator adds the following criterion:

User contains ago

User contains nif

Country:Denmark

Clear all

User	Phone model
 NIF	 Nokia E72

Now the list is shrunk to only display those among the selected users whose home country is **Denmark**.

This can be expressed like this in boolean terms: (User:ago OR User:nif) AND Country:Denmark

The logic here is that the administrator would probably *not* want to see devices belonging to user **ago**, user **nif**, and all devices with **Denmark** as home country.

Whenever you use multiple filters with *the same operator*, DME interprets this as an OR. So if you search for **Denmark** and **Sweden**, DME will find all devices that have Denmark *or* Sweden as home country. However, when you *mix the operators*, DME will add an AND between the operators that are different. For instance:

(User OR User) AND Country

(Version OR Version) AND (Operator OR Operator)

(Version OR Version) AND (Operator OR Operator) AND (User OR User)

etc. The latter search might yield a result like this:

Version contains 3.5		Version contains 3.6		Operator name contains tdc		Operator name contains Ky		User contains TOS		User contains DK		Clear
User	Phone number	Phone model	Version	Key	License	Last sync.	Platform	Operator				
 TOS_DM	0000000000000000	 Nokia E65	3.6.0	-	✓	5. Apr 2011 14:48	S60	TDC Mobil				
 DK	0000000000000000	 Nokia C7-00	3.5.6	-	✓	24. May 2011 11:11	Symbian^3	TDC Mobil				
 TOS	0000000000000000	 X10i (Rooted)	3.5.6	-	✓	24. May 2011 11:14	Android	TDC Mobil				

Note that the sequence in which you enter the criteria does not affect these rules.

See also the following section about advanced filter criteria.

Advanced filters

If your filtering needs are not sufficiently covered by the standard filter bar, click the **Advanced** button to open the **Device filters** dialog. From here, you can find specific instances of what you are searching for (the standard filter finds whatever *contains* the phrase you are searching for - for instance, searching for **TDC** as **Operator** finds both **TDC** and **TDC Mobil**), you can add other operators (for instance not equal, greater than, smaller than), and you can search for devices that belong to specific groups.

 **Device filters**

Column filter

Group filter

Column	Filter	Filter value
User ID	Equals	Enter initials
User name	Equals	Enter user name
Device ID	Equals	Enter device ID (IMEI)
Phone model	Equals	Select/Enter a Model
Current country	Equals	Select/Enter a Country
Current operator name	Equals	Select/Enter an Operator
Home country	Equals	Select/Enter a Country
Home operator name	Equals	Select/Enter an Operator
Phone number	Equals	Enter phone number
Version	Contains	Enter DME version
Platform	Equals	Select/Enter a Platform
OS	Equals	Select/Enter an OS
Bootstrapped		

ON
Specific search

Search
Cancel

Make your selections in the **Column filter** tab or the **Group filter** tab, and click **Apply**. DME executes the search. Your selection criteria are shown as blue bubbles along the top edge of the page:

Device ID starts with 355 Country equals Denmark Clear all	
User	Phone model
 NIF	 Nokia E72
 DK	 Nokia C7-00
 ...	 ...

You cannot combine advanced and regular filters.

Column filter

In the **Column filter** tab of the **Device filters** dialog, you can search for devices that fulfill the criteria you enter. The tab contains the following columns and fields:

❖ Column

This column lists the searchable columns in the **Devices** page. For each of these columns, you can select a filter and enter a filter value.

❖ Filter

In this drop-down list, you can choose the filter operator you want use for the current filter. You can choose among the following operators:

Not equals: To match the filter, the current column must not match the filter value in the current column. Example: `User Not equals nif` matches all users except **nif**.

Equals: To match the filter, the current column must match the filter value exactly. Example: `User Equals nif` matches **nif**, but not **nifa** or **enif**.

Contains: To match the filter, the current column must include the filter value. Example: `User Contains nif` matches **nif** and **nifa** and **enif**. This corresponds to the way the standard filter works.

Starts with: To match the filter, the current column must begin with the filter value. Example: `User Starts with nif` matches **nif** and **nifa**, but not **enif**.

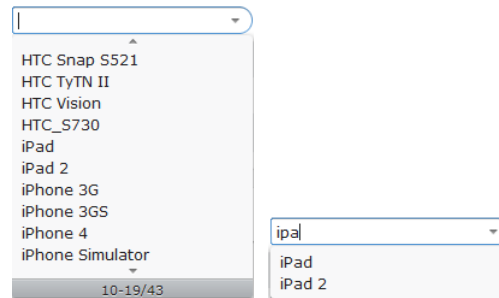
Ends with: To match the filter, the current column must end with the filter value. Example: `User Ends with nif` matches **nif** and **enif**, but not **nifa**.

These filter operators can be selected for all columns, except **Version**, which only allows the **Contains** filter, and **Bootstrapped**, to which no filter operator can be applied.

❖ Filter value

In this field you enter the value you want to match against the device information from the current column. For the **Phone**

model, Platform, Country, and Operator name columns, DME generates a list of the existing values in the system.



The list will shrink as you type in the text field.

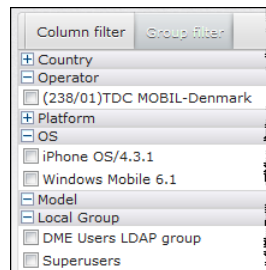
❖ **Specific search**

If you mark this checkbox, DME will evaluate all your filters at the same time - only those devices that match *all* the criteria will be shown. If the checkbox is not marked, devices that match *any* of the criteria will be shown.

In technical terms, marking the checkbox puts an **AND** between the criteria; leaving it unchecked puts an **OR** between the criteria.

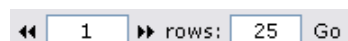
Group filter

The **Group filter** tab shows a list of the manually created groups on your system. For more information about groups, see **Group management** on page 237.



Click the plus and minus icons to expand or collapse the available group types (**Country**, **Operator**, **Platform**, **OS**, **Model**, and **Local group**). In each group type, you can select one or more groups. When you click **Apply**, the **Devices** tab will show the devices that are currently assigned to the selected groups.

Table navigation bar



The *table navigation bar* is shown in some of the tabs that show tables, such as **Provisioning** and **Log**. By default, DME shows 25 items (rows) in the table at a time. You can change this number in the second text box in the table navigation bar and click **Go** to see the specified number of rows. Furthermore, you can browse the items in the table one page at a time by clicking Previous (◀) or Next (▶), or you can go to a specific page by entering the page number in the first text box and clicking **Go**.

DME toolbar



The *DME toolbar* contains actions that apply throughout the Web interface:



Refresh: Refreshes the current tab only. Faster than a full browser refresh.

Note that it is important that you use this button rather than the browser refresh button (F5). Using this button refreshes the data shown on the page, for instance the device list; using the standard browser refresh does not necessarily do that.



Online help: Shows a help page for the Web interface. See **Online help** on page 43.



Log out: Logs you out of the DME server administration Web interface.

Furthermore, clicking the DME Administration logo opens a pop-up window showing version and copyright information about the DME server. See **About DME** on page 42.

About DME



Clicking the DME Administration logo opens a window showing version number, build number, revision number, copyright information about the DME server, and a link to the Soliton Systems website.

Keyboard shortcuts

The following is a list of keyboard shortcuts available in the DME server Web interface. Please note that the way to invoke a keyboard shortcut is different in different browsers:

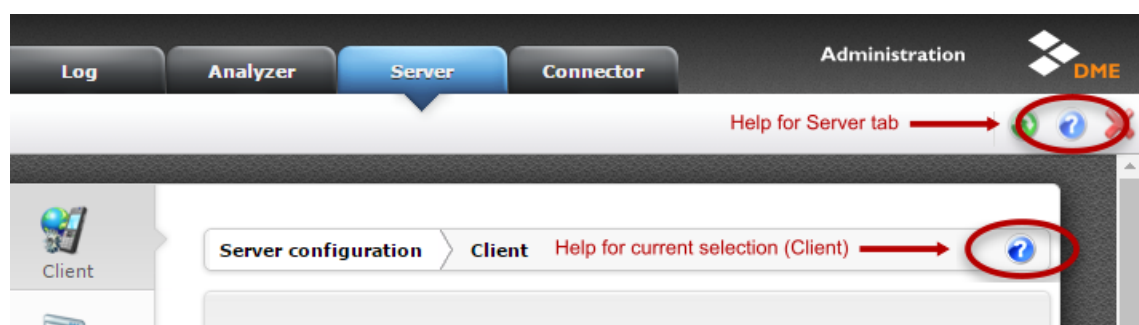
- ❖ In Internet Explorer, use **Alt** as modifier key.
- ❖ In Firefox, use **Alt+Shift**.
- ❖ In Google Chrome, you can use either **Alt** or **Alt+Shift** as modifier key.

Action	Shortcut
Browse page back	Modifier+Z
Browse page forward	Modifier+X
Enable/disable filter	Modifier+F
Refresh current tab	Modifier+R
Expand/Collapse groups	Modifier+C

Online help

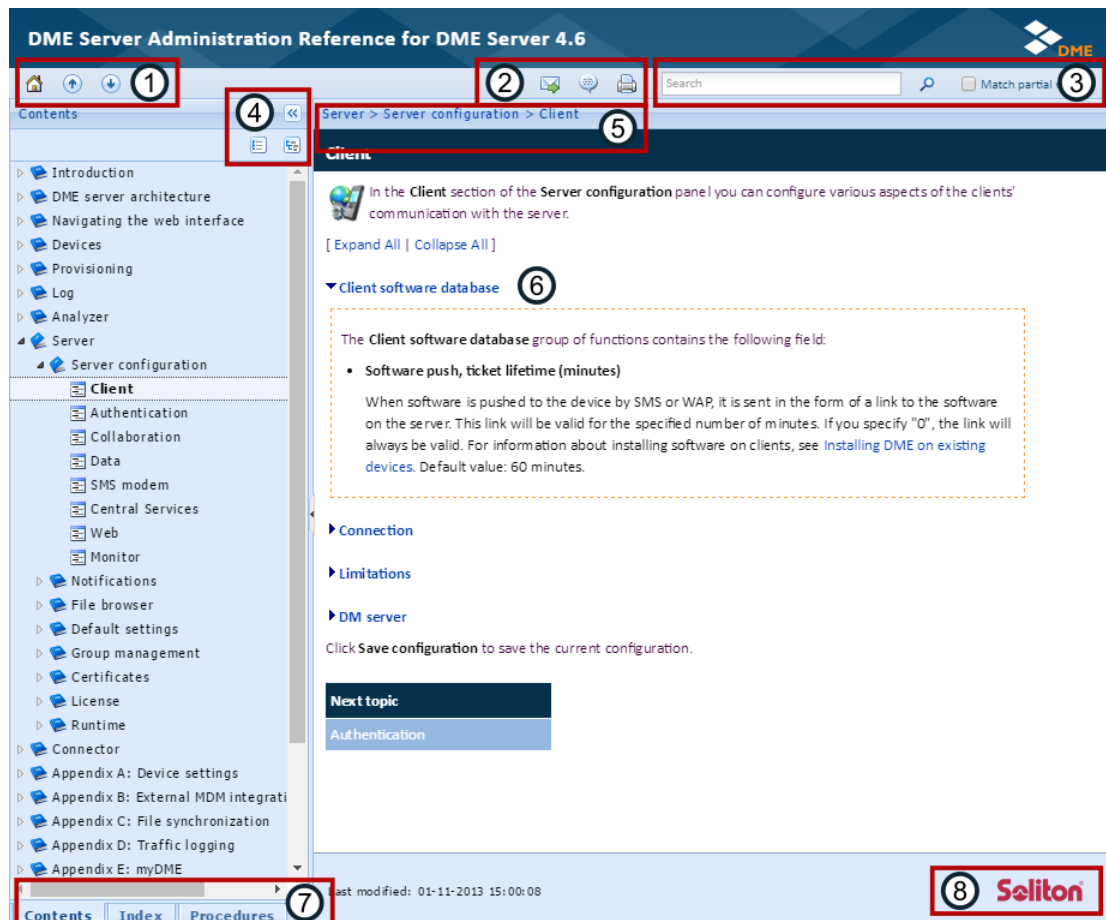
The DME server is delivered with a set of documentation files in HTML format. By default, the files are installed on a server made available for this purpose by Soliton Systems. If you need to host the files yourself (for instance due to firewall restrictions), please contact your DME partner.

To access the documentation, click the  icon in the DME toolbar or in the right-hand side of a panel section header:



The online help is context sensitive, meaning that the help page you see will match the place from which you clicked the help icon. For instance, if you click the help icon from the **DME toolbar** in the **Server** tab, you will receive help for the **Server** tab. If you click the panel item help icon from the **Client** panel item on the **Server** tab, you will receive help for that topic.

When the help page is open, you can browse to other topics using the table of contents, look up indexed terms, or search for terms anywhere in the documentation. The numbers in the illustration refer to the list below:



1. With these buttons, you can:
 - ❖ Click **Home** to go to the documentation home page.
 - ❖ Click **Previous** to go the previous topic.
 - ❖ Click **Next** to go to the next topic.
2. With these buttons, you can:
 - ❖ Send a link to the current topic to a colleague or client.
 - ❖ Send feedback regarding the current topic to the Soliton Systems documentation department (which is most welcome!).
 - ❖ Print the current topic.

3. Search the entire reference manual. The search currently does not support advanced search criteria, but finds a list of topics containing the word or words entered in the Search box.
4. With these buttons, you can:
 - ❖ Collapse the current left pane to the left side of the window. When collapsed, you can click the pane name (for instance **Contents**) to expand it until you click a topic, or click this button again to expand the pane permanently again.
 - ❖ Collapse all entries in the **Contents** pane.
 - ❖ Expand all entries in the **Contents** pane.
5. Clickable "Breadcrumb" path to your current location in the documentation.
6. Click to expand or collapse subsections in the page.
7. Switch between **Contents**, **Index**, a list of defined **Procedures** in the documentation, and possibly a **Search** pane if you have just conducted a search.
8. Click to visit the DME Resource home page.

The path to the online help files is specified in the **Web** panel item on the **Server** tab. See **Web** on page 191.

Devices

The **Devices** tab is the default tab, meaning the tab which you see first when logging in to the DME server. The tab contains a list of all users and devices known to the DME server, filter functions, tab toolbar actions, and a page menu with further options. Every item in this tab is described in the following sections.

The **Devices** list shows *all devices in the system* on the same page. The devices are loaded on the page as you scroll. This way you do not need to page through the devices. Sometimes there will be a short lag when you scroll down the page, and the browser will display a

1 - 63...

or similar as the devices are read into the browser window.

In general, we recommend using the filter facilities for finding specific devices rather than browsing for them. See **Filter bar - new style** on page 36.

A typical device overview could look like this:

Devices Provisioning Log Analyzer Server Connector Administration DME						
New user New device Add filter Add filter Any field Advanced						
User actions	User ID	User name	Phone model	Phone number	Version	Last sync.
• View user info	BSH	Bo Stig Hansen	iPad		4.0RC1	3. Jul 2012 10:20
Remove user	BSH	Bo Stig Hansen	iPhone 4	+45 - [Denmark]	4.0RC2	6. Jul 2012 09:42
Toggle user lock	BSH	Bo Stig Hansen	GT-P7510		4.0.0B3	17. Jun 2012 16:26
Detach user from device	BWR	Brian Westy Rasmusse	HTC Desire S	+45 - [Denmark]	4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:22
Device actions	BWR	Brian Westy Rasmusse	iPhone 4	+45 - [Denmark]	3.6.4	23. May 2012 15:26
• View device info	BWR	Brian Westy Rasmusse	17d1222635a0828521			29. Jun 2012 19:53
Remove device	CNI	Carsten Eliot Nielsen	iPhone 4	+63 - [Philippir]	4.0B3	26. Jun 2012 23:02
Delete device data	CSO	Christian Sørensen	GT-P7510		4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:01
Toggle device lock	CT	Claus Thomasen	E15i		4.0.0B4	28. Jun 2012 22:35
Release license	CT	Claus Thomasen	iPad		4.0RC2	4. Jul 2012 15:57
Force synchronization	CT	Claus Thomasen	E10i		4.0.0B5	4. Jul 2012 18:24
Send to device	CT	Claus Thomasen	GT-I9100	+45 - [Denmark]	4.0.0B5	6. Jul 2012 10:43
Send OMA configuration	DK	Dmitri Khoudiakov				
Send server path	EMO	Emil Mourier	06730213B4833728E			6. Jul 2012 09:08
Send SSL certificate	ET4	Exchange Test4	HTC Desire	+45 - [Denmark]	4.0.0B5	5. Jul 2012 12:45
Send SMS	FF	Frank Fjordvald	iPhone 4		3.6.5	14. Jun 2012 16:54
Send WAP push	FF	Frank Fjordvald	iPad		4.0RC2	4. Jul 2012 07:47
Bootstrap device	GBL	Gregers Blach	iPhone 4	+45 - [Denmark]	4.0RC2	6. Jul 2012 10:05
Misc. actions	GBL	Gregers Blach	LT15i		3.6.4	6. Jul 2012 09:38
Batch update settings	JAM	Jaime Amposta	Nexus S	+63 - [Philippir]	4.0.0B2	2. Jul 2012 07:00
Import devices	JAM	Jaime Amposta	iPad 2 (WiFi)		4.0RC2	4. Jul 2012 11:16
Export devices	JEH	Jesper Hartoft	iPhone 4	+45 - [Denmark]	4.0B2	13. Jun 2012 20:27

To select multiple devices, simply click the devices you want to select (or de-select). Selected items are clearly marked in a contrasting blue color. You can use keyboard modifiers when you click - to select a range of devices, click one, press and hold **shift**, and click another device to select all devices between the two. Use **ctrl+click** to de-select or select one device while retaining the current selection of devices.

Columns

The list contains a number of columns, which are described in the following. By default, DME shows the following columns:

User ID, User name, Phone model, Phone number, Version, and Last sync..

However, by clicking the column selection button  you can choose to hide some columns or show other columns. See **Table** on page 34 for more information.

User ID

The **User ID** column shows which user is associated with which device(s). A user can be in the list multiple times if he or she owns several devices. The list shows *local users*, *directory users*, and *anonymous users*.

If you let the mouse pointer rest on a user in the list, a box will appear showing the full name of the user. This information derives from the DME database and can be edited in the **User** setup panel.

1. Local users



Local users are manually created users, whose credentials are stored in the DME database only. When the DME system is installed, a user called **SYSADM** is created locally. This user must be able to log on to the DME interface, even if the directory system (LDAP or Active Directory) is down or misconfigured.

Local users can be configured to be able to synchronize their device with the collaboration system. They are created by clicking the **Add user** action. See Add user for more information about local users and where they apply.

2. Directory users



Directory users are users who are authenticated against the directory (LDAP or Active Directory). The bulk of users will typically be directory users.

3. Anonymous users



Anonymous users are users of the Basic MDM client. This type of client has no interaction with the collaboration system and is for device management purposes only. The user initials are generated automatically by DME, but can be changed by clicking the user icon (or on the client). For more information, see **Appendix G: The Basic MDM client** on page 391.

4. Locked users



Locked users are users for whom access to DME has been denied. See **Toggle user lock** on page 57 for more information.

To see more user details and to edit a user, select the user in the list, and click **View user info** in the page menu. For more information about users, see **Setting up users** on page 74.

User name

The **User name** column shows the name of the user associated with the current device. See the **User** column.

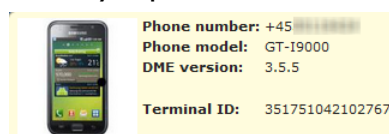
This column is hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

Phone model

The **Phone model** column shows information about the devices that are managed by DME. Each device is named by the make and model of the device.

If you let the mouse pointer rest on a device link, a box will appear with more information about the current device:

- ❖ Device phone number
- ❖ Device model
- ❖ DME version installed on device
- ❖ Device ID (terminal ID)
- ❖ Possibly a picture of the device:



The information derives from the DME database, and can be edited in the **Device setup** panel. To edit the device, double-click the line in which the device is displayed, or select the device and click **View device info** in the page menu. For more information, see [Setting up devices](#).

Each device is identified by a unique ID, which is the IMEI number of the device. If the device does not contain a phone module, the ID will be the MAC address of the device. Please also note that due to Apple API restrictions, iOS devices do not report their IMEI number. Instead, a unique ID is shown.

The **Phone model** column may contain the following icons:



If the icon is followed by a model name, this is a device being managed by DME. It is associated with the user on the current line (if any).



This device is currently connected using network push.



This device has been bootstrapped/enrolled. The icon can be combined with the network push icon above as well.



The device is currently synchronizing with the server.



The device is blocked. Perhaps the associated user is under notice. See **Toggle device lock** on page 61.

If the column shows no icon, the user on the current line does not currently hold a device.

The icon is followed by the device type. This is the type reported by the device. The DME client may adjust or change the device type. For instance, the client adds **(Jailbroken)** to iPhone devices that have been jailbroken (and thus not formally supported), and adds **(Rooted)** to rooted Android devices. Such devices can be locked automatically by DME - see **Authentication** on page 174.

Phone number

The **Phone number** column shows the phone number of the device. The phone number is used for notifications, provisioning, and other information pushed to the device by SMS or WAP. The device user can change the phone number from within the DME client on the device (for instance if a new SIM card is installed in the device).

The phone number is stored in the database as it is reported by the phone, for instance 30116424. When the phone number is displayed on this page, it is automatically formatted according to the country of the device. If the phone in the example reports that it is a Danish phone, the number will be prepended with the Danish international calling code +45, and the number would be formatted according to Danish standards: +45 30 11 64 24.

Version

The **Version** column shows the version number of the DME client running on the device on the current line. For more information about provisioning and upgrading software on the devices, see Provisioning.

Key

This column shows the key exchange status for each device. If **Client signature** is enabled in the **Authentication > Security** section of the **Server configuration** panel in the **Server** tab (recommended), a device can only connect to the server if it has the correct certificate (key pair) installed. The symbols in this column have the following meaning:



No key exchange has been performed for this device. Possible reasons: Client signing is not enabled, or a key has never been generated for the device (and **Auto sign** in the server configuration is disabled).



The server has initiated a key exchange process with the device. Either the administrator specifically issued a new device signing key, or **Auto sign** is enabled in the server configuration. The device has not yet synchronized with the server after the key has been issued.



The device has synchronized with the server after the key has been issued. The server is now waiting for the device to return a key for validation. This may never happen if the client does not support key generation, and the server is in compatibility mode. If this is the case, the client is permitted to synchronize.



The key exchange has been performed with success. The client has made a successful connection to the server.

With client signing, you can be absolutely sure that only devices that are known to the system can gain access to DME. For more information, see **Add client signing key** on page 70 and **Authentication** on page 174, or request the special documentation "Client signing".

This column is hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

Last sync.

The date and time shown in this field is the date and time of the last synchronization of the device with the server. For more information about synchronization, see **Schedule** on page 204 and Setting up devices.

License

This field shows if the current device uses up a license. If the field shows a colored check mark icon , the device is using a license. Otherwise, the device does not use a license. You can see the number of free licenses at the bottom left corner of the page.

If you let the mouse pointer rest on the colored check mark icon, a tooltip shows what DME functions the current device is licensed to use, for instance as shown below:



For more information about licenses, see **License** on page 259.

Platform

The **Platform** column shows the name of the platform on which the device on the current line is running. For instance, the platform of a **Nexus 7** device is **Android**.

This column is hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

Operator

The **Operator** columns show the name of the phone operator used by the device on the current line. It comes in two versions:

The **Home operator** column shows the home operator of the SIM card.

The **Current operator** column shows the operator reported by the device at the latest synchronization. If the device is currently roaming, the current operator will be different from the home operator.

These columns are hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

Country

The **Country** column shows the name of the country of the device on the current line. It comes in two versions:

The **Home country** column shows the country registered on the SIM card.

The **Current country** column shows the country reported by the device at the latest synchronization. If the device is currently roaming, the current country will be different from the home country.

These columns are hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

OS

The **OS** column shows the name of the OS on which the device on the current line is running. For instance, the OS of an **iPad 3rd (GSM)** device could be **iPhone OS/7.1**.

This column is hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

Groups

The **Groups** column shows if the device on the current line is member of any manually created groups based on directory (LDAP/AD) groups. Such groups are created in the **Server** tab. For more information, see **Group management** on page 237.

This column is hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

Roaming

The **Roaming** column shows a special icon -  - if the device on the current line is currently *roaming*. Roaming devices are using a different operator than their home operator, resulting in higher voice and data costs.

This column is hidden by default, but can be selected by clicking the column selection button .

Tab actions

The selection of actions on the tab toolbar depends on context - whether the main **Devices** table is shown, or whether you have first selected a function in the page menu. In many cases the tab toolbar is not available after a function has been selected.

The main **Devices** tab toolbar contains the following actions.

New user



Click the **New user** action from the main Devices tab or from the **User** setup panel to create a new user manually. DME usually retrieves the users from the AD/LDAP directory system to which DME is connected. However, you may want to add users manually in the following cases:

1. *To ensure availability*

If, for some reason, DME is not connected properly to the LDAP system, you need to have a user in the system with access to the DME server. Otherwise you will not be able to correct any connection setup errors in the DME interface.

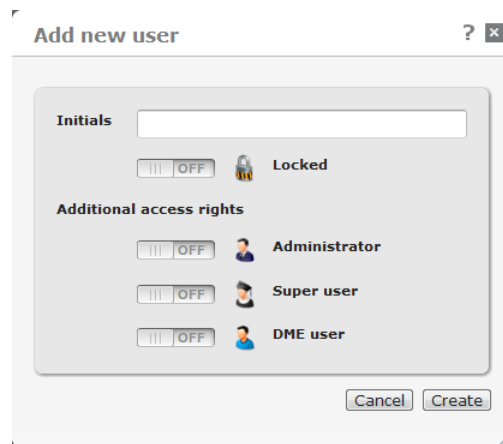
2. *To add external users*

If you need to add users who have not been created in the LDAP system to DME for device management purposes. This could for example be a third-party consultant who has been given a mobile phone but has not been created in the mail system.

3. *To host users*

If you host users that are not part of your collaboration system and therefore not members of your directory.

When you click the **New user** action, DME shows the following pop-up window:



In the **Initials** field enter a unique user ID. If you do choose the ID of an existing user, no harm is done - when you click **Create**, DME simply opens the setup panel for the existing user with those initials. The initials could also be for instance an e-mail address if you want to make sure the initials are unique.

Choose **Locked** if you want the new user to be locked out of DME to begin with, and specify the role of the user in DME -

Administrator, **Superuser**, or regular **DME user**. For more information about these options, see **Setting up users** on page 74.

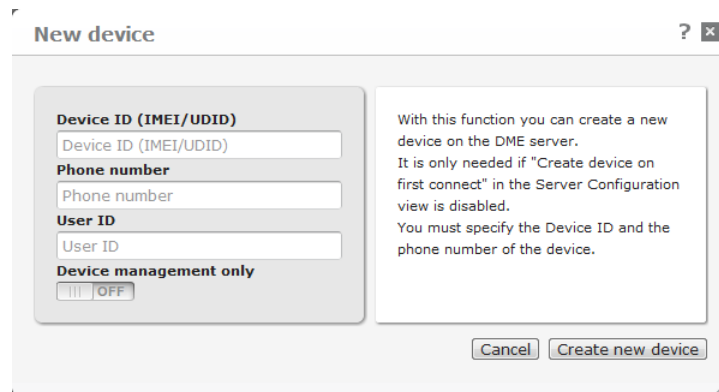
Click **Create** to add the new user to the list.

New device



Click the **New device** action to create a new device in the list manually.

This action should normally only be used if "Create device on first connect" in the **Authentication** section of the **Server configuration** panel is *disabled*. If that setting is *enabled*, you can simply push the DME client by SMS/WAP or OMA DM to the new devices, and they will be created automatically in DME the first time they connect to the DME server. For more information about this, see **Authentication** on page 174. If this is not possible, you can create the device manually by selecting the **New device** action. DME shows the following page:



❖ Device ID

In this field, you must enter the device ID to uniquely identify the device on the server. This ID can be either of the following:

For *CDMA* devices (used in the Americas, Japan, and other places), this is the *MEID*. The MEID can be located behind the battery, below the battery, or on the back of the phone, or in an information screen on the device.

For *GSM* devices (used in Europe and parts of Asia), this is the *IMEI*. The IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity) number is the unique 15-digit serial number on your phone. There are several ways to find the IMEI number:

- ❖ Check the label underneath the device battery.
- ❖ Enter ***#06#** on your phone's keypad. When the final **#** is entered, a 15-digit number with the title "IMEI number" or "Serial number" will appear.
- ❖ On Motorola devices, you may have to enter **#[*],[menu]** and then the right arrow very quickly.
- ❖ On Android devices, check in **Settings > About > Status**.

For *Apple iOS* devices, this is an *MD5 hash of the Wi-Fi MAC address*. You can find the MAC (Wi-Fi) address in iTunes or in **Settings > General > About** on the device.

For *Android Wi-Fi-only* devices (such as some Android tablets), this is the *MAC address* without the ":" separators. You can find the MAC address in **Settings > About > Status** on the Android device.

❖ **Phone number**

The phone number can be used for pushing information to the device.

❖ **User ID**

If you specify a user ID while creating the device, the device will be assigned to the user in question as it is created. If the user does not exist, it will be created as a DME user or a Basic MDM user (see below).

❖ **Device management only**

If this field is selected, the user specified in the **User ID** field above is created as a Basic MDM user (see **Appendix G: The Basic MDM client** on page 391). The user created is shown with a white shirt. An MDM user can later be converted to a regular DME user.

If the field is not selected, the user is created as a regular DME user. A regular DME user *cannot* be converted to an MDM user.

Click **Create new device**. DME adds the device to the list, and you can then set up the device as described in the section *Setting up devices*. To cancel the creation of a new device, click the **Devices** tab.

See also **Import devices** on page 72 for information about creating many devices at a time.

Page menu

The **Devices** tab page menu contains a number of functions, divided into the following groups.

User actions

The **User actions** group of the page menu in the **Devices** tab contains functions related to users.

View user info

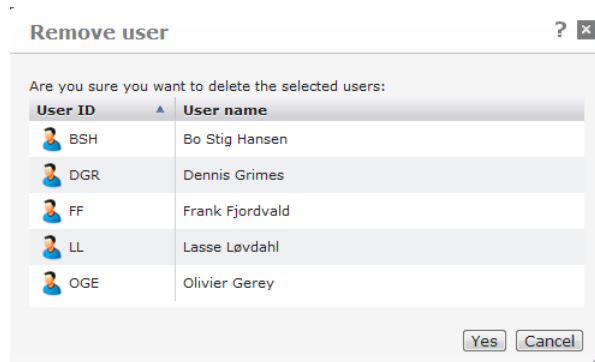
When you click this function, you can view and edit the user selected in the **Devices** page.

For more information, see **Setting up users** on page 74.

Remove user

Click **Remove user** to remove the currently selected user(s) from the list. You should only use this action if you are absolutely sure that you want to remove the user from the DME system. Even though you can easily recreate the user, all statistical information about usage, devices, and so on will no longer be associated with the user that you recreate.

DME will ask you to confirm the removal:



User ID	User name
BSH	Bo Stig Hansen
DGR	Dennis Grimes
FF	Frank Fjordvald
LL	Lasse Løvdaahl
OGE	Olivier Gerey

Note that a user with **Administrator** role (see **About roles** on page 78) cannot delete his own user. Another administrator must do that. This is to prevent a situation where a DME system is left with no administrator users.

Toggle user lock

Click **Toggle user lock** to toggle the locked status of the currently selected user(s). Locking a user can be useful in case the user is suspended or terminated, and the user should not be able to read corporate e-mail.

DME asks you to confirm the action.

Detach user from device

Click **Detach user from device** to break the link between the currently selected user or users and his or her device(s). This means that the connection between the user and the device is severed, and the user and his device will appear on separate lines in the **Devices** tab. Any statistics that affect the user or the device will no longer have any influence on the other.

This action is necessary if users want to switch devices and **Device allowed to switch user** is disabled in the **Authentication** section of the **Server configuration** panel in the **Server** tab (see **Authentication** on page 174).

DME asks you to confirm the action.

Device actions

The **Device actions** group of the page menu in the **Devices** tab contains functions related to devices.

View device info

When you click this function, you can view and edit the device selected in the **Devices** page.

Alternatively, you can double-click an entry in the **Devices** page.

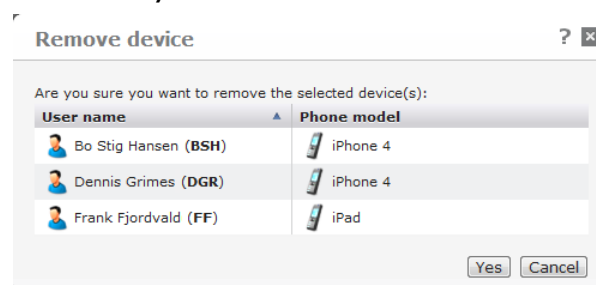
For more information, see Setting up devices.

Remove device

Click **Remove device** to remove the currently selected device(s) from the list. You should only use this action if you are absolutely sure that you want to remove the device. Even though you can easily recreate the device, all statistical information about device usage, voice traffic, and so on will no longer be associated with the device that you recreate.

This function can be performed using the Web Services operation `deleteDevice`. See **deleteDevice** on page 468.

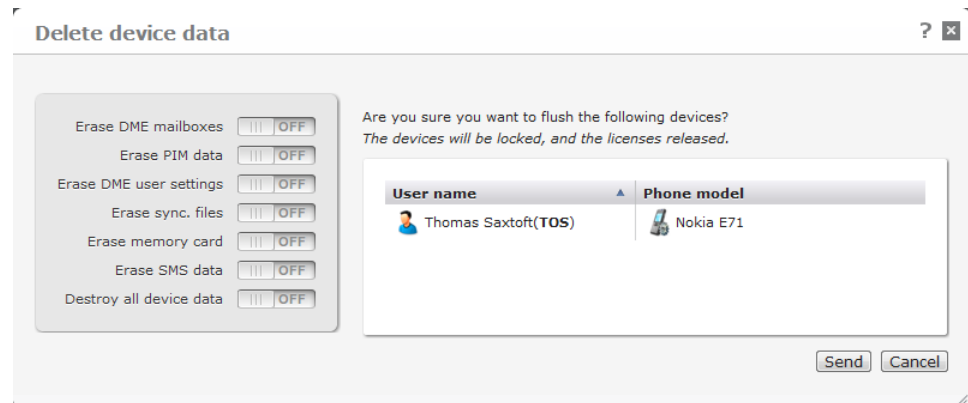
DME asks you to confirm the action:



Delete device data

If a device is stolen or lost, use this function to remotely flush data on the device. This way you can be certain that the data stored on the device cannot be read. You can also use the window in connection with troubleshooting or support.

Select one or more devices, and click **Delete device data** in the page menu. The following window is shown:



First choose the extent to which data on the device should be deleted:

- ❖ **Erase DME mailboxes**
All mail from the DME client.
- ❖ **Erase PIM data**
Calendar information, to-dos/tasks, notes/journals, and contacts.
- ❖ **Erase DME user settings**
All settings related to the DME client (as defined in **Settings** on the client). Restores the default settings, as if the client was launched for the first time.
- ❖ **Erase sync. files**
DME attempts to erase all files synchronized to the device. If a file is open in an application, DME will attempt to close the application before deleting the file.
- ❖ **Erase memory card**
All data on any memory card in the device are wiped, if possible.
- ❖ **Erase SMS data**
All messaging data on the device are erased (SMS, MMS, POP3, ActiveSync messages, etc.).
- ❖ **Destroy all device data**
All that can be deleted from the device is deleted. See below for more information.

 The device must usually be reformatted to work properly again.
This function can be performed using the Web Services operation **wipePhone**. See **wipePhone** on page 470.

When you click **Confirm**, a command is sent to the chosen device(s) to delete all the user data on the device(s) within the selected areas. The data is wiped and zero-wiped if possible (meaning that all available data space is overwritten with zeros, effectively wiping any remains of the original data). This function cannot be reversed and should be used with care. The affected devices will also be locked, and any DME license associated with them will be released.

Whenever one of the wipe commands is completed, for instance the wipe of the DME mailbox, the device is instructed to notify the server that the command has been completed for the device in question.

With the **All device data** option, a notification of each completed step is sent to the server. Currently, the server is notified by SMS, and the messages can be seen in the **Log** tab. This way you can see the extent to which the wipe was successful.

This function can be used when one or more device(s) are selected in the device list, or when a device is being edited.

With regard to the **All device data** option, it is usually not possible to delete all data from a device. There are a number of reasons for this. When a command is received by the DME client to delete all device data, the client goes through the following procedure:

1. First, all processes/applications with a user interface are shut down in order to release any locks they may have on files.
2. Then the file system is traversed, and every file is deleted - first in the device memory, then on any memory cards, and the memory will be wiped (filled with zeros). This process can take some time (up to 10 minutes/GB).
3. On *Windows Mobile* devices, all keys in the registry database that can be deleted are deleted.
4. On *Symbian* devices, the process will finish by attempting to factory reset the device.

If any file is locked by an internal process, it will not be deleted. The reason that DME only shuts down external processes is that shutting down an internal process may cause a device reboot. When the device boots up, the DME client will start shutting down the internal process again. This way a reboot loop is started, and the device must be taken to service.

The DME client has access to all public folders, so the entire file system is traversed.

The extent of the deletion varies from platform to platform. The table in the following section shows the result of sending the **Destroy all device data** command to devices on different platforms.

Toggle device lock

Click **Toggle device lock** to toggle the locked status of the currently selected device(s). You can for instance lock a device if it is temporarily out of service, but you do not wish to revoke its license. If devices are created on first connection, they may be initially locked. For more information, see **Authentication** on page 174.

When a device is locked, a padlock icon is shown in the device information screen.

When you *unlock* a device, a system information sync. is automatically sent to the device. This function can be performed using the Web Services operation `approveDevice`. See **approveDevice** on page 468.

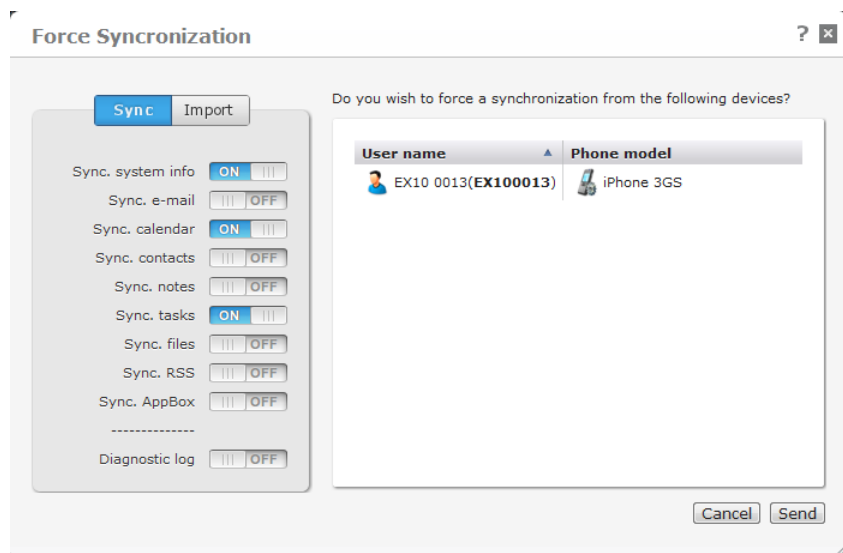
Release license

Click this action to release the license from the currently selected device(s). The device will automatically consume a license again if it is used to access the system, if a license is available.

For more information about licenses, see **License** on page 259.

Force synchronization

With this function, you can force the selected device(s) to synchronize immediately and not wait until the next scheduled or manual synchronization. This can for instance be useful for troubleshooting. Note that the screen looks different if you choose this function from the **Device setup** panel, but the functionality is the same.



User name	Phone model
EX10 0013(EX100013)	iPhone 3GS

Select one or more devices from the Devices tab, and click **Force synchronization**. You can choose to send either **Sync** commands or **Import** commands by choosing the appropriate tab at the top of the window.

From the list of options in the window, you can choose what you want synchronized from the device(s). You can select any or all of the following options:

Sync commands

❖ **Sync. system info**

Update the device or server with system information such as client version, user information, phone number, access points, operator, applications, version etc. You can use this option for keeping the device up-to-date with settings on the server.

❖ **Sync. e-mail**

Synchronize e-mails with the device. Note that an e-mail sync. automatically includes a system information sync.

❖ **Sync. calendar**

Synchronize calendar information with the device.

❖ **Sync. contacts**

Synchronize contacts with the device.

❖ **Sync. notes**

Synchronize Domino notes (journals) with the device.

❖ **Sync. to-dos**

Synchronize to-dos (tasks) with the device.

❖ **Sync. files**

Synchronize files with the device according to applicable file sync. rules.

❖ **Sync. RSS**

Synchronize RSS feeds with the device.

Import commands

❖ **Import system info**

Clean all settings from the device, and re-register the device with system information such as client version, user information, phone number, access points, operator, applications, version etc.

❖ **Import e-mail**

Delete all e-mails from the device, and import of fresh copy of all e-mail within the e-mail synchronization window.

❖ **Import calendar**

Delete all calendar entries from the device, and import all calendar items within the calendar synchronization window.

❖ **Import contacts**

Delete all contacts from the local address book on the device, and import all contacts afresh.

- ❖ **Import notes**

Delete all Domino notes (journals) from the device, and import all notes within the notes synchronization window.

- ❖ **Import to-dos**

Delete all to-do (task) entries from the device, and import all to-do items within the to-do synchronization window again.

- ❖ **Import files**

Delete all files that have been synchronized to the device, and import them again according to applicable file sync. rules.

- ❖ **Import RSS**

Delete all RSS feeds from the device, and import all RSS feeds set up for the current device again.

Both the **Sync** and the **Import** tabs allow you to send the following command to the client as well:

- ❖ **Diagnostic log**

Force the device to run a self-diagnostic test and send the result to the DME server. The diagnostic log is sent as an SMS to the server, and can be viewed in the **Log** tab. *Please be aware* that if you are using a web-based SMS service center, and you cannot get SMS feedback from the clients, this feature will not work, and **should not be used** in order to avoid that the client keeps trying to send the log to the server.

Note that this dialog only shows options for functions for which a license exists on the server. For instance, if your company does not own a license for file synchronization, the **Sync. files** option is not shown in this dialog.

Click **Send** to send the command(s) to the selected device(s) as an IP push or SMS, or click **Cancel** to close the dialog without sending any commands.

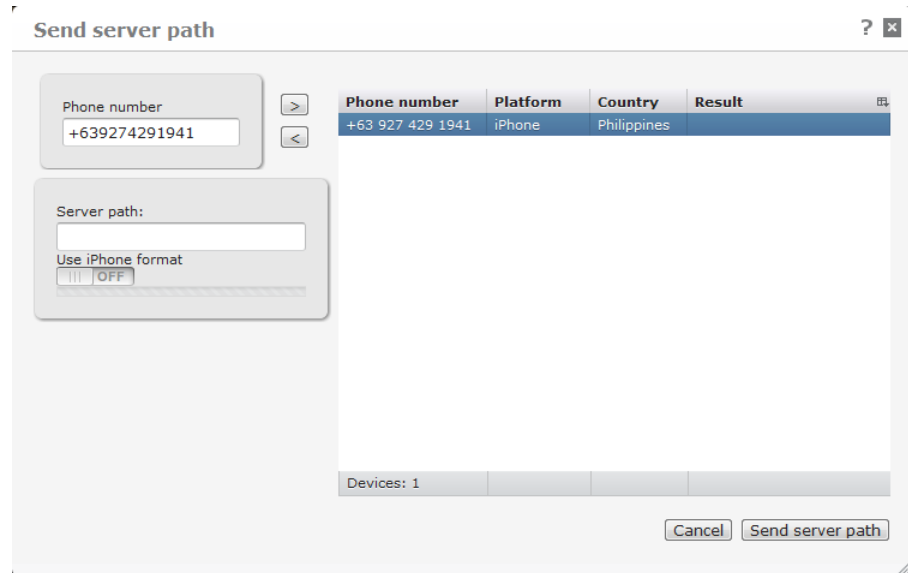
Send to device

The **Send to device** group of the page menu in the **Devices** tab contains functions related to pushing various items to devices.

Send server path

The communication between the device and the server is vital. The device must know the path to the server in order to synchronize. The server path is usually sent from the server to the device the first time DME is installed on the device. With this function, you can send an SMS message to selected devices containing the server path.

Note that the screen looks different if you choose this function from the **Provisioning** tab or the **Device setup** panel, but the functionality is the same.



Phone number	Platform	Country	Result
+63 927 429 1941	iPhone	Philippines	

To send the server path to one or more devices, select the device(s) in the list first and then click **Send server path**. If the device or devices are not yet created in DME and thus do not exist in the **Devices** list, you can add more devices to the list by entering their phone numbers in the **Phone number** field and clicking the **>** arrow. Enter one or more phone numbers. The international calling code preceded by a **+** is mandatory. If you do not enter a calling code yourself, DME inserts the code defined in the field **Phone country code** in the SMS modem setup page (see **SMS modem** on page 186). To remove a device from the list, select it, and click the **<** arrow.

Then click **Send server path**. The device(s) will now receive an SMS with the server path and phone number. If the DME client is running on the device, the user will be asked if he or she wishes to apply the server path. If the DME client is not running, the user should leave the SMS in the Messaging inbox until the client starts.

Note that the server path setting should be locked on the devices. Therefore you will usually have to unlock the setting **Server path** in **General settings** on page 326 before sending the server path to devices.

In order to send the server path to an iOS device, which is not yet created in the **Devices** list, you must mark the field **Use iPhone format**. This will format the SMS in a special way, and the SMS can then only be used by iPhone devices.

Send SSL certificate

If you wish to send the server's root certificate to the selected devices as a WAP push, click the **Devices** tab, select the device(s) in the list, and click **Send SSL certificate**.

Note that the screen looks different if you choose this function from the **Provisioning** tab or the **Device setup** panel, but the functionality is the same.



Phone number	Platform	Country	Result
+45 30 11 67 18	S60	Danmark	

You can add more devices to the list by entering their phone numbers in the **Phone number** field and clicking the **>** arrow. Enter one or more phone numbers. The international calling code preceded by a **+** is mandatory. If you do not enter a calling code yourself, DME inserts the code defined in the field **Phone country code** in the SMS modem setup page (see **SMS modem** on page 186). To remove a device from the list, select it, and click the **<** arrow.

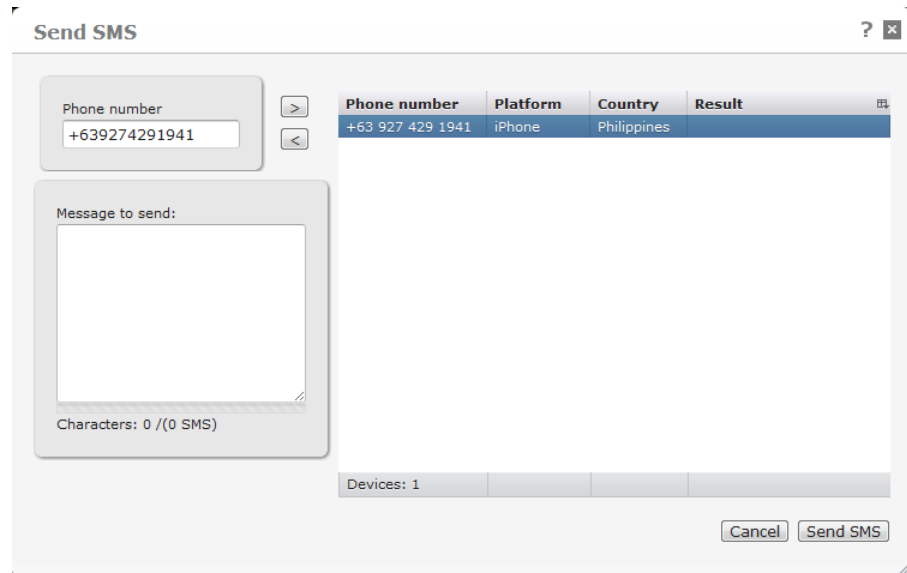
Click **Send SSL certificate**.

Please note that this does not apply to iOS devices, as they cannot receive WAP push.

For information about SSL certificates and DME, see **SSL certificates** on page 408.

Send SMS

With this function you can send an SMS (a text message) to the selected device(s). This function can be launched from the **Devices** or **Provisioning** tabs. Note that the screen looks different if you choose this function from the **Provisioning** tab, the **User setup** panel, or the **Device setup** panel, but the functionality is the same.



The screenshot shows the 'Send SMS' window. On the left, there is a 'Phone number' field containing '+639274291941' and a 'Message to send:' text area. Below the text area, it says 'Characters: 0 / (0 SMS)'. On the right, there is a table with the following data:

Phone number	Platform	Country	Result
+63 927 429 1941	iPhone	Philippines	

Below the table, it says 'Devices: 1'. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Send SMS' buttons.

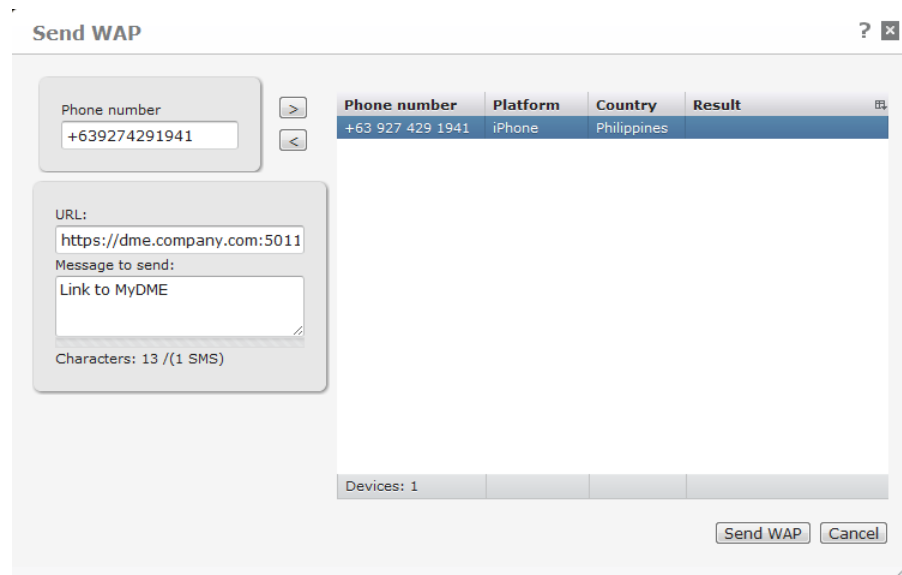
Enter one or more phone numbers (or select one or more devices/users before selecting this function). You can add more devices to the list by entering their phone numbers in the **Phone number** field and clicking the > arrow. Enter one or more phone numbers. The international calling code preceded by a + is mandatory. If you do not enter a calling code yourself, DME inserts the code defined in the field **Phone country code** in the SMS modem setup page (see **SMS modem** on page 186). To remove a device from the list, select it, and click the < arrow.

Type a message. DME shows the number of characters that are used in the message, and how many individual text messages are required to send the message.

Then click **Send SMS**.

Send WAP push

With this function you can send a WAP push to the selected device(s). You can use this function to give users a link to a URL and at the same time a message with details about what the link is about. Note that the screen looks different if you choose this function from the **Provisioning** tab or the **Device setup** panel, but the functionality is the same.



Phone number	Platform	Country	Result
+63 927 429 1941	iPhone	Philippines	

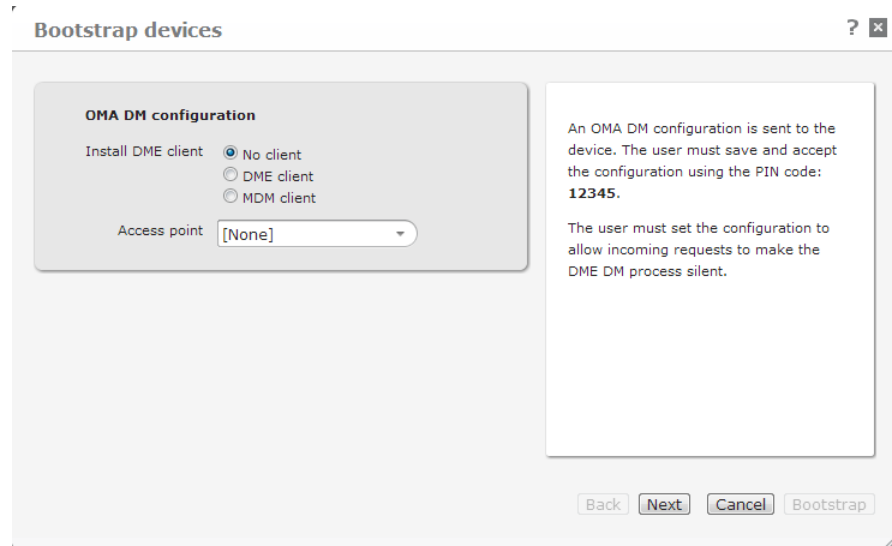
Enter one or more phone numbers (or select one or more devices/users before selecting this function). You can add more devices to the list by entering their phone numbers in the **Phone number** field and clicking the **>** arrow. Enter one or more phone numbers. The international calling code preceded by a **+** is mandatory. If you do not enter a calling code yourself, DME inserts the code defined in the field **Phone country code** in the SMS modem setup page (see **SMS modem** on page 186). To remove a device from the list, select it, and click the **<** arrow.

Type or paste a URL in the **URL** field, and type a message. DME shows the number of characters that are used in the message, and how many individual text messages are required to send the message. Then click **Send WAP**.

Bootstrap device

When you select this function, DME shows a wizard that guides you through the process of bootstrapping one or more devices using OMA DM. This applies to Symbian and Windows Mobile devices only. For more information about OMA DM, see **OMA DM installation** on page 403. See Enrolling devices for information about bootstrapping (enrolling) Apple iOS devices.

By bootstrapping a device, you allow DME to control the device. You can then use the DME device management functions with the device without end-user interaction.



Bootstrap devices

OMA DM configuration

Install DME client ☒ No client
☐ DME client
☐ MDM client

Access point [None]

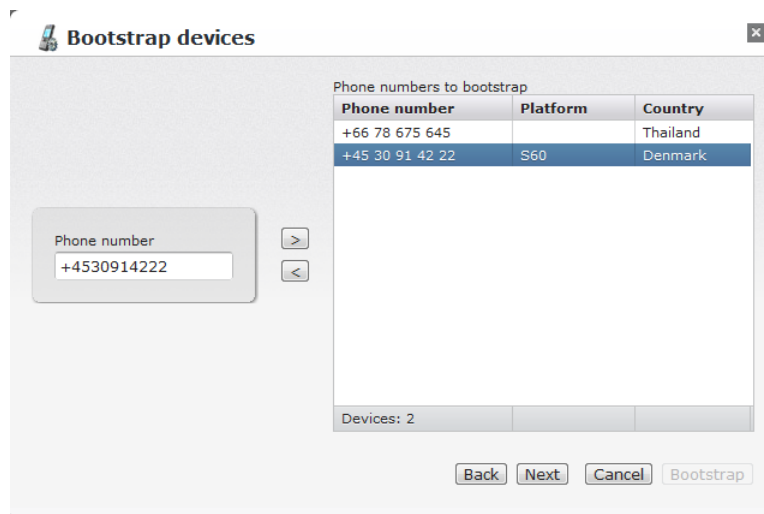
An OMA DM configuration is sent to the device. The user must save and accept the configuration using the PIN code: **12345**.

The user must set the configuration to allow incoming requests to make the DME DM process silent.

Back Next Cancel Bootstrap

In the **OMA DM configuration** box, you can choose an additional action to be performed after bootstrapping the devices:

1. In the **Install DME client** option list, you can select **DME client** or **MDM client**. DME will attempt to install the *default* DME client or Basic MDM client for the device platform in question after the bootstrap. A client can be marked as **Default** in the **Provisioning** software list. See **Make default version** on page 417.
2. The field **Access point** shows a list of Internet access points defined in the **Access points list** page, if any. The access point you pick will be installed on the device after the bootstrap, if possible. For more information, see **Access points** on page 440.
3. Click **Next**.



Bootstrap devices

Phone numbers to bootstrap

Phone number	Platform	Country
+66 78 675 645		Thailand
+45 30 91 42 22	S60	Denmark

Phone number
+4530914222

Devices: 2

Back Next Cancel Bootstrap

If you had already selected one or more devices when selecting the **Bootstrap device** function, these devices already appear in the **Phone numbers to bootstrap** list. You can add phone numbers for more devices in the **Phone number** field, and click **>** to add the numbers to the box on the right. The international calling code preceded by a **+** is mandatory. If you do not enter a calling code yourself, DME inserts the code defined in the field **Phone country code** in the SMS modem setup page (see **SMS modem** on page 186). If the phone number already exists in DME (it is found in the **Devices** tab), then the list will show the platform of the device. Otherwise, only the number and country of the device is shown.

Note that you can also enter an *e-mail address* in the **Phone number** field. This is used for devices that have no phone module or no SIM card. The use of e-mail address requires that the SMTP relay server has been set up correctly in the **SMTP relay** section of the **Collaboration** setup pane in the **Server** tab. For more information, see **Collaboration** on page 178.

4. Click **Next**.

You can now choose to schedule the installation in order to spread the load on the DME server. This is only relevant when bootstrapping many devices. When you click **Bootstrap** using scheduling, DME will spread out the total number of bootstrap jobs over the specified time range, on the selected days. For instance, if you permit 10 installations a day, and you want to install on 30 devices, DME will initiate 10 installations on the next three selected days starting from the date in the **Start installing on** field, spread evenly over the selected time range.

5. Click **Bootstrap**.

You can now follow the progress of the bootstrap jobs in **Provisioning > Status**. See **Status** on page 431.

Client signing

The **Client signing** group of the page menu in the **Devices** tab contains functions related to signing devices to this server.

Note that these options are only visible if the server has been set up to use client signing. For more information, see **Authentication** on page 174, the user guide for your client, and the special documentation "Client signing" (available upon request).

Remove client signing key

Click this action to remove the client signing key from the currently selected device(s) in the list.



The device will no longer be able to connect to the server until a new signing key has been issued from the server, and the old key has been removed from the device. To remove the signing key from a device, select **Tools > Settings > Security** in the DME client, and then select **Client certificate**.

This function can be performed using the Web Services operation `removeClientSignature`. See **removeClientSignature** on page 470.

On **iOS** devices, you can enter `FLUSHKEYS` in the **User name** field on the DME login screen to clear the client signing key.

Add client signing key

Click this action to generate a new set of keys (a certificate) for the selected device(s) and order the device(s) to pick up the keys the next time it communicates with the server. A certificate, or client signature, is necessary if **Client signature** is enabled in the **Authentication** section of the **Server configuration** panel in the **Server** tab (see **Authentication** on page 174).

When you click the button, DME shows a page such as the following:



When you click **Confirm**, the symbol in the **Key** column changes to , meaning that new keys have been generated, and that the client must pick up the new keys the next time it connects with the server. If the next request by the client is successful, the **Key** column shows , signifying that the client was successfully signed.

See also **Key** on page 50 for a description of all possible symbols in the **Key** column.

If **Auto sign** is enabled in the **Server configuration** panel, a certificate will be issued automatically to devices that are known to the system but which do not have a certificate. See **Authentication** on page 174 and the special documentation "Client signing" (available upon request).

Misc. actions

The **Misc actions** group of the page menu in the **Devices** tab contains miscellaneous functions.

Batch update settings

You can update a selection of devices with new settings. To use this function, select one or more devices from the device list, and click **Batch update settings**. A window similar to the **Settings** section of the **Device defaults** panel is shown, but all settings are disabled (gray).

To change settings for the selected device, select the **Override** field for the settings in question. This enables you to change the settings from the default values to the new, desired values.

Change the settings as desired, and click **Save** to save the new settings. A dialog shows the settings you have changed and asks you to confirm that you wish to save the settings and send it to the device(s) at the next synchronization. If you also select the field **Push** in the confirmation dialog, the changes are pushed to the device(s) immediately.

For a description of each of the many device settings, see **Appendix A: Device settings** on page 312.

Import devices

You can import new devices into the current list of devices.



To do this, prepare a semicolon-separated import file with the following information:

- ❖ **Device ID:** Either the device IMEI number, the MEID number for CDMA devices, the MD5 hash of the Wi-Fi MAC address (for Apple iOS devices), or the MAC address without ":" separators for Wi-Fi-only Android tablets). This value is the only mandatory value.
- ❖ **Phone number:** The phone number of the device, if known. Required if **User ID** and **User Type** are set.
- ❖ **Platform:** Any value. The platform specification will be updated by the device the first time it performs a full system information synchronization. Required if **User ID** and **User Type** are set.
- ❖ **User ID:** Used for associating the device with a user, rather than letting DME create the association the first time the user logs on. This way you can prevent mix-ups if users switch phones before logging on to DME.

If you do not specify a user ID, DME will create one for you during the first login (if **Create device on first connect** is enabled). If this is a Basic MDM device, a user will be created on the form `DMEUSERnnnn`; if not, the user name will be retrieved from LDAP/AD.

- ❖ **User Type:** This can be `DMO_USER` (Basic MDM device user) or `NORMAL`. This value is disregarded if **User ID** is empty, as DME will find out the first time the user connects.

The rules above can be written thusly:

```
Device ID; [Phone number; [Platform; Phone model; [User ID;
User Type ]]]
```

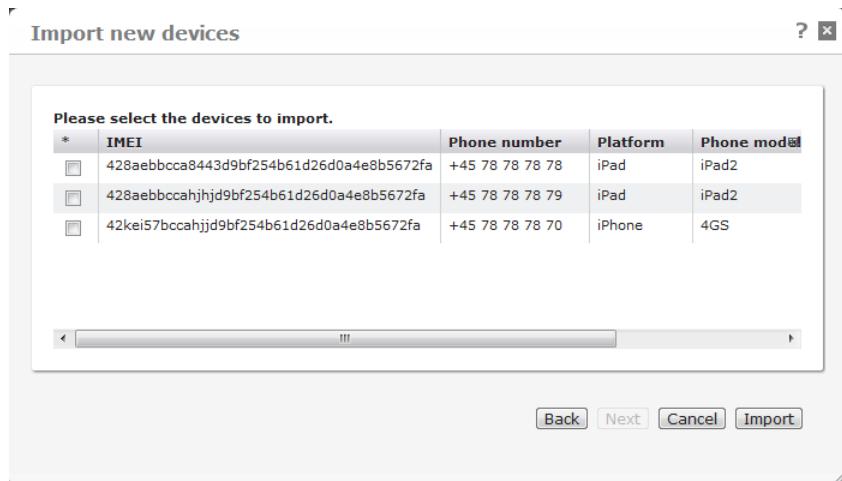
The first line in the imported CSV file must specify the headers of the data you wish to import. Possible values are (in the order listed above):

```
terminalID;phoneNumber;platform;phoneModel;userID;userType
```

Tip: Before building an import file, select the **Export devices** function, and open the resulting file in a text editor. The first line gives you hints to the structure of the import file.

Click **Upload** to locate the text file with comma-separated values. DME checks if the file is valid.

If the file is valid, click **Next** to import the list. You can now select the devices that you want to install:



*	IMEI	Phone number	Platform	Phone model
☐	428aebbcca8443d9bf254b61d26d0a4e8b5672fa	+45 78 78 78 78	iPad	iPad2
☐	428aebbcahjhd9bf254b61d26d0a4e8b5672fa	+45 78 78 78 79	iPad	iPad2
☐	42kei57bccahjjd9bf254b61d26d0a4e8b5672fa	+45 78 78 78 70	iPhone	4GS

Select the devices (you can click the * column header to select all), and click **Import**.

Note that the first time a device connects with the server, the values specified in this initial import will be adjusted according to the real values reported by the device.

For information about other ways of creating devices in the list, see **New device** on page 55 and the field **Create device on first connect** in the **Security** section of **Authentication** on page 174.

Export devices

Select this function to export the current list of devices to a file with semicolon-separated values (CSV).

When you click **Export**, DME will download a CSV file with all the device information to your browser. Note that your browser's pop-up blocker may refuse this. The file is saved as

`devices_export_<currentdate>.csv`.

The first line in the exported file will contain the names of the exported columns:

`terminalID` - the device ID. Note that any dashes etc. are removed from the device ID.

`dmeVersion` - the version of DME installed on the device.

`inUse` - whether the device is in use - the value of the **License** column in the **Devices** tab.

`lastUsed` - the time of the last synchronization of the device.

`lastUserID` - the ID of the previous user of the device.

`locked` - whether the device is locked (blocked).

`phoneModel` - the model name of the device.

`phoneNumber` - the phone number of the device.

`platform` - the device platform, for instance `Android` or `Symbian`.

`userID` - the ID of the current user of the device. May be the same as `lastUserID`.

`userType` - the user type of the device - `Normal` for users of the full DME client, `DMO_user` for users of the DME Basic MDM client.

Setting up users

To see and edit details about the user in question, select an item with a user ID in the table, and click **View user info** in the page menu.

The following *tab toolbar actions* are available from the user setup panel:

- ❖ Delete user (see **Remove user** on page 57)
- ❖ Toggle user lock (see **Toggle user lock** on page 57)

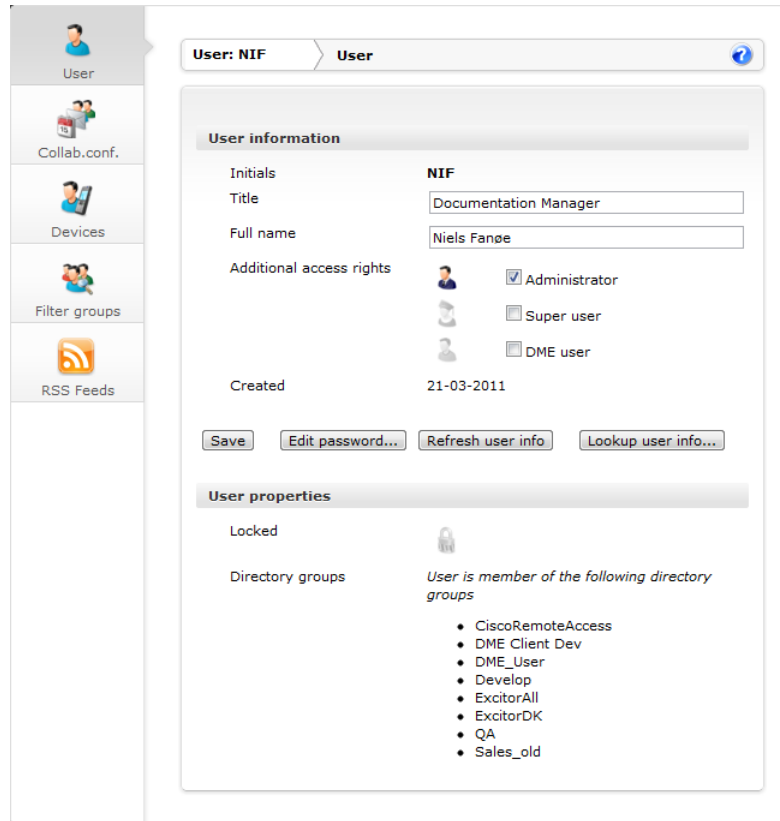
The following *page menu function* is available from the user setup panel:

- ❖ Send SMS (see **Send SMS** on page 66)

The following sections describe the *user setup panel*.

User

This panel section is a quick overview of the selected user.



This panel section shows information about the current user. The information is retrieved from the LDAP/Active Directory server, and is divided into two sections.

User information

The **User information** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ Initials

The user's initials are the unique ID of the user, and cannot be modified.

❖ Title

Here you can change the user's title or occupation. Note that the changes will be lost when the user values are refreshed from the directory, unless the user is a local user. The values are refreshed by clicking the **Refresh user info** button (see below).

❖ Full name

Here you can change the name of the current user. Note that the changes will be lost when the user values are refreshed from the directory, unless the user is a local user.

❖ Additional access rights

In this field you can specify any special DME-specific access rights that you want to grant the current user, by specifying the current user's membership of the local roles available in the DME system. It is not good practice to use a mix of local groups and LDAP/AD groups. However, the local groups can be used to designate some users as administrators or super users, who can log on to the DME server even if the connection to the directory server is broken.

A user can be given any combination of the following rights: **Administrator**, **Superuser**, and **DME user**. Granting these rights makes the user member of the corresponding user group: **DME_Admin**, **DME_Superuser**, or **DME_User**. Note that the group membership is not hierarchical: being an Administrator does not make you a DME user. For more information about users and roles, see **About users** on page 78 and **About roles** on page 78.

❖ Created

This field shows when the current user was created in the local DME database.

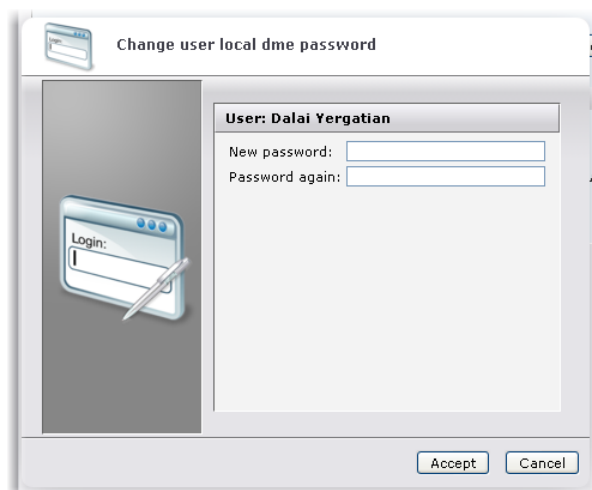
The four buttons along the bottom of this section of the window let you perform actions on the current user:

❖ Save

When you click **Save**, the title, name and access rights are changed and stored in the local DME database.

❖ Edit password...

Click this button to change the password of the user. The following window appears:



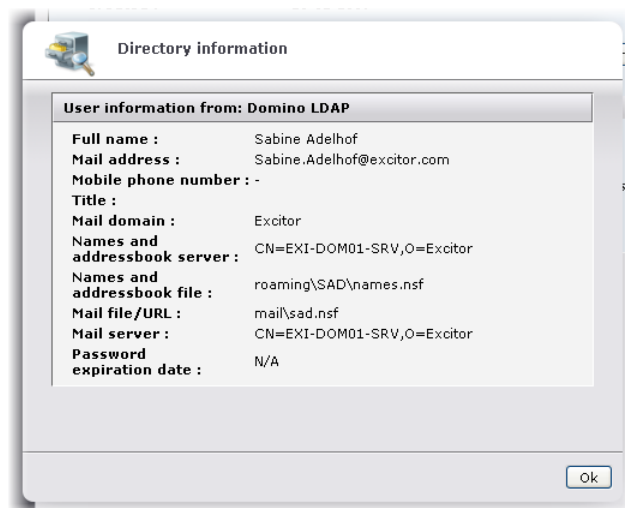
Enter the new password, repeat it in the field **Password again**, and click **Accept**. This applies to local users only (see **About users** on page 78).

❖ Refresh user info

Click this button to flush the credentials cache on the DME server. The credentials cache consists of user information such as password, group relations etc. The caching is done to prevent the DME server from connecting to the LDAP or AD directory every time it has to validate the user. If the password or the group relationship is changed on the server, you must flush the cache to ensure that the credentials are up-to-date. If the user is listed in the directory, any changes in the title or full name will be replaced by information from the directory server.

❖ Lookup user info...

Click this button to view the information registered in the directory about the current user, for instance:



The settings shown reflect the configuration on the Domino LDAP or Active Directory server, including any local configuration of the user. You are able to overwrite this configuration with a manual configuration (see the section **Collab.conf.** below).

User properties

The **User properties** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ Locked

This field shows if the current user is locked. To toggle the lock status of a user, click the **Lock user** icon in the tab toolbar. For more information, see **Toggle user lock** on page 57.

❖ Directory groups

This field shows the groups of which the current LDAP/AD user is a member.

About users

If the DME server is configured to validate the connecting users against LDAP/Active Directory, each user will automatically be created on the DME Server if validation against the directory is successful.

If the DME Server does not validate users against through a directory lookup, all users must be created locally on the DME Server with the correct passwords and group relations before they can connect.

During installation of the DME Server, a user with the name **SYSADM** is created. This is a local user with the local role **DME_Admin**, who can log into the Web Administration Interface even if the LDAP or AD directory is down.

About roles

In some cases, you can use locally defined roles to validate the users.

If the DME server is linked with a directory server, either LDAP or Active Directory, it is *not advisable* to use local roles, because these can make a user's access rights less transparent. Instead, three groups must be created in the directory, and the users of DME should be divided into these groups in the following way:

1. All users who connect to DME Server from a device should be added to the group **DME_User**
2. All users who are allowed full use of the Web Administration Interface (DME Administrators) must be in the group **DME_Admin**
3. All users who are allowed to use part of the Web Administration Interface must be in the group **DME_Superuser**. These users are able to use the Web Administration Interface but with some restrictions. For instance, superusers cannot:
 - ❖ Change server settings.
 - ❖ Change connector settings.
 - ❖ Assign group privileges to users.
 - ❖ Upload license files.
 - ❖ Upload new server software.

The superuser can see all settings but may not be able to change them. The primary role of a superuser is to change settings for groups and devices to which he or she has access.

Please note that members of the **DME_Admin** or **DME_Superuser** groups do not have the privileges of the **DME_User** group. This means that an administrator or superuser will normally have to be included in both groups, if he or she is also a DME user (which will normally be the case).

It is advisable to give at least one user the local administrator role. This ensures that this user can log into the Web Administration Interface, even if the directory server should become unavailable.

If the DME server is not configured to validate users against a directory server, the two groups **DME_User** and **DME_Admin** must be created as local roles on the DME server. The users must then be related to these local roles on the user profile on the DME server. This is described in the previous section - see **About users** on page 78.

If you do not wish to use the standard group names (**DME_User**, **DME_Admin** and **DME_Superuser**), for instance if you need to use other names for these groups for policy reasons, you can *impersonate* these groups in the connector **Domain** setup page, in the **User groups (group graph)** section. This means that you can use other directory groups instead of the DME groups mentioned above. You can read more about this in **Domain** on page 276.

Switching users

You can allow users to log in to DME using any device. This requires that the setting **Device allowed to switch users** is enabled in the **Authentication** section of the **Server configuration** panel in the **Server** tab (see **Authentication** on page 174). If this setting is enabled, one DME user is able to log in using another user's device. This will result in the following sequence of events:

- ❖ All DME information belonging to the previous user will be cleared on the device (including calendar information stored in the device calendar, synchronized files, etc.)
- ❖ In the DME Admin interface, the device will be linked to the new user.
- ❖ Entries will be made in the device history log for both users.
- ❖ New voice and data statistics will be registered for the new user.

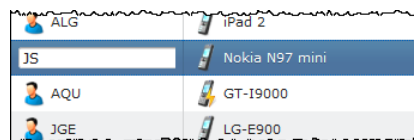
In many organizations, the DME administrator wants to be able to control whether a user can pass his device to another user. This is done by disabling the setting **Device allowed to switch users**. Note that in the regular DME client, a user can attempt to log in on another user's device even if this setting is disabled. This will result in a connection error, but the link to the previous user is lost as described above. In the Basic MDM client, however, the **User name** field in the client is locked if this setting is disabled, preventing even the attempt to change the user name.

If you manually want to register a device as belonging to another user, do the following.

➤ **Switching a device to another user**

1. Locate the device in the **Devices** tab.
2. Press **F2** to edit the user initials.

You can now enter the initials of the new user:



3. Press **Enter** to save the new initials, or **ctrl+z** to exit without saving the change.

Note that you should enter the initials of an existing LDAP/AD directory user. If another device is already assigned to the user, this device will be added to the user. If the initials that you enter do not exist in the directory, a local DME user will be created.

If you want to remove the association between a device and a user, without assigning the device to a new user, use the action **Detach user from device** (see **Detach user from device** on page 57).

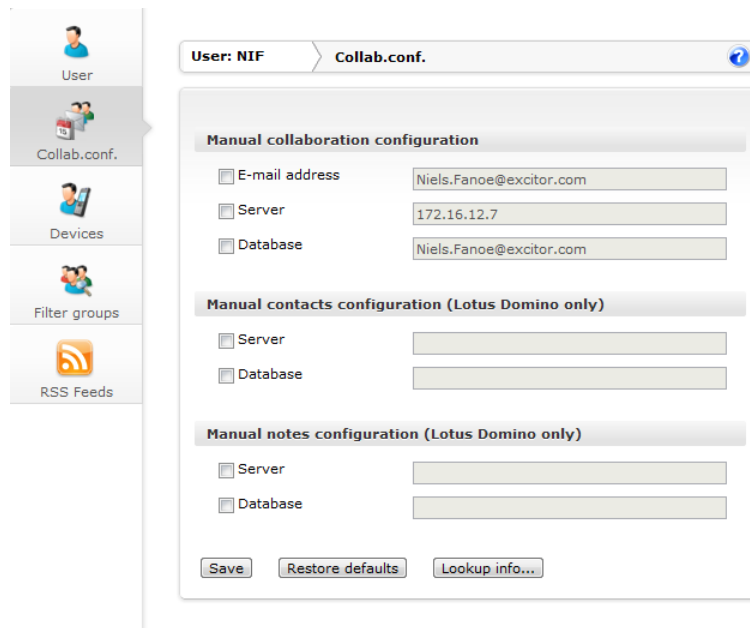
Note that white-shirt user icons signify Basic MDM users, for which special rules apply. For more information, see **Appendix G: The Basic MDM client** on page 391.

Collab.conf.

In this panel section you can enable or disable push mail, and you can inspect or change the user's configuration in the collaboration system. The collaboration configuration is a vital part of the user configuration. You can manually change the default configuration of the collaboration system for this user within four areas: SMS push setting, e-mail setup, contacts setup (Domino only), and personal notebook setup (Domino only).

The default values of these settings are retrieved from the setup panels of the connector which services the current user (see **Setting up connectors** on page 273). You may need to change the collaboration system configuration for individual users if you are managing users from different domains, for instance in a hosted environment. If this is the case, you may request special documentation from your DME partner: "DME Hosting Setup".

To change a setting, select the checkbox in front of the field you wish to change, and change the value of the setting. Click **Save** when you have made all the required configurations. **Please note that** when you change a setting, it is only used by DME if the corresponding checkmark is set before you click **Save**.



User: NIF Collab.conf.

Manual collaboration configuration

☐ E-mail address Niels.Fanoe@excitor.com

☐ Server 172.16.12.7

☐ Database Niels.Fanoe@excitor.com

Manual contacts configuration (Lotus Domino only)

☐ Server

☐ Database

Manual notes configuration (Lotus Domino only)

☐ Server

☐ Database

Save Restore defaults Lookup info...

The **Manual collaboration configuration** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ E-mail address

If a user's e-mail address is not retrieved from the LDAP/AD directory, enter the address here. The e-mail address is used to locate the correct mailbox for the user in question.

❖ **Server**

If you need to overwrite the mail server information retrieved from the directory or from the corresponding field in the connector setup (see ***E-mail and PIM*** on page 285), specify the mail server here. Note that on Exchange systems, DME will automatically add **/exchange** in the appropriate place, unless the field **Virtual OWA directory** (see ***E-mail and PIM*** on page 285) is completed.

❖ **Database**

If you need to overwrite the mail file path information retrieved from the directory or from the corresponding field in the connector setup (see ***E-mail and PIM*** on page 285), or if no directory is set up, specify the mail file here. This can for instance be necessary if the mail boxes of several DME mail servers are replicated to a server with a different mail box path.

The **Manual contacts configuration** group of functions contains the following fields: 

❖ **Server**

If you wish to use a contacts server which is different from the one retrieved from the Domino LDAP or the one configured for the connector (see ***E-mail and PIM*** on page 285), specify it with this setting.

❖ **Database**

If you wish to use a contacts database which is different from the one retrieved from the Domino LDAP or the one configured for the connector, specify it with this setting.

The **Manual notes configuration** group of functions contains the following fields: 

❖ **Server**

If you wish to use a server for personal notebooks (called *Journals* in Domino versions before 8.5) which is different from the one retrieved from the Domino LDAP or the one configured for the connector (see ***E-mail and PIM*** on page 285), specify it with this setting.

❖ **Database**

If you wish to use a personal notebook database which is different from the one retrieved from the Domino LDAP or the one configured for the connector, specify it with this setting.

Click **Save** to save the new settings.

If you click **Restore defaults**, any overrides are erased, and the various fields on this page are re-populated from the directory.

If you click **Lookup info...** you can view the information registered in LDAP about the current user. See the previous section **User** for more information.

Devices

This panel section shows a historical list of the devices to which the currently selected user has been connected.

Devices 				
	Device	Phone model	From	To
1.	35621900-059893-3	 Nokia E61i	12-12-2007	12-12-2007
2.	35703600-705698-2	 PM300	06-12-2007	06-12-2007

The device in the first line is the device latest held by the user. The list shows which device was used, and the dates between which the device was used.

Filter groups

This panel section enables you to set up a user-specific filter. The filter is defined by assigning one or more LDAP groups to the currently selected user. When the filter is active, the user can only see information pertaining to the users in the selected LDAP groups when he or she is logged in to DME server. The filter works across the entire DME server.

Example: A filter is applied to the user **Support01**, which specifies that **Support01** should only see information pertaining to the LDAP groups **Sales** and **Finance**. Now the **Devices** tab will only show devices belonging to users from these groups, and the log (see section **Log** on page 130) will only show information pertaining to users in the selected groups.

You can tell that a group filter has been applied by looking at the text filter box in the toolbar. When the magnifier-and-user icon:



is shown inside the text filter box, the currently shown list or log is filtered in this way.

Apart from filtering by groups, you can select the field **Show system entries**. If this field is selected, system messages which are not associated with any user will also be shown in the log.

RSS feeds

In this panel section, you can define RSS feeds that are specific to the selected user.

The list shows the feeds currently defined for this user. You can set up feeds for groups (see **View and apply settings** on page 242) and as default settings (see **Default settings** on page 233).

For more information about adding and deleting RSS feeds, see **RSS feeds** on page 236.

Setting up devices

When you double-click a device in the table (or select a device and click **View device info** in the page menu), you can see and edit details about the device in question.

When a new device is created in DME, a set of default settings for the device is sent to the client the first time the device connects with the server, or when a new user takes over an existing device. Through a careful use of default settings and locking device settings you can enforce your company's security policies. In the following, a *setting* can be anything found in the **Default settings** setup panel - settings, files, application blocks, etc. The applicable settings depend on the capabilities of the device and the DME client for the device platform in question.

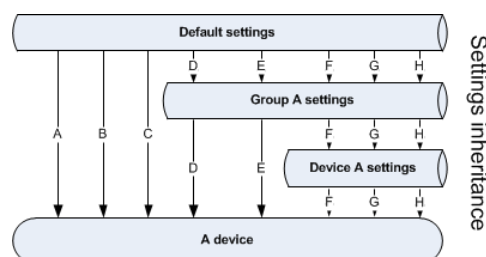
You can specify settings for a device at device at three levels:

1. Using **Server > Default settings**
2. Using **Server > Group management** > edit a group to which the device belongs
3. Using **Devices** > edit a specific device

DME uses the following order of inheritance when pushing settings etc. to a device:

- ❖ *Default settings are overwritten by group settings*
- ❖ *Group settings are overwritten by device settings*

This can be illustrated in the following way:



Settings set in **Default settings** apply to any device, unless the same setting has been changed for a group of which the device is a member, or changed for that device only. In the illustration above, the settings **A**, **B**, and **C** are applied to all devices. Devices that are member of **Group A** do not get default settings for settings **D**, **E**, **F**, **G**, and **H**, but inherit them from **Group A**. Furthermore, the specific device **A** does not inherit settings **F**, **G**, or **H** from the group, but gets the settings from the specific device.

This way you can set up a security policy by specifying strict default settings, and possibly make more relaxed settings for selected groups of devices or individual devices. For more information about default settings, see **Default settings** on page 233. For more information about how membership of different groups is handled, see **Group hierarchy and inheritance** on page 237.

When you have specified the various categories of settings in this setup panel as desired, remember to click **Save** to commit the settings to the DME server.

The following *tab toolbar actions* are available from the device setup panel:

- ❖ Remove device (see **Remove device** on page 58)
- ❖ Toggle device lock (see **Toggle device lock** on page 61)
- ❖ Toggle license (see **Toggle license**)
- ❖ Detach user from device (see **Detach user from device** on page 57)
- ❖ New device signing key (see **Add client signing key** on page 70)
- ❖ Remove device signing key (see **Remove client signing key** on page 70)

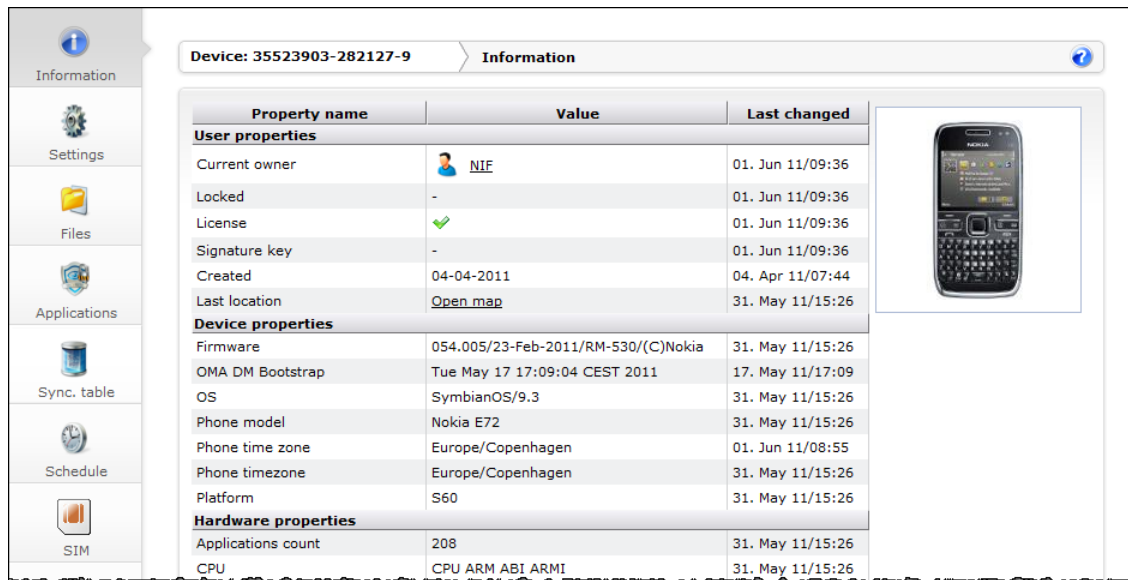
Furthermore, if the current device is an enrolled Apple iOS device, some Apple-specific actions are available. See **Apple MDM** on page 99.

The following *page menu functions* are available from the device setup panel:

- ❖ All functions in the **Send to device** page menu section (see **Send to device** on page 63)

The following sections describe the *device setup panel*.

Information



Property name	Value	Last changed
User properties		
Current owner	NIE	01. Jun 11/09:36
Locked	-	01. Jun 11/09:36
License	✓	01. Jun 11/09:36
Signature key	-	01. Jun 11/09:36
Created	04-04-2011	04. Apr 11/07:44
Last location	Open map	31. May 11/15:26
Device properties		
Firmware	054.005/23-Feb-2011/RM-530/(C)Nokia	31. May 11/15:26
OMA DM Bootstrap	Tue May 17 17:09:04 CEST 2011	17. May 11/17:09
OS	SymbianOS/9.3	31. May 11/15:26
Phone model	Nokia E72	31. May 11/15:26
Phone time zone	Europe/Copenhagen	01. Jun 11/08:55
Phone timezone	Europe/Copenhagen	31. May 11/15:26
Platform	S60	31. May 11/15:26
Hardware properties		
Applications count	208	31. May 11/15:26
CPU	CPU ARM ABI ARMI	31. May 11/15:26



This panel section provides an overview of the selected device. The information is updated every time a full system info is transferred from the client, or at least once every three days.

The information is divided into different sections:

- ❖ **User properties:** Information about the user — current owner, licensing, lock status, client signature status, and possibly location (see Location below).
- ❖ **Device properties:** Information about the device - model, platform, operating system, language, number of applications, etc.
- ❖ **Hardware properties:** Information about the device hardware — processor, drives, etc.
- ❖ **DME properties:** Long version of the DME client information, useful in a support context. Apple or GCM push token value. Maximum batch and field size.
- ❖ **Network properties:** Current cell ID and location information of the device. Here you can see if the phone is currently roaming.
- ❖ **Device security:** If an Apple device is enrolled, and profiles have been installed, a summary of these profiles may be shown here.
- ❖ **Device servers:** List of servers running on the device, with version numbers (if any). Symbian only.

The information collected from the device in these sections varies according to the type of device and is not described in detail here. For every piece of information, the date of when the property was last changed is shown.

➤ **Uploading a picture of the device**

If a picture of the device has been uploaded to the server, it is shown next to the device properties section. A picture is usually shown if the device has been bootstrapped (see **Bootstrapping devices** on page 405). If a picture is not shown, you can upload a picture yourself as described below.

1. Click **Upload device picture** at the bottom of the screen (only available if DME could not find a picture).
2. Browse to the picture.

You can download a picture from the DME website to your disk by clicking the **Pictures can be downloaded here** link in the dialog.

3. Click **Accept**.

The picture is uploaded to the server and can be seen next to the information table and in the mouse-over info box from the **Devices** tab and elsewhere.

Location

Many companies have a Corporate Social Responsibility strategy, in which they commit themselves to being able to quickly locate traveling employees in case of natural disasters, national unrest, or terrorist attacks in the area in which the employee may be traveling. With DME, the last known location of the device can quickly be shown.

The feature can also simply be used as a help locating a lost device.

Based on the network information sent in by the device with the full system information sync, which is listed in the **Network properties** section of the device information page, DME is able to build a link to Google Maps, pinpointing the approximate location of the device. The link is built using the open source database of cell IDs and locations at <http://www.opencellid.org>. Please note that in order to use this functionality, the DME server's firewall must allow traffic to that website over HTTP, as specified in the installation documentation.

If the cell ID is found in the Open Cell ID database, a link with the text **Open map** is shown after the **Last location** property in the **User properties** section. If the cell ID could not be found in the database, the location will be based on the **Location area code**. This is not as precise as using the cell ID, as the "location area" may cover an area several miles across. In this case, the text **(Inaccurate positioning based on location area)** is added after the link to Google Maps.

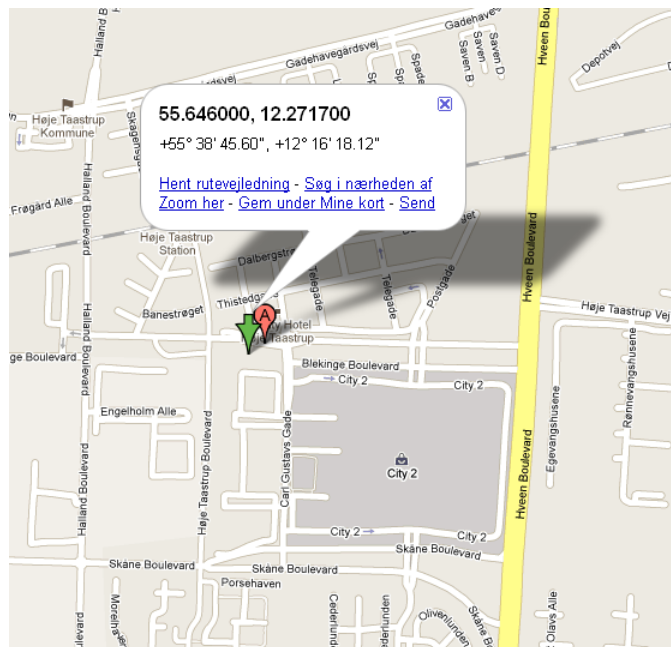
If DME is unable to open the Open Cell ID database within a certain time (half a second by default), the message **Could not open location database at OpenCellID.** is shown.

This feature can be disabled completely, for instance if local employee privacy protection laws requires it. To disable the feature, you need to change a field in the DME database. Change the field `LAST_LOCATION_TIMEOUT` in the `DME_ServerConfiguration` table to 0 (zero). If you disable the feature in this way, the message **Disabled** is shown in this window.

Note about iOS devices: The location feature does not work for iOS devices, as iOS devices never report their current Cell ID.

➤ **Locating a device**

- ❖ Remember that the cell ID is sent to the server with the full system information sync. As the device only makes a full system sync at intervals, it is recommended to use the **Force synchronization** feature on the device before looking up its location:
 1. Select the device in question in the **Devices** tab.
 2. Select **Force synchronization** in the page menu.
 3. Choose **Import system info**.
 4. Click **Send**.
 - ❖ After synchronizing, click the **Open map** link.
- A web page from Google Maps shows the approximate location of the device, for instance:



The green arrow shows the location. Click the arrow to view the exact coordinates and see the usual Google options.

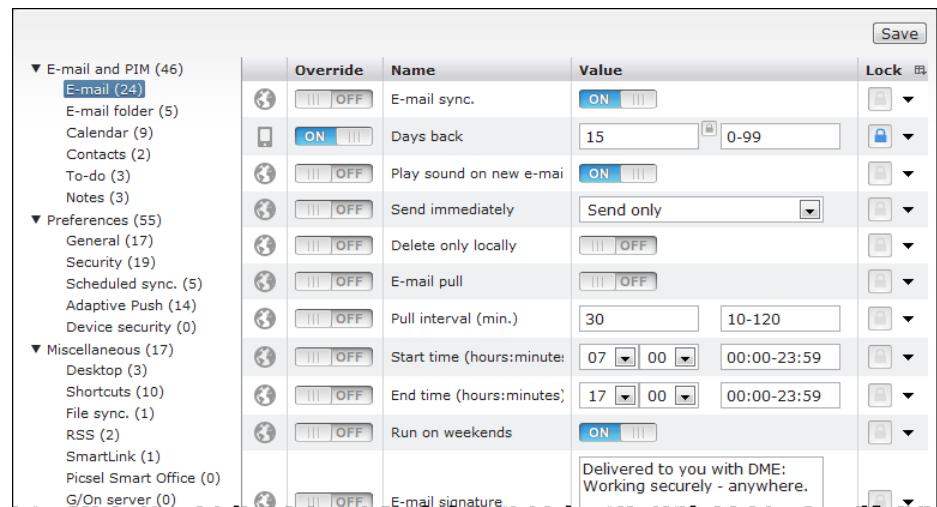
A note on precision: The cell ID gives an **approximate location** of the device, as the location is not based on GPS data. This is also in line with intended usage of this functionality, which is to give you a general idea where the device is rather than the exact location. For instance, you can see "Oh, he's at the airport" or "Oh, she's in New York" rather than "Oh, he's at 7, Horniman Drive".

Settings



In this panel section you can configure the settings of the individual device, if you need to override default or group settings. The settings shown are all the settings available on the device, as well as settings that are only available on the server.

When a new device connects to the server for the first time, it will be set to use the default settings (see the section **Default settings** on page 233). These settings can be changed here, and also on the physical device unless they are marked as *locked* in this window. Note also that you can change settings for multiple devices by selecting the devices in the **Devices** tab and clicking **Batch update settings** in the page menu. For more information, see **Batch update settings** on page 71.



Override	Name	Value	Lock
☐	E-mail sync.	ON	☐
☒	Days back	15 (0-99)	☐
☐	Play sound on new e-mail	ON	☐
☐	Send immediately	Send only	☐
☐	Delete only locally	☐	☐
☐	E-mail pull	☐	☐
☐	Pull interval (min.)	30 (10-120)	☐
☐	Start time (hours:minutes)	07:00 (00:00-23:59)	☐
☐	End time (hours:minutes)	17:00 (00:00-23:59)	☐
☐	Run on weekends	ON	☐
☐	E-mail signature	Delivered to you with DME: Working securely - anywhere.	☐

As mentioned, the **Settings** panel section contains all possible settings for the current device. To the left is a list of groups of settings, arranged in up to four categories: **E-mail and PIM**, **Preferences**, **Miscellaneous**, and possibly **Cost alerts** (if the current device supports cost alerts). These groups and categories are made to make it easier to find each setting. The list is expanded by default, but you can collapse and expand each category by clicking the small triangle before the category name. The number of settings in each group is shown in parentheses after the group name.

Each of the settings groups contains a number of settings, which are shown in the *settings table* when you click the settings group. The settings table contains the following columns:

❖ **(no header)**

This column shows where the current setting is derived from:

 The current setting derives from **default settings**. If you double-click the setting, you are taken to the corresponding setting in the **Default settings**.

 The current setting derives from a **group** of which this device is member, overriding the default setting. If you double-click the setting, you are taken to the **Settings** panel section of the group from which the setting is derived.

 The current setting has been set for this device specifically, overriding default and group settings.

❖ **Override**

By switching this button to **ON**, you can override the current setting on the device. A default or group setting can be overridden to become a device setting. The button switches to **ON** automatically if you change the setting value. If you then switch the button back to **OFF**, the setting will revert to its original value. This is the way to restore a default or group setting.

When this button is switched on, the icon in the leftmost column may change as well. For instance, if you change a default setting to something else, the icon will change from a globe icon to a device icon.

❖ **Name**

This is the name of the setting. For information about the meaning of each setting, see **Appendix A: Device settings** on page 312.

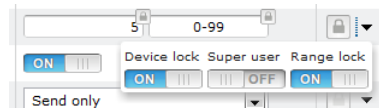
❖ **Value**

This column holds the value or values of the current setting. The value can have the form of an ON/OFF switch, a text field, or numerical field, a range, a time and date field, or a selection box. If

the value field contains a small padlock overlay , it means that the value is locked. See below.

❖ **Lock**

With the **Lock** button, you can specify if the current setting should be locked:



Device lock: This lock makes the current setting read-only for the device. This means that the device user will be unable to change the setting from the device. However, anyone with access to the DME web interface can change the setting on this page.

Super user: This locks the current setting for superusers (see **About roles** on page 78). If a setting is locked for superusers, a superuser is unable to change the setting for groups of devices or for individual devices.

Range lock: This lock makes it impossible for superusers to set the value of the setting beyond the range specified here (if the **Super user** lock is **OFF**).

When you select either of these locks, a small padlock overlay  is shown over the setting's value or range.

❖ **Changed**

This column shows the date and time for when the current setting was last changed. This column is hidden by default.

❖ **Changed by**

This column shows the initials of the person who last changed the current setting. This column is hidden by default.

Change the settings as desired, and click **Save** to save the new settings. A dialog shows which settings you have changed, and asks you to confirm that you wish to save the settings and send them to the device at the next synchronization.

The available settings are described further in **Appendix A: Device settings** on page 312. See also **View and apply settings** on page 242 for information about working with group settings.

Files



With DME you can push files to devices or synchronize files between a server location and the device much the same way as e-mail and calendar information. This feature can be used for distributing different files to the devices of different DME users.

Files can be synchronized with devices at three levels:

1. With *all devices*: Click **Server** > **Default settings** > **Files**
2. With a *group of devices*: Click **Server** > **Group management** > double-click a group > **Files**
3. With one *specific device*: Click **Devices** > double-click a device > **Files**

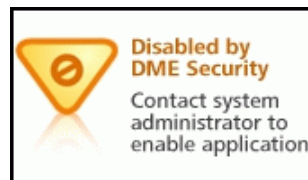
The method by which files are synchronized is the same in all three cases.

This panel section shows a list of file synchronization rules that apply to the currently edited set of devices (all devices, a group of devices, or a specific device). For more information, see **Appendix C: File synchronization** on page 362.

Applications



This panel section contains a list of the applications and network connection types installed on the currently selected device. A network connection type is an access point to a network, controlled by the device - for instance a Bluetooth connection. You can block one or several applications or connections on the device. If an application or connection is blocked, the user will receive the following warning when he or she tries to use the application or network connection:



Select the **Use** field for an application or connection to change the setting for this device - that is, to block or unblock it. The icon in the **Status** field changes to indicate that you are overriding a default or group setting.

To block or remove the blocking of applications and connections for the device, select or de-select the **Block** field for the item(s) in question, and click **Save** to save the new settings. A dialog shows the settings you have changed and asks you to confirm that you wish to save the settings and send it to the device(s) at the next synchronization. If you also select the field **Push** in the confirmation dialog, the changes are pushed to the device(s) immediately.

Note that in order to block application in Apple iOS devices, you must enroll the device and create a configuration profile. See MDM on Apple iOS and **Apple iOS profiles** on page 120 for more information.

Some applications cannot be blocked. These are applications which are used by DME, or which are vital for the device to work properly, and it is therefore not possible to block them.

Users are unable to block or unblock applications or connections from the client, and hence there is no **Lock** column as in the **Settings** panel section. The following columns are available:

❖ **Unique ID**

This column is the unique identification for the application. The ID can be used to verify the application in case any doubt as to the identity of the application arises.

❖ **Name**

This column shows the common name of the application or network connection.

❖ **Type**

This column indicates if the current item is an application or a network connection.

❖ **Last changed**

Shows the date and time of when the setting was last changed for the current item.

❖ **Status**

This column shows the status of each application:



The default value of the **Block** setting of the current application applies to this device.



The **Block** setting of the current application has been set for a group of which this device is a member (the setting applies to all devices in the group that contain this application), overriding default settings.



The **Block** setting has been set for this device (overriding group and default settings).



If the current device is an enrolled Apple iOS device, you can refresh the list of currently installed apps on the device by clicking the **Retrieve application list** action.

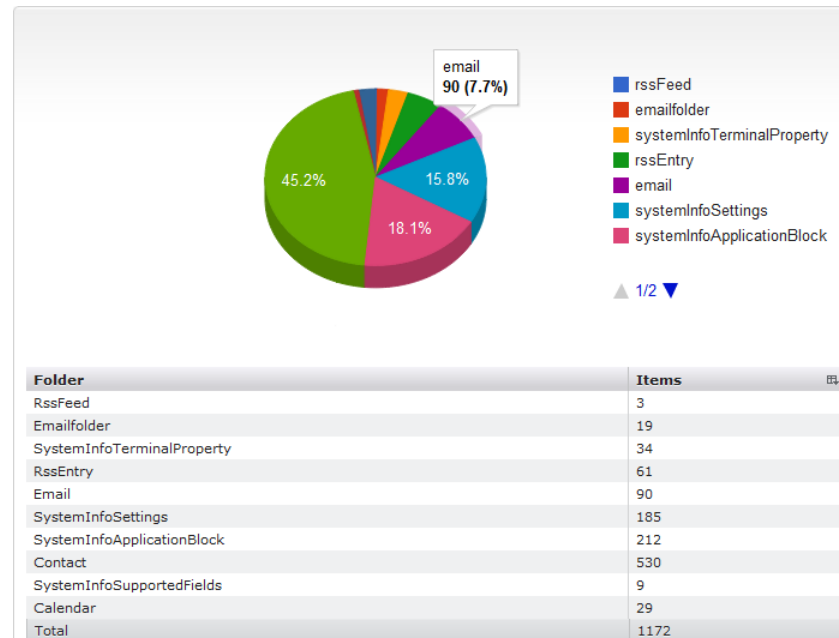
Sync. table



This panel section shows the synchronization table. The sync. table reflects the data that has actually been synchronized on the device. The table shows how many resource items that exist on the device. An item can for example be a calendar item, an e-mail, or a contact person.

If you need to delete the sync. tables, you can send an import command to the device instead. This in effect flushes the sync. table and at the same time ensures that no duplicate entries are created on the device. See **Force synchronization** on page 61.

Above the sync. table a graph shows the distribution of the different types of items on the device. If you let the mouse pointer rest on each section in the graph, a tooltip shows the exact percentage of each item type.



If you delete a device in the device list, the synchronization table for the device is also deleted.

Schedule



This panel section contains three subtabs:

❖ **Schedule**

This subtab shows the notification schedule which has been set up for the current device. Initially, it reflects the default settings made in the **Notification** section of the **Server** tab (or settings made for a group of which the current device is member), but you can change it here for the individual device using the functions along the top of the table. For more information, see **Schedule** on page 204.

❖ **Pending**

This subtab shows notifications that are pending for the device, that is notifications that have been found, but not been sent to the device yet. For more information, see **Pending** on page 220.

❖ Process

This subtab shows current scanning tasks for the server. For more information, see **Process** on page 214.

For more information about the notification framework, see **Notifications** on page 202.

SIM



Each device may or may not contain a SIM card, and sometimes a device contains two. For each SIM card there are some codes that you may wish to register and save to remember. In this panel item, you can register PIN 1, PIN 2, PUK 1, and PUK 2 codes for each SIM card. Please note that the codes are stored in the database in clear text.

Device: 35575701-041199-5
SIM

Name	Value
IMSI	238012150953610
PIN 1	
PIN 2	
PUK 1	
PUK 2	

Save SIM information

Name	Value
IMSI	238201004171444
PIN 1	
PIN 2	
PUK 1	
PUK 2	

Save SIM information

DME automatically registers the IMSI number of the SIM card. The codes you enter will follow the SIM card, even if it is later switched to another device. Click **Save SIM information** to save the numbers you enter. Please note, however, that Apple iOS devices do not report their IMSI numbers.

More SIM card related information is stored in the **Network properties** section of the device **Information** panel. See **Information** on page 86.

Users



This panel section shows who has been using the currently selected device.

Users 				
	User Id	Name	From	To
1.	NIF	Niels Fanøe	21-09-2007	28-11-2007
2.	QAUSER2	QA Test User2	15-11-2007	15-11-2007

The name in the first line is the latest holder of the device. You can click the User ID to view and edit information about the user in question.

Group



In this panel section you can see if the current device is member of a **Directory group** or any group of the type **Manual group**, and when the device became a member of the group in question.

Furthermore, you can assign the current device to a group of the type **Manual group** by picking the group in the **Manual connected group** drop-down list. To un-assign a device from a group, select the blank value from the drop-down list. You cannot undo this action.

Manual groups are groups created for devices that need to be grouped together, but where a *smart group* is not sufficient because the devices are not logically related. For more information about smart groups, see **Adding groups** on page 240. If the device is assigned to a group, you can view and edit the group by clicking the group name in the list at the top.

A device can only be member of one directory or manual group. If you choose another group, the device will be assigned to the new group and forget its relation to the old group.

Asset



In this panel section you can enter more details about the current device. The information is stored in the DME database. You can use the fields in this section to create a history of the device for asset management purposes.

You can store the following data about the current device:

- ❖ Purchase date of the current device
 - ❖ When the warranty expires
 - ❖ Who you bought from (the supplier)
 - ❖ The number of the invoice from the supplier
 - ❖ The numbers of the purchase order and requisition made by you to authorize the purchase of the device
 - ❖ The original price of the device
 - ❖ A service log - records of any service or repairs done to the device
 - ❖ Three dates marking anything according to your policies
 - ❖ Three short texts recording anything according to your policies
 - ❖ Three long texts recording anything according to your policies
- All *dates* must be entered in the format dd-MM-yyyy (for example 13-01-2010). They are validated when you click **Save**.

Provisioning



This panel section shows a log of the provisioning jobs that have been sent to the current device over time. If no jobs have ever been sent, the panel section is not visible at all.

This window is similar to the **Provisioning status** window - but it only shows jobs for the current device, making it easy to track the installation history of individual devices.

You can select one of more installation jobs to remove the job records, restart the installation, or send a notification to the DM client on the devices. See **Provisioning actions** on page 98.

The following information is shown about each installation job on the current device:

- ❖ **Type**

This column shows if the installation job was an **OMA DM Job** or a download link (**SMS/WAP push** or **Mark for Installation**).

- ❖ **Job type**

Please see the corresponding column in **Provisioning > Provisioning status**.

- ❖ **Description**

This column tells the type of installation that was performed - for instance **Bootstrap devices (Default install)** - meaning that the job was a bootstrap with automatic installation of the default client for the device type in question.

❖ **Status**

Details about the current installation job. For more information, see the corresponding column in **Provisioning > Provisioning status**.

For more information, please see the **Provisioning status** on page 446 window.

Provisioning actions

The following actions are available for one or more selected installation job(s) in this list:

❖ **Remove provisioning jobs**

To clean up the provisioning status list, you can remove jobs by selecting them and clicking the **Remove provisioning jobs** action in the tab toolbar. You are prompted to confirm the deletion.

The installation jobs are automatically cleaned out from the list after 7 days.

❖ **Restart provisioning jobs**

If something has gone wrong with a provisioning job, for instance if a user did not use the software download link before the link timed out, you can select the job (or multiple jobs) and click the **Restart provisioning job** action in the tab toolbar. This will delete the original provisioning job, create an identical job, and send it again to the selected devices, including any options you have set for the job.

Note that DME cannot verify provisioning jobs of the type **Other software**.

❖ **Notify OMA DM jobs**

DME uses the standard push setting for notifying about OMA DM installation jobs. However, if the DME client is not available on the device, the DM engine on the device will never be notified of the installation job. Use this action to send a notification message by SMS directly to the DM engine on the device. Select the jobs that need special notification in this window (or the **Device setup > Provisioning** window), select this action, and click **Confirm** in the dialog that is shown.

This action is only shown if the selected installation job was created using OMA DM.

OMA DM



In this panel section you can order the current device to send in a complete DM tree to the server. The panel section is only available if the current device is a Symbian device, and it has been bootstrapped using OMA DM.

Note that this panel section has no relevance any more, as the ability to create and use OMA DDF is obsolete and has been removed from DME in version 4.1 Service Pack 1.

Apple MDM



Use this panel section to review and delete configuration and provisioning profiles, request phone information, and send certain actions to the phone.

This panel section is only shown for iOS 4+ devices that have been enrolled using Apple MDM as described in [MDM on Apple iOS](#).

For more information about provisioning profiles to iOS devices, see [Apple iOS profiles](#) on page 120.

The tab toolbar contains three actions: **Lock device**, **Clear passcode**, and **Erase device**. When you click an action, an Apple Push request is pushed to the device. The command push can be seen in the **Log** tab.



❖ Lock device

Click this action to immediately lock the current device. If a passcode is set, the user will need to enter the passcode to open the device.



❖ Clear passcode

Click this action to clear the current passcode from the device. This is useful if you have sent a configuration profile to the device which changes the passcode requirements. If you have not sent such a configuration profile, the passcode is simply removed.



❖ Erase device

Click this action to erase (wipe) the device completely. This can take a long time. After being erased, the device needs to be connected to a computer with iTunes to work again. No warning is given to the user, and the command is performed immediately even if the device is locked.

The subtabs in this panel section are described in the following.

Configuration profiles

The **Configuration profiles** subtab shows details about the configuration profiles installed on the device. **Configuration name**, **Identifier**, and **Owner** are shown by default. You can expand each configuration to see more details.

An enrolled device always contains the configuration profiles called **DME Mobile Device Management** and **iPhoneCA**. These profiles are installed on the device when they are enrolled into the DME system.

Configuration profiles can be sent to the device using the **Configuration** setup panel of the **Apple iOS profiles** page in the **Provisioning** tab. See **Apple iOS profiles** on page 120 for more information. Such profiles can be used for setting security and other settings (Payloads) on the enrolled device.

Two actions are available from this subtab:

- ❖  **Remove installed profile:** Select one or more profiles, and click this action to delete them. Note that if you delete the profile called **DME Mobile Device Management**, you will need to re-enroll the phone before you can contact it again. Furthermore, anything that has been installed using the MDM profile will be removed from the device. To update a profile, you must delete it from this panel section and re-send the edited profile from **Provisioning > Apple iOS profiles > Configuration**.
- ❖  **Refresh installed profile list:** Click this action to update the list of profiles on the device. The list is also updated when this page is loaded.

Provisioning profiles

The **Provisioning profiles** subtab shows details about the configuration profiles installed on the device. **Configuration name**, **Application Identifier**, and **Expiration date** are shown by default. You can expand each configuration to see more details.

Provisioning profiles can be sent to the device using the **Provisioning** setup panel of the **Apple iOS profiles** page in the **Provisioning** tab. See **Apple iOS profiles** on page 120 for more information.

A provisioning profile is required for running in-house enterprise apps on the device. With Apple MDM, you can deliver up-to-date profiles to users so they do not have to manually install the profiles to run the apps, or upgrade them when they expire.

Two actions are available from this subtab:

- ❖  **Remove installed profile:** Select one or more profiles, and click this action to delete them. Anything that has been installed using this profile will be removed from the device.
- ❖  **Refresh installed profile list:** Click this action to update the list of profiles on the device. The list is also updated when this page is loaded.

Certificate list

The **Certificate list** subtab shows details about the certificates installed on the device. The **Certificate name** and the **Last updated** timestamp are shown by default. You can expand each certificate to see more details.

The following action is available from this subtab:

- ❖  **Refresh certificate list:** Click this action to update the list of certificates on the device. The list is also updated when this page is loaded.

Device restrictions

The **Device restrictions** subtab shows details about any restrictions pushed to the device. The **Restriction name** and the **Last updated** timestamp are shown by default. You can expand each restriction to see more details.

The restriction list includes information about hardware encryption features on the device and about passcode settings.

- ❖ *Hardware encryption:* A device can be protected at **Block level**, **File level**, or both (called **Data Protection**, if a passcode is also set).
- ❖ *Passcode compliant:* This is **true** if the user's passcode complies with all requirements on the device.
- ❖ *Passcode compliant with profiles:* This is **true** if the user's passcode complies with all requirements received from profiles.
- ❖ *Passcode present:* This is **true** if the device is protected by a passcode.

The following action is available from this subtab:

- ❖  **Refresh restriction list:** Click this action to update the list of certificates on the device. The list is also updated when this page is loaded.

Apple profiles



If the current device is an Apple iOS device, you can use this panel section to send one or more Apple iOS configuration profiles to the device. The profiles are made available in this panel section when they are uploaded them through the **Provisioning > Apple iOS profiles** page (see **Apple iOS profiles** on page 120).

Note that the Apple iOS device must be enrolled for this to work.

To install or remove profiles on the current device, select the ones you wish to install or remove by switching them **On** or **Off**, respectively. Then click **Save**. The profiles will then be installed on or removed from the current device.

Note that the installation or removal process has a separate schedule. The server checks for changes in device profiles every 15 minutes. It may therefore take up to 15 minutes for the installation to start.

Provisioning

You can use DME for mobile device management (MDM) - meaning that you can install (provision) software to and perform various operations on devices. Some devices must be *enrolled* with DME for this to work. This depends on the operating system of the device and on what you want to do.

In the following, your MDM options are described for each supported platform: Android, Apple iOS, and Windows Phone. Legacy platforms are described in **Appendix H: Provisioning on legacy platforms** on page 396. The legacy platforms are: Symbian, Windows Mobile, BlackBerry, and Java.

If you are using an external MDM system such as SOTI MobiControl, nothing of what is described in the following applies. Please refer to **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350 instead.

Android MDM options



For Android devices, you have the following MDM options within DME:

- ❖ Provisioning
- ❖ Updates
- ❖ Policy enforcement
- ❖ Remote management

The alternative, using external MDM, is described in **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350.

Android client provisioning

The most common way for end users to get the DME client for Android is through Google Play Store.

To get the DME app from Google Play,

1. Launch the **Play Store** app on your device, and use the search function to find **DME**. The DME icon looks like this:



2. Tap **Install**, and accept the permissions required by the DME app. Accepting the permissions is necessary for DME to work correctly.

This is also described in the [DME App User Guide for Android](#).

It is also possible to *push* an instruction to install the DME client directly to one or many Android devices. To do this, you have to

1. Upload the DME client for Android to the DME server. See [Uploading the Android client](#) on page 105.
2. Use DME to send instructions to install the client to new or existing devices.
3. Use DME to monitor the installation process.

This is described in the following sections.

SSL certificates

Android devices can only connect to DME if the DME server uses an SSL certificate from a vendor whose root certificate is pre-installed on the Android device. It is not possible to install root certificates on Android devices (self-signed or otherwise).

To test this, you can try opening the browser on the device on which you want to install DME. Then access a website using an SSL certificate from the certificate vendor you intend to use on the DME server. If the browser accepts the certificate, then the Android device will also be able to establish a secure connection to DME using that certificate. If the browser issues any kind of security warning, the device will not be able to connect to DME.

To assist you in trying out different certificates from the browser on your Android device, we have assembled a small collection of URLs for secure sites, using different certificates:

<https://www.thawte.com/>
<https://www.verisign.com/>
<https://www.buypass.no/>
<https://www.digicert.com/>
<https://secure.entrust.com/>
<https://www.geotrust.com/>
<https://www.globalsign.com/>
<https://www.verizon.net/>
<https://www.wellsfargo.com/>
<https://www.godaddy.com/>

This list is not complete. Note that different makes of Android devices support different certificates.

If DME is already installed, you can tap the button **Test connection** in the **General > Server path** setup screen in the client app to test if the certificate used for DME is supported by your device model.

Uploading the Android client

To upload the Android client to your DME server, do the following:

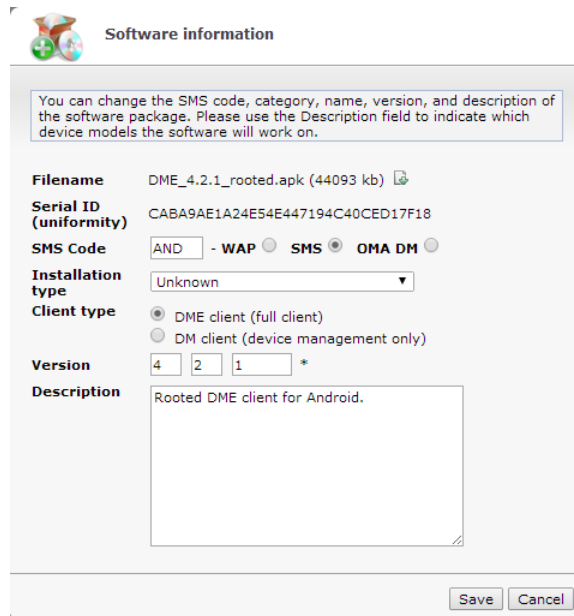
1. Download the latest Android client from the **DME Resource Center** <http://resources.excitor.com/dll/android-latest> (login required) to your disk. Here you can download the regular client as found on Google Play Store, or you can download a special edition that works on rooted devices also.
2. In the **Provisioning** tab, click **Software > DME client** (this is the default page), and then the **Upload software** button in the tab toolbar:



3. In the **Upload software** dialog, select the Android .apk file you downloaded, and click **Upload**.

The file is uploaded to the DME file system.

4. Complete the following form as explained below.



Software information

You can change the SMS code, category, name, version, and description of the software package. Please use the Description field to indicate which device models the software will work on.

Filename DME_4.2.1_rooted.apk (44093 kb) 

Serial ID (uniformity) CABA9AE1A24E54E447194C40CED17F18

SMS Code - ☐ WAP ☒ SMS ☐ OMA DM

Installation type

Client type ☒ DME client (full client) ☐ DM client (device management only)

Version *

Description

Filename: This is the filename of the file you selected. A small icon appears after the filename:  By clicking this icon, you (or anyone with access to the DME Administration Interface) can download the software to the local disk.

Serial ID: The serial number is automatically entered by DME. It ensures that you do not upload the same file several times under different names.

SMS code: You can specify an SMS code to enable users to send an SMS with a request for the software to be downloaded to the device. For more information, see **Self-provisioning** on page 453. Note that only SMS works for Android devices.

Installation type: In this list, choose **Android**. This is the heading under which the client will be added in the **DME clients** panel section.

Client type: This field no longer applies to Android clients. Only full clients are supported.

Version: It is important to specify the correct version of the software, because the DME server uses this version number to compare with the client on device(s) during bulk updates.

Description: You can use this field to specify the device types on which the client in question can run or any other important information. This information is shown as a tooltip in the client software list.

5. When you have completed the form, click **Save** to assign the information to the uploaded client.

You are returned to the **DME clients** panel section.

6. (Optional) If the uploaded client is to be considered the default software to be installed on Android devices, you can mark it as such by selecting the client in the DME clients list, and clicking the Make default version button in the tab toolbar:



The status as default client is significant, as you can:

- ❖ use the *default* status as an option when choosing devices on which to install a DME client. See **Device filter** on page 428.
- ❖ make DME upgrade existing devices automatically according to your specifications. See **Automatic upgrades** on page 418.

The default client is marked with a star icon: ★.

Note that if you select the **Upload software** action from the **Other software** panel section, you can upload any other software for Android to DME and have it pushed to the clients. The Software information dialog explained above will look slightly different:

The **Installation type** field will be called **Category**, and will be used to divide your software into self-defined categories in the **Other software** panel.

The **Client type** field will be called **Name**, where you can freely enter a name for the software in question.

An **Identifier** field will be shown - this is for in-house Apple iOS apps only, and is ignored for Android software.

When the Android client has been uploaded to the DME server, you can *push* it to one or many Android devices. This process depends on

- ❖ whether the Android devices in question are already known by DME (that is, they are already running the DME client app and have connected to DME at least once), *or*
- ❖ whether the Android devices in question are not known by DME.

See the subsequent sections.

Push client to existing Android devices

➤ **Pushing Android client to known devices**

To push the Android client to devices known by DME, do the following:

1. Select the Android DME client in the **DME clients** subtab of the **Software** panel in the **Provisioning** tab.
2. Click the **Install software** icon:



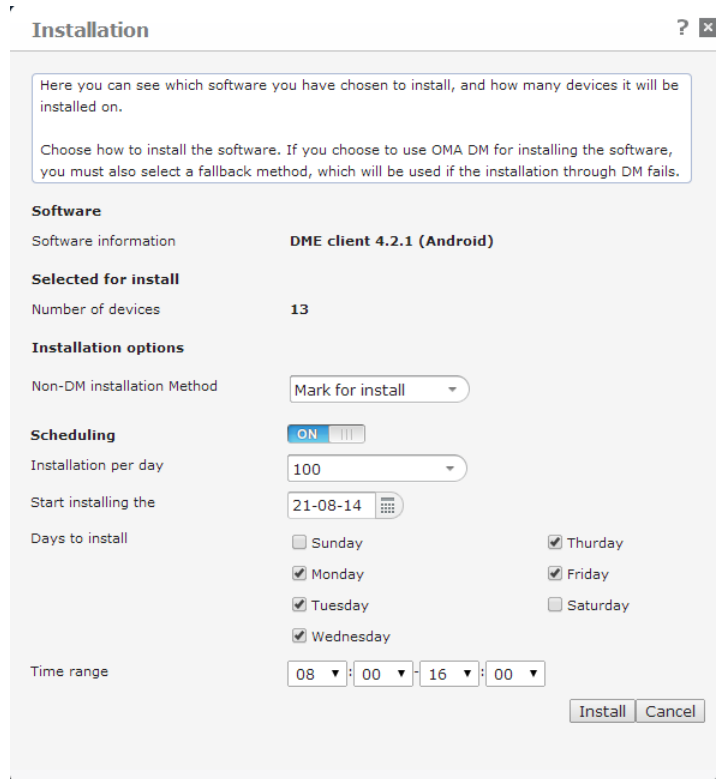
3. Select **Install on existing devices**, and click **Confirm**.

DME shows a list of all Android devices in the DME system. A *filter* called **Validated devices only** is automatically applied. You can now search for and select the devices on which to install the selected software (see **Device filter** on page 428 for more information).

4. When you have selected the devices on which you want to install the client, click the **Install software** icon:



DME shows a window similar to the following:



The screenshot shows the 'Installation' window in DME. It contains the following sections:

- Software:**
 - Software information: DME client 4.2.1 (Android)
 - Selected for install:
 - Number of devices: 13
- Installation options:**
 - Non-DM installation Method: Mark for install (dropdown)
- Scheduling:**
 - Installation per day: 100 (dropdown)
 - Start installing the: 21-08-14 (calendar icon)
 - Days to install:
 - ☐ Sunday
 - ☒ Monday
 - ☒ Tuesday
 - ☒ Wednesday
 - ☒ Thursday
 - ☒ Friday
 - ☐ Saturday
 - Time range: 08:00 - 16:00 (time pickers)

Buttons: Install, Cancel

Apart from seeing information about the selected client and the number of selected devices, you must select an installation method and possibly scheduling options:

Installation options: In this field you can choose how the new client should be installed on the client:

- ❖ **Mark for install:** This means that the device will be notified of the software download the next time it synchronizes with the server. The user will then be prompted to download and install the software.
- ❖ **SMS push:** The device will receive a text message with a unique link to the client software. By clicking that link, the user downloads the software in question. The link is only valid for the amount of time specified in the field **Software push, ticket lifetime** in the **Client** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Client** on page 172).
- ❖ **WAP push:** This option is not supported by Android devices.

Scheduling: If you enable scheduling, DME will distribute the roll-out of clients as you specify in the fields below, to ease the load on the server. You can choose how many installations DME should initiate per day, a start date, the days of the week where installations should be initiated, and a time range within which it should take place.

5. Click **Install** to initiate the installation of the selected client on the selected devices.

An overview of the selected devices is shown, and you are asked to confirm the installation.

The installation process begins. You can follow the process as described in **Monitor the installation process** on page 112.

Note that it is possible to install any uploaded software to Android devices in this way. You can do this by choosing the **Install software** action from the **Other software** panel section rather than the **DME clients** panel section.

Push client to new Android devices

➤ **Pushing Android client to new devices**

In some cases, you need to create the devices in DME before pushing the client to them. This is called pre-registering the devices. For information about this, see **Import devices** on page 72. If you do have to pre-register devices, then you should use the push method described in the previous section. See **Push client to existing Android devices** on page 107.

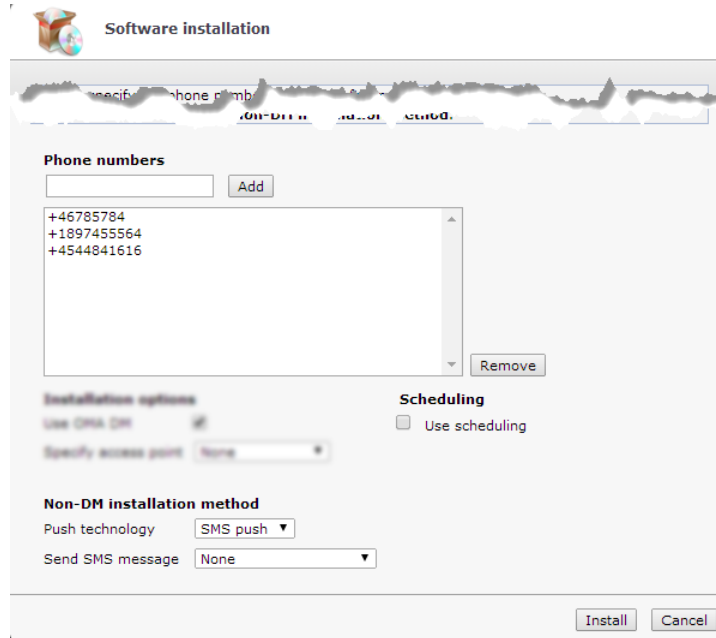
To push the Android client to devices that are not known to DME, do the following:

1. Select a DME client in the **DME clients** subtab of the **Software** panel section in the **Provisioning** tab.
2. Click the **Install software** icon:



3. Select **Install on new devices**, and click **Confirm**.

The following **Software installation** window is shown:



The screenshot shows the 'Software installation' window. It has a title bar with a small icon and the text 'Software installation'. Below the title bar is a tabbed interface with three tabs: 'Specify phone numbers', 'Non-DM installation method', and 'Scheduling'. The 'Specify phone numbers' tab is active. It contains a 'Phone numbers' section with an input field and an 'Add' button. Below this is a list of phone numbers: '+46785784', '+1897455564', and '+4544841616'. To the right of the list is a 'Remove' button. Below the list is an 'Installation options' section with a checkbox 'Use GPRS' (checked) and a dropdown 'Specify access point' (set to 'None'). To the right is a 'Scheduling' section with a checkbox 'Use scheduling' (unchecked). Below these is a 'Non-DM installation method' section with a dropdown 'Push technology' (set to 'SMS push') and a dropdown 'Send SMS message' (set to 'None'). At the bottom right are 'Install' and 'Cancel' buttons.

4. Complete the fields in the form:

Phone numbers: Add recipient devices by entering a phone number in the **Phone numbers** field and clicking **Add**. To remove a phone number from the list, click the number, and click **Remove**. You can Ctrl+click to select multiple numbers in the list.

Installation options: These options do not apply to Android devices.

Scheduling: See *Push client to existing Android devices* on page 107 for information about scheduling options.

Push technology: Choose **SMS push** (WAP push is not supported on Android).

Send SMS message: You can send an information SMS to the users with a default message, or you can write your own message. The message could say that a link will be sent to the device by SMS, and that it is OK to click the link to download the software.

- ❖ If you choose **Default SMS message**, the window is expanded to include an **SMS message** field, showing the default message that will be sent to the users. You can edit the default message by selecting the field **Create new default message**. This opens the **SMS message** field for editing. When you click **Install**, the edited message is saved as a new default message.
- ❖ If you choose **Write your own**, you can send a custom message, but you cannot save it as a new default message.

5. Click **Install**.

The installation process begins. You can follow the process as described in **Monitor the installation process** on page 112.

Provided that your SMS center (Kannel, Now SMS, or a third-party SMS center) has been set up correctly, the users will now receive two text messages. One contains a link to the DME client. When the user clicks to download and then install the client, the client will automatically read and delete the next SMS, which contains the server path for the DME server.

Please be aware of the setting **Create device on first connect** in the **Authentication** section of the **Server configuration** panel. New devices that connect for the first time will only be created in DME if this setting is **Yes**. Otherwise, a manual process must be applied afterwards. See **Authentication** on page 174.

Note that it is possible to install any uploaded software to Android devices in this way. You can do this by choosing the **Install software** action from the **Other software** panel section rather than the **DME clients** panel section.

Automatically upgrade client

In the list of DME clients, you can mark one client per client platform as **Default**. The default client is marked with a star icon: . To do this,

1. Navigate to **Provisioning > Software > DME clients**.
2. Select a client in the list.
3. Click the **Make default version** action in the tab toolbar:



4. In the **Default version** dialog, you can now choose if you want to upgrade Android devices that are running another version of the client to the new default version.

The dialog tells you how many devices would be marked for upgrade.

5. Complete the dialog selecting any of the following options:

- ❖ **Auto-upgrade devices to [selected DME client version]**

If you select this field, DME will initiate an installation on devices that run other versions than the selected default version - except devices that run a DME client marked as test version.

Furthermore, the other fields in the window are made available for selection.

- ❖ **Upgrade devices running test version**

 ❖ **Restart provisioning jobs**

If something has gone wrong with a provisioning job, for instance if a user did not use the software download link before the link timed out, you can select the job (or multiple jobs) and click the **Restart provisioning job** action in the tab toolbar. This will delete the original provisioning job, create an identical job, and send it again to the selected devices, including any options you have set for the job.

Note that DME cannot verify provisioning jobs of the type **Other software**.

For more information about the meaning of each column in this table, see **Status** on page 431. Note that the information on that page includes information that applies to legacy device platforms also.

Android device management

DME supports the use of Android policies for *corporate devices*. If the device is marked as a Corporate device in its device settings, then the DME administrator is entitled to perform any operations on it, as it is corporate property. In the settings for the device, the administrator can choose to specify details about the device password, timeout lock, storage encryption, and camera use. See **Android security settings** on page 341.

If the device is the employee's personal device (Bring Your Own Device - BYOD), the employee has control over personal items on the device.

If the device is a personal device, and the administrator sends a **Delete** command to the device, only DME data will be destroyed - the entire DME container, AppBox apps, etc. Otherwise, data will be removed as specified. See also **Delete device data** on page 58.

Apple iOS MDM options



You can get an overview of enrolled Apple iOS devices on the enrollment status page. The page shows all devices currently enrolled in DME and their status. You can also view the enrollment date and last MDM login date on this page.

The page also provides a direct access to delete an enrollment, push a refresh operation to a device or blocking or unblocking a device.



User	Device	Enrollment date	State	Latest login
Frank Fjordvald	iPhone 6	3. Nov 2015 15:30	Enrolled	10. Nov 2015 16:21
Thomas Saxtoft	IPHONE	13. Nov 2015 11:47	Removed on device	13. Nov 2015 11:46
Thomas Saxtoft	iPod Touch 4G	3. Nov 2015 17:24	Inactive	10. Nov 2015 17:31

For Apple iOS devices, you have the following MDM options within DME:

- ❖ Apple MDM enrollment
- ❖ Provisioning of configuration profiles
- ❖ Provisioning of in-house software
- ❖ Policy enforcement
- ❖ Remote management

The alternative, using external MDM, is described in **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350.

Apple iOS client provisioning

It is not possible to provision the DME client app for Apple iOS except through the Apple App Store.

To get the DME app from the Apple App Store,

1. Open the **App Store** app on your device, and use the search function to find **DME**. If the search function comes up with both **DME** and **DME 4**, pick the **DME 4** version. Its icon looks like this:



2. Tap the **FREE** button. The button transforms to an **Install** button.
3. Tap **Install**. Enter your Apple ID password when prompted, and wait for the app to download.

You could also download the DME app using iTunes on your PC or Mac, and then synchronize **DME** to your Apple device.

This is also described in the **DME App User Guide for Apple iOS**. You can of course distribute a direct link to DME on the App Store (<http://itunes.com/app/dme4>) by email or SMS.

SSL certificates

When the user launches the DME client app for the first time and enters the server path, the DME client app will silently accept any certificate from the DME server, whether the self-signed certificate or a certificate from any trusted Certificate Authority.

However, we do recommend using a 3rd party, trusted SSL certificate in order to ensure a smooth roll-out of DME to all supported platforms.

Apple MDM enrollment

DME supports the enrollment and management of Apple iOS devices through the Apple MDM Protocol. This enables Apple iOS devices to *enroll with* (enter into a trusted relationship with) DME, and the DME Administrator can then issue commands, send configuration profiles, etc. to the devices without end-user interaction.

It is recommended to enroll your Apple iOS devices.

On the server, a number of *prerequisites* must be in place before you can reap the benefits of Apple MDM.

1. An SSL certificate from a trusted vendor (such as VeriSign) must be installed on the DME server.
2. The setting **Create device on first connect** in **Server configuration > Authentication > Security** must be set to **Yes** or **Two-factor authentication**. See **Authentication** on page 174.
3. You need to install an application certificate on the server (see **Enable Apple MDM server** on page 116).

On the client device, iOS 7 from Apple caused a number of changes that affect the Apple MDM enrollment process. As a result, you can only enroll devices that have *already been created as devices in DME* - otherwise, duplicates may occur. For this reason, only user-initiated enrollment is possible: the user must choose **MDM Enrollment** from within the DME client app, which is only possible if the device has been created in DME.

To uniquely identify the device in DME, DME uses the device MAC address. However, from iOS 7 it is no longer possible for the DME client app to get the MAC (Wi-Fi) address of the device, which can make the enrollment process more complex. In some cases, the Wi-Fi address is already known to DME - if DME was installed and the device was enrolled with DME before the device was upgraded to iOS 7. This is best described through a number of scenarios:

1. A device running DME 4.1.3 on iOS 6. The MAC address is known in DME.

When upgrading to DME 4.1.5, the MAC address is already stored in the keychain of the device. This means that when the device is upgraded to iOS 7, the MAC address is known. So when enrolling the device, the "DME device" is linked correctly with the "MDM device".

2. A new device running iOS 7; has never been in contact with DME. DME 4.1.5 is installed.

On the first contact with DME, the device is given a random ID as DME device ID. Due to iOS 7, the client will report a fake MAC address: 02:00:00:00:00. When the user chooses to enroll the device, the client will ask the user to copy the real Wi-Fi Address into a field. This Wi-Fi address is then used to pair the "DME device" with the "MDM device". See **Enroll Apple iOS devices** on page 117.

3. An existing iOS 6 device running DME 4.1.3, not enrolled. It is upgraded to iOS 7, and then DME is upgraded to 4.1.5.

As in scenario 2, the client will ask for the Wi-Fi address when enrolled.

The following sections will take you through the MDM enrollment process step by step.

Enable Apple MDM server

In order to enable Apple MDM enrollment, the DME server must be configured as an Apple MDM server. To do this, go to **Server > Certificates > MDM > DME MDM** (only available if **Enable external MDM** is **OFF**).

In this window, you need to create an Apple Push Notification Service (APNS) Certificate, which is required for using DME as an Apple MDM server.

You also need to create a self-signed certificate for Apple MDM, which is used to validate your DME installation against the APNS Certificate. This is also done in the DME MDM window.

For information about how to create and install the APNS and self-signed certificates, see DME MDM.

Enroll Apple iOS devices

There is only one way to enroll devices running iOS with DME. This requires at least DME client app 4.1.4.

➤ *Enrolling Apple iOS devices*

To enroll an Apple iOS device with DME, the end user must do the following:

1. Select **Tools > MDM Enrollment** in the client menu.

The client app will try to collect the Wi-Fi (MAC) address of the device. If unsuccessful (if the device is running iOS 7, and it has never been in contact with the DME server before being upgraded to iOS 7), the client will ask the user to provide the MAC address.

2. The user provides the Wi-Fi Address.

The user is instructed to go to the device **Settings > General > About** to find and copy the Wi-Fi Address, and paste it back into DME.

For more details about this, see the [DME App User Guide for Apple iOS](#).

3. The client will then open the Safari browser at the **DME Apple MDM Enrollment** web page. See the next section, *Installing Apple MDM profile* on page 118 for information about further user steps.

During the enrollment performed by the end user, the user accepts the installation of a DME MDM Configuration Profile. When that profile is installed, the iDevice completes the enrollment process using the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP), during which DME validates the device and generates a device certificate. DME can then manage and monitor the iDevice without further user involvement. Device settings profiles can be updated transparently, and device information can be obtained and registered by DME. The Apple Push Notification Service (APNS) is used to enable the communication between devices and DME.

Please note that the user is only allowed to choose the **MDM Enrollment** option *once*. If the user is interrupted in the enrollment process, for instance if the Internet connection is interrupted, the option will be gone from the **Tools** menu. To get the option back, you can instruct the user to do the following:

1. Lock the device (**Tools > Lock**) to go to the **Login** screen (iPhone: Rotate to Landscape direction if the **Unlock pattern** screen is shown).

2. Enter `RESETMDM` as user name, and tap **Login**.

The user name field is cleared.

3. Log in as normal.

The **MDM Enrollment** option is now back in the menu.

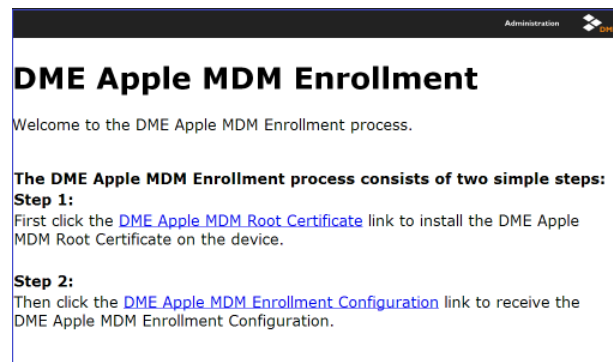
Warning: If you try to enroll an Apple iOS device with DME by connecting it directly to the DME server enrollment page (<DME_Server>/mdm OR <DME_Server>/ios/ OR <DME_Server>/iphone/), *duplicate entries will occur* in the DME server for the same device - one being the "DME" device, and the other being the "MDM device".

To get rid of these duplicate devices, instruct the users to enroll using the **MDM Enrollment** menu option. Note that the MDM enrollment is expected to *fail* at one point because the device has already been enrolled, but the process is sufficient to make the DME server aware that the DME device has the same Wi-Fi address as the "MDM device", and the server will then *combine the two devices*.

Note that when the two devices are combined, the set of default settings will be applied to the device, and any settings changed by the user will be reset.

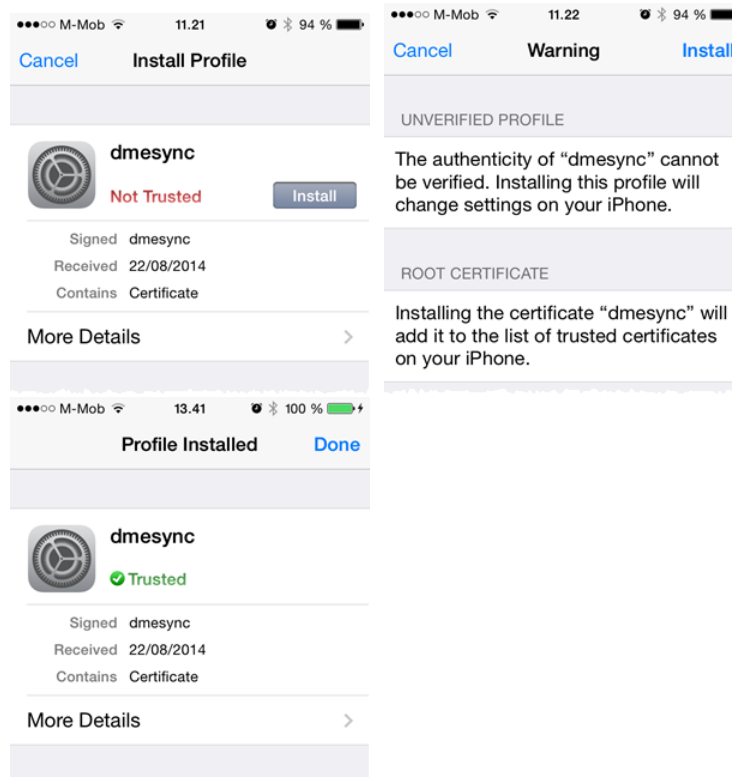
Installing Apple MDM profile

When the user has been directed to the **DME Apple MDM Enrollment** web page, he or she is presented with the following page containing instructions and two links:



1. The user should first tap link no. 1 to install the DME Apple MDM root certificate on the device. This root certificate is self-signed and auto-generated by DME for the purpose of signing any profiles distributed by DME, including the main MDM profile. If the user omits this step, all profiles distributed by DME will be **Unsigned** (but still valid).

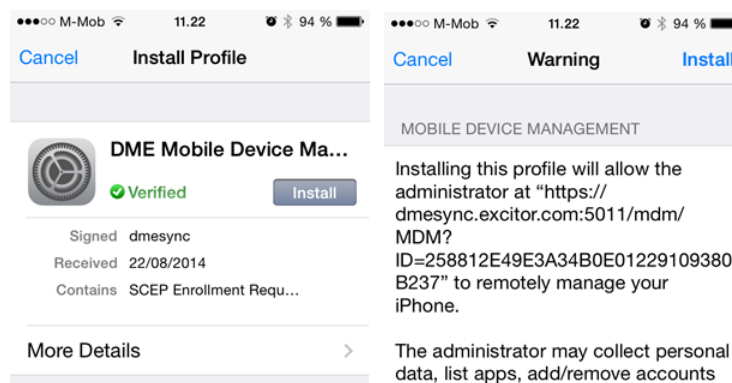
After tapping the link, the user should tap the **Install** button and complete the installation. Note that the user will also need to enter his or her device passcode when accepting the installation of certificates and profiles.



2. To complete the enrollment, the user must now go back to the **DME Apple MDM Enrollment** web page and tap link no. 2 to install the DME Mobile Device Management profile. This will initiate a SCEP communication session, through which the device receives a certificate generated by the DME Apple MDM server. This certificate establishes the trust between server and device, enabling the silent installation of configuration and provisioning profiles and the execution of MDM actions.

After tapping the link, the user should complete the installation process.

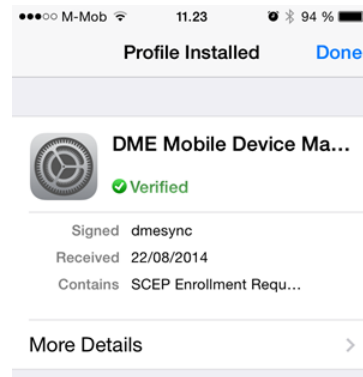
Please note: On some devices, the certificate appears to be *Not trusted* and *Unsigned*. This is due to a quirk in iOS and has no practical importance for the security of DME.



When tapping **Install**, the DME MDM server and the device will communicate using SCEP. It will proceed through the following actions:

- ❖ **Generating Key**
- ❖ **Enrolling Certificate**
- ❖ **Installing Profile**

Finally, the following screen is shown to indicate that the installation is complete.



Tap **Done**. Profiles can be inspected in **Settings > General > Profiles** on the device.

Apple iOS profiles

You can upload and manage iOS configuration and provisioning profiles, and remotely install them on Apple iOS devices that have been enrolled with DME. You can also monitor the status of the provisioning of the profiles.

Note that a device must be enrolled to receive profiles. This is a change from DME server versions before 4.2 SP2. This is to avoid situations where sending a profile to an unknown device caused the device to attempt enrollment, which in turn caused duplicate devices in DME.

An Apple iOS profile is created using a free tool from Apple called the *iPhone Configuration Utility*. This tool can be downloaded in a Windows or Macintosh version from the **Apple support** <http://www.apple.com/support/iphone/enterprise/> website.

With the iPhone Configuration Utility you can configure a *profile*, complete with wireless network settings, access points, VPN settings, private certificates, native PIN code activation, security settings etc. When the profile has been configured, it can be exported as a `.mobileconfig` file (for configuration profiles) or as a `.mobileprovision` file (for provisioning profiles). These are the files that can be managed by DME. Please refer to the Apple website for information about using the utility.

DME supports installing both signed and unsigned configuration files. Signing the configuration file is not really necessary, as it will be provisioned from the trusted DME server over an HTTPS connection.

Uploading Apple profiles

In order to push Apple profiles to devices, you must upload them to the server first.

➤ **Uploading Apple iOS profiles to server**

To upload an Apple profile to the server, do the following:

1. Navigate to **Provisioning > Apple iOS profiles**.
2. To upload a configuration profile (with file extension `.mobileconfig`), click the **Configuration** panel section



, or
To upload a provisioning profile (with file extension `.mobileprovision`), click the **Provisioning** panel section



3. Click the **Upload Apple profile** action in the toolbar:



A dialog is shown, in which you can select and upload the profile file.

Please note that if your DME server is set up in a load balanced cluster environment, you need to choose this action from *a single node*, not the main server path (which is the address of the load balancer). Otherwise the load balancer may mix up session IDs, and the operation will fail. See separate cluster setup documentation.

4. Click **Accept**.

A new dialog, **Edit Profile**, is shown, in which you supply the information that DME could not retrieve automatically from the profile file. Some of the fields described below only apply to either Configuration or Provisioning profiles. This is marked below.

5. After completing the dialog form, click **Save** to enter the new profile into the list.

These are the fields of the **Edit Profile** dialog:

❖ **Filename**

This field shows the filename and size of the current configuration file, and whether the file is signed and encrypted. Note that signing a configuration file is not really necessary, as it will be provisioned from the trusted DME server over a HTTPS connection.

❖ **Name**

Enter a descriptive name. This will be shown in the **Configuration** or **Provisioning** panel section.

❖ **Identifier / App. identifier**

Mandatory. Specify an app identifier that matches the identifier registered by the profile for this app - something like `com.companyname.appname`. Otherwise the device cannot verify (and run) the app.

❖ **Expiration date** (provisioning profiles only)

Mandatory. Specify an expiration date for the current profile.

❖ **Organization** (configuration profiles only)

Specify the name of the organization to which the identifier above is registered.

❖ **Category**

You can divide your Apple profiles into self-defined categories. The list of categories is dynamically extended with any new category you add in the field. In the list of profiles, the profiles are grouped into the defined categories.

❖ **SMS code**

You can specify an SMS code to enable users to send an SMS with a request for the configuration file to be downloaded to the device. For more information, see **Self-provisioning** on page 453.

❖ **Description**

In this field you can enter a description of the current Apple profile. Use it to describe what the configuration or provisioning profile actually does. The description is shown as a tooltip when you hover the mouse over the configuration name in the profile list.

This information is shown in the **Apple iOS profiles** setup panel. You can edit some of the information again by clicking the profile name from the list of profiles.

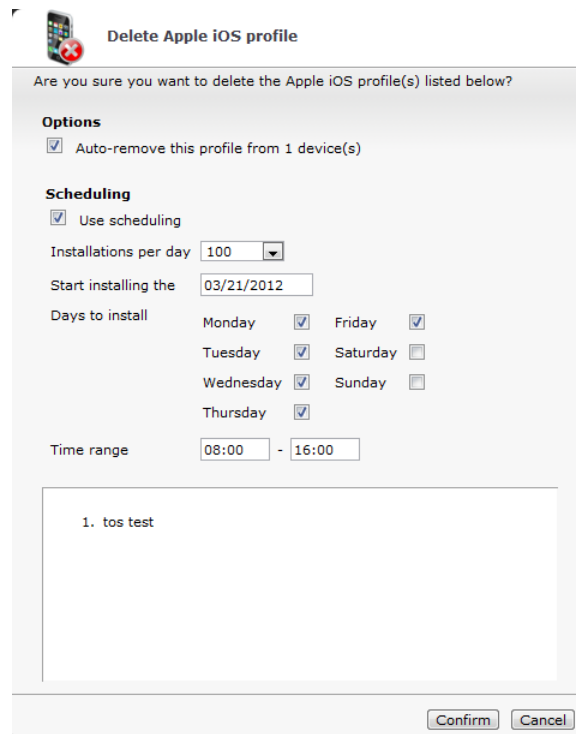
You can now send the profiles to multiple, enrolled devices (see **Send Apple iOS configuration profile** on page 123), or you can enable or disable them per device. See **Apple profiles** on page 102.

Delete Apple configuration profile



Click the **Delete profile** action to delete the currently selected Apple iOS profile(s) from the list. You are asked to confirm your action. The profile file associated with each configuration is also removed from the DME server.

If the configuration profiles to be deleted are installed on one or more devices, you will be asked if you want to delete (auto-remove) them from the devices as well - and if you do, you are given an option to schedule the profile removal.



Click **Confirm** to delete the profiles from this window and optionally from affected Apple iOS devices.

Send Apple iOS configuration profile

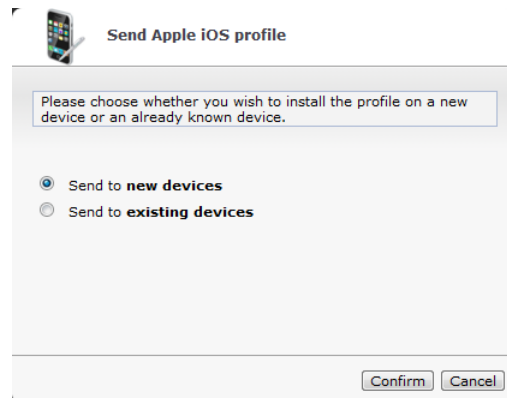


Click the **Send Apple iOS configuration profile** action when you want to configure an Apple iOS device according to the specifications of the profile.

➤ **Sending Apple iOS profile**

- I. Select the profile to send, and click the **Send Apple iOS configuration profile** action.

DME now asks if you are sending the profile to devices that already exist in DME or not.



2. If the device(s) to which you want to send the profile have not yet been created in DME, select **Send to new devices**, and click **Confirm**.

You are then prompted to enter the phone number or e-mail address of the devices to which you want to send the current profile. Click **Add** after each number or e-mail address. If you enter an e-mail address, the profile will be sent as a link to the specified e-mail address instead of being sent as an SMS message. This is useful in case the device does not contain a phone module (iPod touch, iPad).

or

If the device(s) to which you want to send the profile already exist in DME, select **Send to existing devices**, and click **Confirm**. A list of existing Apple iOS devices is shown. Select the relevant devices, and click the **Send configuration** action. For more information about this window, see **Device filter** on page 428.

3. DME uses Apple's MDM system for installing the profile. This requires that your system is set up to use Apple MDM. See MDM on Apple iOS.

The profile will be installed on enrolled devices without user interaction. If a device is not enrolled yet, it will go through the enrollment process described in Enrolling devices.

4. Click **Use scheduling** if you want to distribute the installation evenly over a period of time.
5. Click **Install** to send the configuration to the devices.

You can now monitor the profile installation in the **Status** section.

The user can view the profile by selecting **Settings > General > Profiles** on the device.

Status



In the **Status** section of the **Apple iOS profiles** setup panel you can monitor the installation of Apple iOS profiles.

The table shows information about the current installation jobs:

❖ **Operation type**

This column shows if the current installation job is a profile installation or a management operation such as an auto upgrade or installation removal.

❖ **Profile**

This column shows the name of the profile currently being installed.

❖ **Started**

This column shows the date and time on which the installation job was initiated.

❖ **Progress**

This column shows a progress bar with information about the number of devices on which the current profile has been installed. This gives you a quick overview of the number of installations in the installation job that have been completed.

This table is constructed in a similar way to the software installation **Status** table. See **Status** on page 431.

Click the  button to view details about the current job, and  to hide the details again. Each subtable includes information about:

❖ **Device**

The device on which the software is being or has been installed. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a device link, a box shows more information about the device. Click the device link to go to the settings page for that device.

❖ **User**

This column shows the user name of the user who owns the device. The user name is only shown when the user has made a successful login and system info synchronization - hence, it is not shown in the **Installing** sub-table in case of new installations of the DME client on as yet unknown devices.

❖ **Phone number**

The phone number of the device to which the installation job was sent.

❖ **Profile**

The name of the profile sent to the current device.

❖ State

This column shows the status of the installation job on the current device. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a status message to see a detailed, chronological sequence of events in the installation job for the current device.

Apple iOS profiles

Status

*	Operation type	Profile	Started	Progress		
☐	Profile installation	tos test	21. mar 12/15:03	100% of 1 devices		
Executing (0 devices)						
Done (1 devices) << 1 >> rows: 25 Go						
*	Device	User	Phone number	Profile	State	Created
☐	iPhone	TOS		tos test	Acknowledged	21. mar 12/15:03
☐	Remove installed Configuration Profiles	tos test	21. mar 12			
☐	Auto Upgrade Profiles	tos test	21. mar 12			
☐	Profile installation	tos test	21. mar 12			

21. mar 12/15:03 - Created

21. mar 12/15:03 - Push sent

21. mar 12/15:03 - Profile sent

21. mar 12/15:03 - Can't execute operation now

21. mar 12/15:06 - Profile sent

21. mar 12/15:06 - Acknowledged

One state that can occur is **Can't execute operation now**. This message is returned from the device if the device is locked with a pin code. If this is the case, DME will stop trying. Instead, the device will itself poll the server regularly until a successful transaction is completed. This behavior is part of the Apple MDM protocol.

❖ Created

This is the date and time on which the profile installation job was created.

Apple iOS in-house software

It is possible to provision in-house software to Apple iOS devices that are enrolled with DME.

To do so,

1. Navigate to **Provisioning > Software > Other software**.
2. Click the **Upload software** action in the tab toolbar:



3. Select the program file (the **.IPA** file). DME will automatically include a picture file for the app icon. This picture should be a 512x512 pixel **.PNG** file. Note that in order for the users to be able to install iOS software, a provisioning profile allowing the installation of the in-house app must have been pushed to the devices first.

4. Click **Upload** to place the software on the DME server.
5. In the **Software information** dialog, make sure to complete the mandatory fields. The **Identifier** field is the app identifier that matches the identifier registered by the provisioning profile for this app - something like `com.companyname.appname`. If you do not fill in the identifier, the device cannot verify (and run) the app.
6. Click **Save**.

The in-house software can now be pushed to enrolled devices in a process similar to that described for Apple iOS profiles - see **Send Apple iOS configuration profile** on page 123.

Apple iOS device management

When an Apple iOS device has been enrolled with DME, two extra panel sections are shown when you double-click the device in the **Devices** tab: **Apple MDM** and **Apple profiles**. From these panel sections, the following options are available for each enrolled device:

- ❖ Lock device
- ❖ Clear passcode
- ❖ Erase device
- ❖ Remove configuration or provisioning profile
- ❖ View and refresh list of installed configuration or provisioning profiles
- ❖ View and refresh list of installed certificates
- ❖ View and refresh list of restrictions pushed to the device

Restrictions are pushed to the device in the form of configuration profiles.

For more information about these options, see **Apple MDM** on page 99.

Furthermore, you can:

- ❖ Show list of profiles uploaded to DME, and toggle them on or off for the *current device* or for a *group of devices*.

For more information about these options, see **Apple profiles** on page 102.

Finally, the general DME MDM options are available to iOS devices also:

- ❖ *Delete device data.* Unlike the Apple MDM command **Erase device**, which deletes the entire iOS device, the DME **Delete** command will only destroy DME data on the device - the entire DME container, AppBox apps, etc. See **Delete device data** on page 58.
- ❖ *Force synchronization.* When the device is connected with DME, you can send any type of synchronization or import command to the device. See **Force synchronization** on page 61 for more about this.

Windows Phone MDM options



For Windows Phone devices, you have the following MDM options within DME:

- ❖ *Delete device data.* The DME **Delete** command destroys DME data on the device - the entire DME container. See **Delete device data** on page 58.
- ❖ *Force synchronization.* When the device is connected with DME, you can send any type of synchronization or import command to the device. See **Force synchronization** on page 61 for more about this.

The alternative, using external MDM, is described in **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350.

Windows Phone client provisioning

It is not possible to provision the DME client app for Windows Phone except through the Windows Phone Store.

To get the DME app from Windows Phone Store,

1. Launch the **Store** app on your device, and use the search function to find **DME**. The icon looks like this:



2. Tap **Install**.

Wait for the DME app to download and install.

This is also described in the **DME App User Guide for Windows Phone**.

You can of course distribute a direct link to DME on the Windows Phone Store:

`http://www.windowsphone.com/da-dk/store/app/dme/78526775-2f16-4c9e-a611-1955ecf25bcb`

by email or SMS.

Log

The **Log** tab is used to monitor the state of the DME server. All vital information is saved to the log for later use. You can use the log to look into problems, synchronizations, and supervise other exchange of data.

The log contains messages from the server, the connectors, the mail scan users, users who log on to the Web Administration Interface, and users connecting to the server through the devices.

Devices Provisioning Log Analyzer Server Connector Administration					
From:	02-01-2017	00:00	To:	16-01-2017	23:59
Message	Date	Location	Device	User	Category
client: eb177fe482614c4bc59ad4246360b910bda8f767 did not receive silent notification. Sending loud notification	16. jan. 2017 - 16:21:12	dmesync	iPhone 6	BSH	Adaptive push
client: 749E6D05-C208-4B5A-963F-7C6C4C11E6E7 did not receive silent notification. Sending loud notification	16. jan. 2017 - 16:21:11	dmesync	iPhone 6 Plus	LPH	Adaptive push
client: 2A3EA4A7-18DC-47DE-B319-024228819E44 did not receive silent notification. Sending loud notification	16. jan. 2017 - 16:21:11	dmesync	iPad Pro (9.7 inch, Cellular)	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: 749E6D05-C208-4B5A-963F-7C6C4C11E6E7	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:41	dmesync	iPhone 6 Plus	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. calendar pushed to deviceID: 749E6D05-C208-4B5A-963F-7C6C4C11E6E7	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:41	dmesync	iPhone 6 Plus	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: 2A3EA4A7-18DC-47DE-B319-024228819E44	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:41	dmesync	iPad Pro (9.7 inch, Cellular)	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. calendar pushed to deviceID: 749E6D05-C208-4B5A-963F-7C6C4C11E6E7	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:41	dmesync	iPhone 6 Plus	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: 2A3EA4A7-18DC-47DE-B319-024228819E44	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:41	dmesync	iPad Pro (9.7 inch, Cellular)	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. calendar pushed to deviceID: 2A3EA4A7-18DC-47DE-B319-024228819E44	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:41	dmesync	iPad Pro (9.7 inch, Cellular)	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: eb177fe482614c4bc59ad4246360b910bda8f767	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:39	dmesync	iPhone 6	BSH	Adaptive push
Android push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: 358454070468738	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:39	dmesync	arrowsM03	BSH	Adaptive push
Command not pushed: Sync. e-mail NOT pushed to deviceID: 136CFB95F770F6D41804D25B5D7C001C, device is not connected, and SMS Modem might not be Configured/Working.	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:39	dmesync	iPhone 6	BSH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. calendar pushed to deviceID: 749E6D05-C208-4B5A-963F-7C6C4C11E6E7	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:36	dmesync	iPhone 6 Plus	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: 749E6D05-C208-4B5A-963F-7C6C4C11E6E7	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:36	dmesync	iPhone 6 Plus	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. calendar pushed to deviceID: 2A3EA4A7-18DC-47DE-B319-024228819E44	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:36	dmesync	iPad Pro (9.7 inch, Cellular)	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. calendar pushed to deviceID: 749E6D05-C208-4B5A-963F-7C6C4C11E6E7	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:36	dmesync	iPhone 6 Plus	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: 2A3EA4A7-18DC-47DE-B319-024228819E44	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:36	dmesync	iPad Pro (9.7 inch, Cellular)	LPH	Adaptive push
iOS push command: Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: 2A3EA4A7-18DC-47DE-B319-024228819E44	16. jan. 2017 - 16:20:36	dmesync	iPad Pro (9.7 inch, Cellular)	LPH	Adaptive push

In the **Log configuration** part of the **Data** section of the **Server configuration** panel, you can choose to see only information messages from DME or to include information messages from third-party applications as well. See **Data** on page 183.

The data you see in this window is stored in DME database. Furthermore, most of the log information is kept in the server log file `server.log`, which is found in the `log` directory of each DME server instance. By default, a new `server.log` file is created every day, and yesterday's log file is renamed to `server.log.[date]`, for instance `server.log.2017-01-16`.

DME uses Apache's `log4j` for collecting log information. You can configure `log4j` by modifying the file `jboss-log4j.xml`. For more information, see **Log4j setup** on page 149, or consult the Apache website or your DME Partner.

The web server access logs can also be a useful tool for analyzing DME server traffic.

A number of functions in this window make it easier to find the information you need: date filtering, text filtering, paging, and sorting by columns.

Finding information

There are three ways to search for information in the log to find the entry you need. You can filter for specific text, filter by date and time, or you can combine the two methods.

With *text filtering* you can search for specific text in the log - for instance specific device(s), phone numbers and users, or specific words. You can also use the text filtering to only show logs of a specific category, for instance by filtering on **E-mail sync..** See **Filter bar - new style** on page 36 for more information.

Date filtering is used to show log entries between specific dates and times. To select dates, click the calendar icon in the page menu. A pop-up calendar is shown, allowing you to pick a date. If you also wish to specify times, enter them in the text fields after the dates. When you are done, click **Show period**. See the illustration below.

From: 09-02-2009 00:00 To: 23-02-2009 23:59 Show period

Date		February, 2009							Device	
		Today								
		Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun		
1.	23. Feb 2009 - 1	5	26	27	28	29	30	31	1	Nokia E71
		6	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
		7	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	
		8	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	
		9	23	24	25	26	27	28	1	
2.	23. Feb 2009 - 1	10	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Nokia E71

Select date

Columns

The log information is shown in the following columns:

❖ **Date**

This column shows the date and time of the current `server.log` entry.

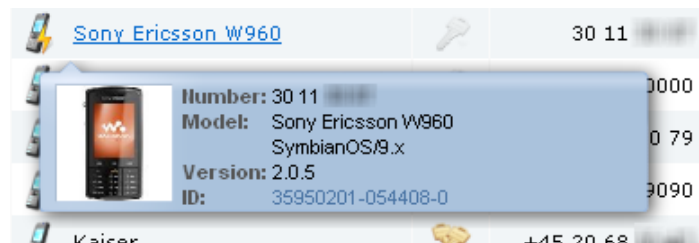
❖ **Location**

This column shows the name of the server or connector for which the information was logged. This information is needed in load balanced or distributed environments and in fail-over situations in order to be able to pinpoint the server machine which issued the message or warning. The name is defined in the field **Server name**. For more information, see **Web** on page 191 - a section of the **Server configuration** panel.

❖ **Device**

This column shows the device to which the log message pertains. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a device link, a box will appear with more information about the current device:

- ❖ Device phone number
- ❖ Device model
- ❖ Device operating system
- ❖ DME version installed on device
- ❖ Device ID
- ❖ Possibly a picture of the device



The information derives from the DME database, and can be edited in the **Device** setup panel. You can click the device link to go to the setup page for the device in question.

If the message does not concern a specific device, but is a system error message or warning, this column contains a dash -.

❖ **User**

This column shows the user who is the current holder of the device to which the log message pertains. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a user link, a box will appear with more information about the current user:

- ❖ Full name and initials of device user
- ❖ Title of device user

The information derives from the DME database, that is the information which can be edited in the User setup panel. You can click the user link to go to the setup page for the user in question.

❖ Category

The messages shown in the log are divided into a number of categories, each of which is described in the following section.

❖ Message

The message column contains the message itself. For more information about the messages that can be displayed here, see the various subsections of the **Category** section previously.

If the log entry reports a **WARNING** or an **ERROR**, you can expand the log to see the full error message by clicking the **+** button in the right side of the **Message** column header. The error message may report important information about faulty configuration of a subsystem, such as the LDAP or collaboration system ("user not found" or similar), or it may report an error in DME (usually in the form of an **NPE - NullPointerException**). Collapse the log again by clicking the **-** button.

Log categories

The messages shown in the log are divided into the following categories.

Adaptive push

Messages in the **Adaptive push** category show information regarding notifications sent to the device specified in the **Device** column where adaptive push is enabled. For more details about the error messages, click the **+** button in the **Message** header title. This will expand the message to include details about the error as posted by the DME subsystems.

A notification error could be similar to the below - saying that a *synchronize e-mail* command could not be sent to a device, because the device is off and is running network push only.

Command not pushed:

Sync Email NOT pushed to deviceID:
270203ed5f2ba8cc42558fc754aebefc29d02c5, device is not connected and SMS
is not allowed.

Or it could be a message saying that a *force synchronization* command had been sent by SMS from the server to a device:

SMS Command:

Collect System Info. pushed to phone number: +45 999999

Or a message saying that a network push command to synchronize to-dos was sent successfully to a device:

Network Command:
Sync. tasks pushed to deviceID: 357033010795953

Or a message saying that a push was sent by APNS to an iOS device:

iPhone push command:
Sync. e-mail pushed to deviceID: a24efe009f3c18843dcce2f5a684ff8b4eade5f7

Audit

Messages in the **Audit** category show security and access information related to the device specified in the **Device** column. For more details about error messages, click the **+** button in the **Message** header title. This will expand the message to include details about the error as posted by the DME subsystems.

An audit message is for instance logged when a device is created.

An audit error or warning is for instance logged when a connection from a device was refused due to security restrictions. This could be due to the client being blocked.

Logger: [dme.base.security.valves.DeviceIdValve] from thread: http-172.16.13.43-6011-exec-4 WARN
Message:
Device tried to connect but it is not allowed.

A message could also say that a client signature keypair was created by the server:

Audit Device signature keypair created:
1. **Nokia E51** - NIF (Niels Fange) [35766301-351649-1]

If DME is integrated with an external MDM system, such as SOTI MobiControl, messages related to external MDM will also appear in this category. For instance, a message will be logged in the **Audit** category if a device tries to connect to DME, but it does not exist, or is blocked, in the external MDM system. For more information about external MDM, see **MDM** on page 251.

Central Services

Messages in the **Central Services** category show information from the DME Central Services server. New messages are picked up by the DME server when it accesses the DME Central Services server (see **Central Services** on page 189).

The messages are divided into three degrees of severity: "[Critical issue]" (shown in red text), "[Important issue]" (shown in yellow text), and "[Minor issue]" (shown in normal text).

Each message will typically contain a link to a website where more information can be found.

There are four types of messages:

❖ **Information about error in DME**

If Soliton Systems has found an error in DME, for instance based on customer feedback through Central Services, a message about the error will be posted here.

❖ **Information from Soliton Systems**

Important information from Soliton Systems, either of a business nature or technical nature. This corresponds to the Service Bulletins, which are sent by e-mail from Soliton Systems whenever an announcement is made.

This message type is also issued when the Central Services feature is turned on:

SYSADM Central Services	Service information	Information from Excitor
	Subject Issued on Message	Welcome to DME Central Services 08. Dec 2010 DME Central Services collects statistical information, basic settings and topology information from your servers and connectors as well as statistical info about errors and warnings. This enables Excitor to be proactive in the support offerings, and helps the development department to focus on the most commonly used features. More info 

❖ **Newsletter from Soliton Systems**

Indicates that Soliton Systems has published a new newsletter.

❖ **Warning**

Proactive information about issues that might arise in your DME system if certain circumstances are met.

Furthermore, a message is entered in the log when the server pings the Central Services server:

Central Services	Central Services Ping successful - Apple Push Notification status: Connected

Collaboration

Messages in the **Collaboration** category show statistics about the client's connection with the collaboration system through the connector specified in the **Location** column. The information is shown as a table. There are two types of tables. One shows interaction with entries in the user's mail file or mailbox, and the other shows interaction with public resources or other actions. A message of the former type might look like this:

E-mail sync.	deletes	creates	updates	read
Entries	none	1	none	1
Duration	00:00:00.000	00:00:01.225	00:00:00.000	00:00:00.029
Response time				29.0 ms/doc
Storage	SRV-EXC07// [Exchange 2007]			
Logon duration	00:00:00.032			
Total collab. duration	00:00:01.286			
Total sync. duration	00:00:01.319			
PreCache	Not available			

Function	This is the type of communication which was performed with the collaboration system. This could be E-mail sync. , Calendar sync. , Addressbook sync. , or E-mail folder .
Operation type header	Depending on the type of connection (function), up to four types of operations can be performed in the collaboration system as a result of a client connection: delete , create , update , and read .
Entries	How many operations of the available types were performed by the collaboration system as a result of the current connection. If a number is preceded by (x2) , it means that the specified number of items were read twice.
Duration	How long time did the above operations take.
(total)	This row calculates how long time it took to process each document.
Storage	The path to the user's mail file (Domino) or mailbox (Exchange).
Logon duration	The number of milliseconds it took to log on to the collaboration system.
Total collab. duration	The total duration of the client's interaction with the collaboration system during this session.
Total sync. duration	The total duration of the client's session with the DME server, including authentication, negotiation, etc. This corresponds to the total time of the connector/collaboration system interaction and the device/DME server interaction (see the Synchronizing category).
PreCache	Whether the information was retrieved from pre-cached information. See Pre-caching sync. data.

The **Pre-caching sync. data** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ **Pre-cache enabled**

If this field is set to **Yes**, pre-caching is enabled on the server. Please note that if you are using a technical user (**DME_Server**) for scanning the users' mailboxes, this technical user must have full access to all the users' mailboxes for pre-caching to work correctly. You are using a technical user if the field **Store user password (encrypted)** in the **Authentication** panel is **No** (see **Authentication** on page 174). If this is the case, you must accept a warning about this in order to enable pre-caching.

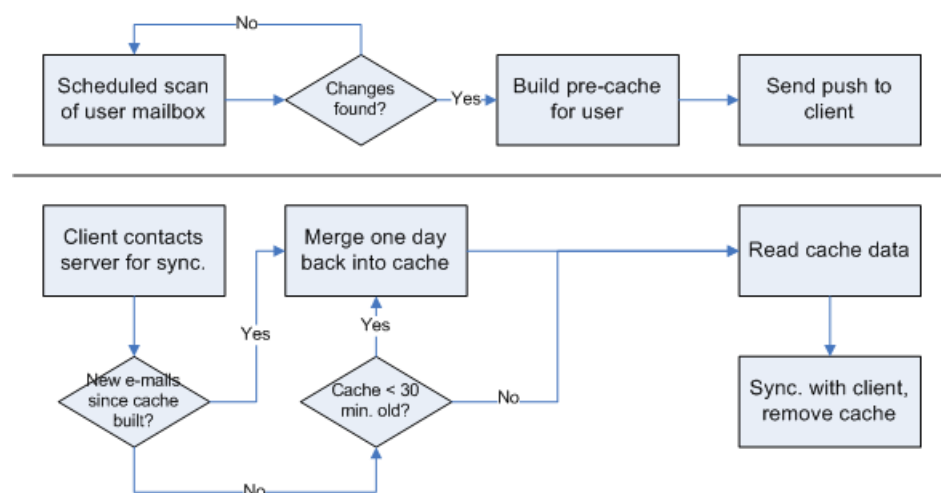
See below for an explanation of the DME concept of pre-caching.

Pre-caching is a mechanism to reduce the time it takes to synchronize e-mails to the DME client. This mechanism was introduced in DME 3.5 Service Pack 7. Pre-caching does not require any new client.

Whenever the notification scanner detects a change in a user's mailbox, a request is sent to the connector in charge of synchronizing that user's e-mail. On receiving the request, the connector immediately begins to build a read-ahead cache where links to the user's e-mails are stored. When the cache is complete, the notification scanner sends a push using Adaptive Push to the client with information that new e-mail has arrived. When the client connects to the server in order to pick up new e-mail, the synchronization request is routed to the pre-built cache, and the new items are immediately available. Before synchronizing, the connector checks if a new e-mail has arrived in the space between the building of the cache and the actual synchronization by comparing the latest e-mail in the cache with the latest e-mail in the collaboration system. If the cache exists already, it will be used if it is less than 30 minutes old. This means that any changes such as marking read/unread, moving to folders etc. that have been made in the collaboration system within this period of time will not be reflected in the DME client until the next synchronization.

If the cache is older than 30 minutes, the mailbox content from today and yesterday, including changes due to marking read/unread and moving to folders, is read out from the collaboration system and merged into the cache.

The cache is removed when the client synchronizes. See illustration below.



This applies to push, scheduled, and manual synchronization. In case of an import, the cache is never used.

Benefit

The user will experience significantly faster e-mail synchronization when receiving a push, because the server can compare the contents of the client's mailbox with the cache and does not need to contact the collaboration system for anything other than getting the new e-mails (or information about deleted or read e-mails, or whatever is required by the changes discovered in the mailbox). This speed optimization is especially significant on devices that do not support e-mail synchronization as a background process (as in Apple's iOS).

Security

The cache stored on the connector does not include the e-mails as such, only an MD5 checksum and a reference to the e-mail (a so-called *minimal note*). The e-mail content is stored securely in the collaboration system mailstores.

S/MIME

Due to the way in which S/MIME e-mails are handled by the collaboration system, enabling pre-caching will *not benefit* overall system performance if most of your e-mails are S/MIME. In other words, if your users primarily send and receive S/MIME e-mails, you should not enable pre-caching on the server.

The second type of message is related to public entries in the collaboration system, or to password change. It may look like this:

RnrSearch	
Resources found	12
Rooms found	7
Duration	00:00:00.727

The table tells how many entries of the given type (rooms, resources, or contacts in a global address book search) were found, and how long time it took. For the **Password change** function, the table shows whether the password change was successful, and how long it took for the collaboration system to change the password.

The times and data amounts in the **Collaboration** category are part of the total for the current device specified in the **Network** category.

Connector

Messages in the **Connector** category show errors and warnings related to the connector specified in the **Location** column. For more details about an error, click the **+** button in the **Message** header title. This will expand the message to include details about the error as posted by the DME subsystems.

A message from a connector could for instance say that the LDAP group graph had been read from a certain server.

To see all messages relating to a particular connector, click the connector in the **Connector** tab, and select the **Log** panel section. See Log.

Device

Messages in the **Device** category show errors and warnings related to the device specified in the **Device** column. For more details about an error, click the **+** button in the **Message** header title. This will expand the message to include details about the error as posted by the DME subsystems.

A device-related error could be that a SmartLink reference could not be downloaded due to an invalid link.

The message could also be the result from a diagnostic test forced from a device by the server.

Network

Messages in the **Network** category sum up the statistics about the client's connection with the DME server. This means that a client's connection to the DME server for synchronization and system information exchange, and the interaction with the collaboration system are added up in the **Network** category. This way you can see the total connection time (here), the time spent negotiating with the collaboration system (in the **Collaboration** category), and the time spent synchronizing (in the **Synchronizing** category). The data in this category forms the basis of the statistics shown in the **Analyzer** tab.

The network information is shown as a table, which might look like this:

E-mail sync.	
Remote address	87.57.248.98 - secure connection
Data received	724 B - payload compressed: 34%
Data sent	708 B - payload compressed: 26%
Request duration	00:00:40.700 L2RW1
Status	Ok

Function	This is the type of communication which was performed with the collaboration system. For more information about each type of network connection, see below.
Remote address	This row states the remote IP address of the device that made the network connection, and whether the connection was secure (https). If you let the mouse pointer rest on the "secure connection" part of this row, a tooltip text will show the type of security that was in force during the connection - for instance TLS RSA with AES 256 CBC SHA .
Data received	The total amount of data received by the server, and the rate by which the "payload" part of the data was compressed. The payload is the total amount of data, less http headers etc. (which cannot be compressed). If you let the mouse pointer rest on the percentage part of this row, a tooltip text will show the technology that was employed to compress the data in this connection - for instance LZRWI .
Data sent	The total amount of data sent to the device by the server, and the rate by which the payload part of the data was compressed. The compression technology is shown as a tooltip.
G/On	For AppBox verification, this row states whether the user is permitted to use AppBox by checking with the G/On server.
Request duration	The total duration of the network connection, including authentication, collaboration system interaction, and synchronization.
Status	This row shows whether the current network connection was successful. Please note that the Ok simply means that the connection went well - but the connection might in fact have been an error message sent to the client. If the Ok is written in red, followed by an exclamation mark, it means that an error message was sent to the client. If you let the mouse pointer rest on the Ok, you can see the error message. See the graphic below. The message is usually preceded by a similar System category message. The other graphic below shows an entry with a non-OK status due to an authentication error.

Stream duration

For **Adaptive push - stream closed** messages, this is the total duration of the network stream session that was just closed.

Network	<table><tr><th colspan="2">System info</th></tr><tr><td>Remote address</td><td>172.16.21.111 - secure connection</td></tr><tr><td>Data received</td><td>806 B - payload compressed: 36%</td></tr><tr><td>Data sent</td><td>522 B - payload compressed: 19%</td></tr><tr><td>Request duration</td><td>00:05:00.161</td></tr><tr><td>Status</td><td>Ok!</td></tr></table>	System info		Remote address	172.16.21.111 - secure connection	Data received	806 B - payload compressed: 36%	Data sent	522 B - payload compressed: 19%	Request duration	00:05:00.161	Status	Ok!
System info													
Remote address	172.16.21.111 - secure connection												
Data received	806 B - payload compressed: 36%												
Data sent	522 B - payload compressed: 19%												
Request duration	00:05:00.161												
Status	Ok!												
System	<table><tr><td>Message:</td><td>dme.service.util.ThreadSyncTimeoutException: No response after '300000' milliseconds waiting for id '9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A8387422E403_GENERICSEARCH_VMTEST1'</td><td>ERROR</td></tr></table>	Message:	dme.service.util.ThreadSyncTimeoutException: No response after '300000' milliseconds waiting for id '9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A8387422E403_GENERICSEARCH_VMTEST1'	ERROR									
Message:	dme.service.util.ThreadSyncTimeoutException: No response after '300000' milliseconds waiting for id '9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A8387422E403_GENERICSEARCH_VMTEST1'	ERROR											
System	<table><tr><td>Message:</td><td>No response after '300000' milliseconds waiting for id '9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A8387422E403_GENERICSEARCH_VMTEST1'</td><td>ERROR</td></tr></table>	Message:	No response after '300000' milliseconds waiting for id '9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A8387422E403_GENERICSEARCH_VMTEST1'	ERROR									
Message:	No response after '300000' milliseconds waiting for id '9828AB87B40FB95B58E3A8387422E403_GENERICSEARCH_VMTEST1'	ERROR											

Systeminfo	
Remote address	194.105.144.26 secure connection
Data received	305 B
Data send	107 B
Request duration	00:00:00.066
Status:	Unauthorized, wrong username or password

The following functions are recorded as network connection types. For each function, statistics about the connection type, total data amount, total duration of the connection, and status are shown. Note that if the function is written in square brackets, for instance **[email]**, it is an indication that the request was unsuccessful (could not be parsed by the server).

- ❖ **Synchronization functions:** *E-mail, E-mail folders, Calendar, To-do, Addressbook, File, File - data, System info*

The statistics of one synchronization process of the type mentioned. File synchronization is split into two categories: **Files**, which is the synchronization of data about which files should or should not be synchronized, and **Files, data**, which covers the files as such.

- ❖ **Search functions:** *Search (generic search), E-mail, Addressbook, Freetime, and RnR*

The statistics of one search process of the type mentioned. The generic **Search** function is another name for **E-mail search**. **RnR search** is a search for Rooms & Resources when booking a meeting on the device.

- ❖ **Notification functions:** *Adaptive push, Adaptive push (IM)*

The statistics of one adaptive push (network push) session. The **Stream started** message means that a network push stream was started by the client. In the client, the lightning symbol ⚡ is shown. **Stream closed** means that the network push stream was closed again by the client, for instance if the phone is switched off or the connection is otherwise lost. The **(IM)** variant indicates

that the client has the **Sametime awareness** functionality turned on.

❖ **Provisioning functions:** *OMA DM, Self-provisioning, Application download*

The statistics of one provisioning function, either by way of OMA DM provisioning or SMS self-provisioning, or the size of the client download, or the packets sent in by a device when retrieving the device DM tree.

❖ **Other functions:**

Attachments: E-mail or meeting attachments uploaded to or downloaded from the server.

Commit: The process of confirming that a transaction such as a synchronization went well. If a transaction is not committed, it will be rolled back.

Diagnostic: The statistics of a device sending in its diagnostic log for analysis.

Password change: The statistics of a user changing his or her network password from the device.

Root certificate: The statistics of a user downloading the DME root certificate to his or her device.

SmartLink: The statistics of a user using the SmartLink add-on functionality.

Statistic: The statistics of a device sending in voice, messaging, and GPRS data usage statistics for use in the **Analyzer** view.

Time zones: The server sending a list of known time zones to the client, so the client can match its time zone with that of the server.

Verify credentials: Data exchanged between the DME server and G/On to verify that a user is permitted to use AppBox on the clients.

Notification

Messages in the **Notification** category show errors and warnings related to notifications for the device specified in the **Device** column. For more details about an error, click the **+** button in the **Message** header title. This will expand the message to include details about the error as posted by the DME subsystems (if applicable).

A notification-related error could be due to a mismatch between a notification and the sync. table of a device.

Provisioning

Log entries of the **Provisioning** and **Software install** categories are best seen by selecting **Installation log** from the page menu in the **Provisioning** tab - see Installation log.

Messages in the **Provisioning** category show information about when bootstrap commands were sent to which devices, and whether a command to install the default DME client for the device type in question was also sent - as in the example below.

Sending DM bootstrap to device with phone number : 30914222 (Install default DME Client after bootstrap)

See also **Software install**.

Software install

Log entries of the **Provisioning** and **Software install** categories are best seen by selecting **Install log** from the page menu in the **Provisioning** tab - see *Installation log* on page 437.

Messages in the **Software install** category show information about various software installation events:

- ❖ If a DME client was made the default version for a given platform.
- ❖ If a new device type was identified in the **Device types** page (see **Device types** on page 437).
- ❖ When a push to install a client has been sent, as in the examples below:

By SMS:

JAD - Application DME Client 3.0.0B5 downloaded

Software:	Java - Sony Ericsson JP-8 (W910) - DME Client 3.0.0B5
Phone number:	30914222
Information:	Software SMS push sent successfully.

By OMA DM:

Software:	Symbian series 60 - DME Client 3.0.8
Device ID:	357663013516491
Information:	Setting server path through DM. Software installation through OMA DM.

- ❖ and more.

Synchronizing

Messages in the **Synchronizing** category show statistics about the client's synchronization with the DME server. Usually a log entry of the category **Collaboration**, pertaining to the same device, will precede this entry. The **Collaboration** log entry shows the interaction between collaboration system and the connector; this entry shows the interaction between the DME server and the client. The information is shown as a table, which might look like this:

E-mail Sync.	deletes	creates	updates
Received	none	none	none
Sent	none	2	none
Sync. method	Push		
Timezone	Europe/Copenhagen		

For each type of synchronization data (function), a column tells how many items were deleted, created, or updated. Depending on the type of item, the data can be received or sent. **Received** means that the data was received from the client by the server; **sent** means that the data was sent from the server to the client.

Function

This is the type of synchronization (function) which was performed with the collaboration system. This could be **E-mail**, **Calendar**, **Addressbook**, or **E-mail folder sync**.

Entries

How many items of the specified type were synchronized from the client (**received**) or from the server (**sent**) as a result of the current connection.

Sync. method

How were the items synchronized - as a result of a push, scheduled sync. or a manual sync. If the sync. method is followed by **flush**, it means that the data was *imported* by the client (deleted on the client first, then synchronized). **One way** means that the current synchronization was part of a batch, and that nothing was actually sent to the device. The client controls when the server should send the entire batch.

Time zone

The time zone of the client. This can be useful in case questions arise regarding differences in the time of meetings between the client and the collaboration system.

The times and data amounts in the **Synchronizing** category are part of the total for the current device specified in the **Network** category.

Furthermore, statistics about the client's exchange of system information with the DME server are logged as an entry in the **Synchronizing** category. This information is also shown as a table, which might look like this:

Settings	delete	create	update
received	none	66	none
sent	none	none	62
Applications	delete	create	update
received	none	3	none
sent	none	none	none
Network Operators	delete	create	update
sent	none	none	none
Properties	delete	create	update
received	none	15	none
Fields	delete	create	update
received	none	11	none
Duration:	00:00:04.612 (No pending)		
Items parsed:	135 (29.27 per second)		
Sync. Method:	Import		
Time zone:	Europe/Copenhagen		

System information, for instance client settings, from the client are compared with those set on the server, and the settings are synchronized. Mandatory settings from the server are enforced on the client, and the server representation of the client is updated to reflect the personalized, non-mandatory settings from the client. The following table explains the various items in the graphic above.

For each type of system information data, a column tells how many items were deleted, created, or updated. Depending on the type of system information, the data can be received or sent. **Received** means that the data was received from the client by the server; **sent** means that the data was sent from the server to the client.

Settings	Settings are pieces of information set in the Settings tabs in the client, or in the default, group, or individual device settings pages on the server. For instance, in the graphic above, 66 settings were created on the server to reflect settings on the client. In return, the server updated 62 of these settings and pushed them back to the client.
Applications	This type of data indicates the number of blocked applications and network connections.
Network operators	This type of data indicates the number of preferred network operators sent to the client.
Properties	This type of data indicates information about device properties received from the device and registered in the Information page section for the device in question.
Fields	This type of data indicates information about which contact and calendar fields are supported by the device in question.
Duration	This row shows the total duration of the client's interaction with the DME server during this session. The parentheses following the duration in seconds indicate if there are any items pending processing, in other words if the system information exchange is complete. If not, you need to refresh the Log page to view the finished results.
Items parsed	This row shows how many items (settings, applications, etc.) were processed in total, and how many were processed per second.
Sync. method	This row shows if the interaction with the server was caused by a synchronization, a push, or an import action.
Time zone	This row shows the time zone of the client.

System

Messages in the **System** category show errors and warnings which cannot be related to any of the other categories. This could be errors in one of the subsystems on which DME depends (for instance JBoss). For more details about an error, click the **+** button in the **Message** header title. This will expand the message to include details about the error as posted by the DME subsystems.

A special **Surveillance** type of System messages exists. If enabled in **Server configuration > Data**, various additional parts of the system will be monitored, and any error messages will be formatted in a uniform and readable way. See **Data** on page 183. Log messages of this type may be directed to a different file than the `system.log` file - see **Log4j setup** on page 149 for more information. The messages are generated in the following way:

Every 10 seconds:

Note that 10 seconds is the default setting - in **Server configuration > Data** you can change the interval.

1. The availability of the DME database is checked. If no connection to the database can be found, the following message of type **FATAL** is written to the log: `DME database unreachable`
When the database becomes reachable again, a message with type **INFO** is written: `DME database is reachable again`
2. The availability of the DME Central Services is checked. If pinging the Central Services server yields no result, the following message of type **ERROR** is written to the log: `Central Services is not responding *)`

When Central Services becomes reachable again, a message with type **INFO** is written: `Central Services is responding again *)`

For both the database and the Central Services notifications, the log message is written once - five minutes after the database or Central Services server becomes unreachable. This is called the **Report delay**. The connection is tested every 10 seconds (the **Run every-interval**). The report delay and the run every-interval can be configured in **Server configuration > Data**. See **Data** on page 183.

*) Please note that currently the message says, "Central Service is ..." instead of "Central Services is ...". This will be fixed in a future service pack.

Every hour:

1. The license usage is checked every hour. User and device license usage are checked separately.
If **80%** of device or user licenses have been used, a message of type **WARN** is written to the log: `DME device/user license expiration warning. Used %d/%d`, where `%d/%d` is the number of devices or users in use compared to the maximum permitted number of devices or users.
2. If **90%** of device or user licenses have been used, a message of type **ERROR** is written to the log: `DME device/user license expiration warning. Used %d/%d`, where `%d/%d` is the number

of devices or users in use compared to the maximum permitted number of devices or users.

When the number of devices or users is once more under threshold (through the deletion of unused devices or the addition of more licenses), a message with type **INFO** is written: `DME device/user licenses are again under the threshold`

Every day:

1. The expiration date of the *DME license* is checked every day. If the license will expire within the next 60 days, a message of type **ERROR** is written to the log: `DME license expiration warning. The license will expire in less than [x no. days] days, on [expiration date]`

When the license is renewed, a message of type **INFO** is written to the log: `DME license expiration fixed.`

2. The expiration date of the *Apple Push Certificate* for Apple MDM is checked every day. If the certificate is set to expire within the next 30 days, a message of type **ERROR** is written to the log: `The Apple Push Certificate is about to expire. Expires on [expiration date]. Subject: [Certificate Subject]`

When the license is renewed, a message of type **INFO** is written to the log: `The Apple Push Certificate has been updated.`

For information about setting up `log4j`, see the next section.

Log4j setup

The amount of log entries in the DME logs is controlled by JBoss through a file called `jboss-log4j.xml`, which is located in the `conf` directory on the server. By default, the file is configured to append all messages to the file `server.log`, and to show them here in the DME web interface. If the option **Only show info messages** is enabled in the **Server configuration > Data** setup panel, only messages with a severity above **INFO** are displayed in the interface, but all messages logged in the server log file.

You can configure the `log4j` file to filter out or include various messages. In the following, we go through two examples.

Example one: S/MIME warnings

You may want to see all DME warnings in the web interface, except for S/MIME warnings. You do want to save the S/MIME warnings to a separate log file, however, so you can look through them at intervals. To accomplish this, you need to add a filter in the `log4j` file, and specify that such warnings should not be passed on to any other filters, in the following way.

Warning: If the configuration file is not well-formed after you have edited it, or if it contains other mistakes, no information will be logged at all.

Add the following *appender* and *logger* to the file, above the `<root>` system logger:

```
<appender name="SMIME"
class="org.jboss.logging.appender.DailyRollingFileAppende
r">
  <errorhandler
class="org.jboss.logging.util.OnlyOnceErrorHandler" />
  <param name="File"
value="${jboss.server.home.dir}/log/smime.log" />
  <param name="Append" value="true" />
  <param name="DatePattern" value="'.'yyyy-MM-dd" />
  <param name="BufferedIO" value="false"/>
  <layout class="org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout">
    <param name="ConversionPattern" value="%d %-5p [%c]
%m%n" />
  </layout>
</appender>

<logger name="smimeWarnings" additivity="false">
  <level value="INFO" />
  <appender-ref ref="SMIME" />
</logger>
```

The **appender** specifies that all that is passed to this appender should be *appended* to the file `smime.log`. A new file is created every day. (For more information about the various parameters, there are plenty of resources on the Internet, for instance <http://logging.apache.org/log4j/1.2/manual.html>). The log file are by default placed in the directory `${jboss.server.home.dir}/log/`. The variable is a JBoss variable, which usually resolves to `/var/dme/instances/<instance>/log/` on Linux, and `C:\Program Files\dme\jboss\server\default\log` on Windows servers.

The **logger** (can also be written as **category**) called `smimeWarnings` refers to the `SMIME` appender above, and specifies that all messages of the class `smimeWarnings` (as defined in the DME code), and any subclasses, from the **INFO** level and up should be processed by the appender in question. `additivity="false"` means that the messages will not be processed further (by the default `root` logger), including the internal DME logger that writes to the **Log** tab in the DME web interface.

Example two: Surveillance log

Log entries of the class **Surveillance** are described under the **System** category - see **System** on page 147. If no other logging is configured with `log4j`, all logging will be done in the **System** category.

Alternatively a separate log file could be used for the surveillance log. To do this, you may configure `log4j` in the following way:

```
<appender name="SL"
class="org.jboss.logging.appender.DailyRollingFileAppender">
    <errorHandler
class="org.jboss.logging.util.OnlyOnceErrorHandler" />
    <param name="File"
value="${jboss.server.home.dir}/log/surveillance.log" />
    <param name="Append" value="false" />
    <param name="DatePattern" value="'. 'yyyy-MM-dd" />
    <param name="BufferedIO" value="false" />
    <layout class="org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout">
        <param name="ConversionPattern" value="%d %-5p [%c]
%m%n" />
    </layout>
</appender>

<logger name="dme.base.log" additivity="false">
    <priority value="ALL" />
    <appender-ref ref="SL" />
</logger>
```

Here, the appender is given the name `SL`. It outputs all (priority `value="ALL"`) messages of the class `dme.base.log` to the file `surveillance.log`.

Note that the class `dme.base.log` may include entries that are not of the **Surveillance** type. If you want to ensure that only log entries that have been created by the surveillance log are included, you must create three similar loggers for the `SL` appender, with the following names:

- ❖ `dme.base.log.SurveillanceLoggerBean`
 - ❖ `dme.base.log.SurveillanceLogService`
 - ❖ `dme.base.log.SurveillanceUtilBean`
- instead of the `dme.base.log` logger.

Settings and log output

The way in which the logger writes text to log files and to the web interface depends on the settings in `log4j` which were discussed above.

The **logger** refers to an **appender** entered before the logger, and specifies that all messages of a certain class as defined in the DME code (for instance `smimeWarnings`) and any subclasses should be processed by the appender in question. The `additivity` keyword specifies if the messages will be processed further (by the default `root` logger) - `false` specifies that no further processing will be done (for instance by the internal DME logger that writes to the **Log** tab in the DME web interface). This can be illustrated in the following way:

Settings			Output to			
	log4j changed	additivity true	Only show info messages disabled in DME	server.log file	Separate log file	Web interface
1			X	X		X
2	X	X	X	X	X	X
3	X	X		X	X	
4	X		X		X	
5	X				X	

The rows in this schematic have the following meaning:

- Standard, with **Server configuration > Data > Only show info messages** disabled in DME means that the output goes to the file `server.log` and to the **Log** tab.
- The appender has been added to the `log4j` file. The parameter `additivity` is `true`, meaning that the log messages of the type defined by the appender are also picked up by the root appender and added to the `server.log` file as well as the separate file.
- Same as 2, but the messages are not shown in the **Log** tab.

4. `Additivity` is now set to `false`, and the messages are only appended to the separate log file. Note that when `additivity` is `false`, the warnings will never be shown in the web interface.
5. As 4 above.

After changing the log configuration, remember to *back up the file*. The `log4j` configuration file is reset during upgrades to new service packs of DME if changes have been made to the file. In this case, you need to reenter your modifications.

When changing the log level, you should restart DME.

Note that the examples in the preceding sections concern S/MIME and Surveillance messages. Other classes can be logged separately, for instance for debugging purposes. For more information, contact your DME partner (or Soliton Systems if you are a DME partner).

Logging AppBox File Browser

In order to get log messages from the AppBox File Browser (see **File browser** on page 227) to appear in the DME server's **Log** tab, you need to create a logging property file, and configure the server startup configuration files to incorporate that property file. The process depends on whether the DME server is running on Windows or Linux.

Logging property file

The logging property file is called `logging.properties`. Create a text file with the following content:

```
com.excitor.level = FINE
dme.level = FINE
```

Place the text file in the directory specified in the server startup configuration file - see below.

Startup configuration files

In order to enable File Browser logging in DME, do the following:

1. Open the DME startup configuration file.
On **Windows** servers, This file is called `wrapper.conf`, and is located in the `jboss\conf` directory of your DME installation, typically

```
C:\Program Files\dme\jboss\conf\wrapper.conf
```


On **Linux**, this file is called `init.d`. It is located in the `/var/dme/instances/<instance>/` directory of your DME installation, typically

```
/var/dme/instances/base/init.d
```
2. Add the pointer to the logging properties file.

On **Windows**, insert the following line in the file. Change the number `x` in `wrapper.java.additional.x` to a sequential number, if the number is already used elsewhere in the file:

```
wrapper.java.additional.x=-Djava.util.logging.config.file=%JBOSS_HOME%/server/default/conf/logging.properties
```

Note: The `%JBOSS_HOME%` variable is set near the top of the startup script file.

On **Linux**, add the following line to the file (as a single line):

```
JAVA_OPTS="$JAVA_OPTS  
-Djava.util.logging.config.file="/var/dme/instances/base/conf/logging.properties
```

3. Save and close the file.
4. Copy the logging property file to the location specified in the line you just entered:

```
%JBOSS_HOME%/server/default/conf/logging.properties OR  
/var/dme/instances/base/conf/logging.properties
```

5. Restart the server.

Log messages from the use of DME File Browser are now piped into the **Log** tab of the DME server.

Analyzer

The **Analyzer** tab shows traffic statistics and lets you run custom Analyzer reports using the BIRT reporting framework.

Statistical data with regard to DME data is always collected. Statistics with regard to voice, messaging, and general (non-DME) data traffic, is an optional setting which can be turned on or off using the **Log traffic** option in the **General** section of the settings for devices, groups, or default devices. For more information, see **Appendix D: Traffic logging** on page 374.

Statistics

The **Statistics** page menu contains functions to let you see traffic statistics, divided into four categories: **DME traffic**, **Voice traffic**, **Messaging traffic** and **Data traffic**.

The page menu contains a date filter similar to that in the **Log** tab (see **Finding information** on page 131), with the addition of a number of preset date filters: **Today**, **Yesterday**, **Week**, **Month**, and **Year**. The data shown in the Statistics pages are always limited by the dates selected in the date filter, and the current date range is shown at the top of each subtab in the Statistics pages.

DME traffic

The DME traffic statistics page is divided into a number of subtabs, each of which showing the statistics from a different perspective.

The DME traffic statistics cover data from all communication between the client and the DME server, whether the communication is over the air as GPRS or Wi-Fi or through a direct cable connection. DME seeks to make as precise a measurement as possible, but some variance must be anticipated. DME traffic statistics are always collected, for all clients.

Users

This subtab shows a table of the DME data usage of each user in the DME system. You can sort the table by clicking the table headers. Within the time frame shown just below the subtab header, the statistics show the following (by column):

Statistics for Data				
Users Functions Time				
Statistics for the period: 27-09-2008 - 26-03-2009				
User	Requests		Data	Data average
Anonymous	3,788	107.90 MB		(472%) 29.17 kB
EXDEV	2,401	23.00 MB		(159%) 9.81 kB
NIK	401	16.70 MB		(690%) 42.65 kB
CNI	1,709	16.18 MB		(157%) 9.69 kB
JS	1,999	15.85 MB		(131%) 8.12 kB
VMTEST1	3,351	14.93 MB		(74%) 4.56 kB
ABM	1,469	13.02 MB		(147%) 9.08 kB
DK	2,081	9.84 MB		(78%) 4.84 kB
ANN1	1,013	9.72 MB		(159%) 9.83 kB
OGE	615	8.41 MB		(226%) 14.00 kB
MS	1,811	8.30 MB		(76%) 4.69 kB

❖ User

The name of the user for whom the DME data statistics are logged. Click to see more details about the user. The first user is always called **Anonymous** - this "user" is not a real user, but covers various overhead and data traffic that cannot be allocated to any particular user, such as failed logins and application downloads.

The totals line shows the total number of users in the system (irrespective of the number of lines you have currently chosen to show in the table navigation bar).

❖ Requests

This column shows the number of requests for DME data made by a user's device within the stated time frame. A request could be one act of synchronization, or an application download (client upgrade). Next to the actual number of requests is a graph showing the user's share of the overall number of requests made to the server. If you let the mouse pointer rest on the colored part of the graph, a tooltip text will reveal the user's share of the total requests made as a percentage.

The totals line shows the total number of requests made to the server. Note that the numbers in the lines above may not add up to the total shown here - the total is the system total, whereas the table only shows the number of lines specified in the table navigation bar.

❖ **Data**

This column shows the amount of DME data transferred by each user. After the actual number, a graph shows the user's share in the overall DME data traffic within the specified time frame. The graph is filled with two shades of blue: A dark blue (the left-hand end) showing the percentage of *Incoming* data (for instance calendar entries created on the device and synchronized to the server), and a lighter blue showing the percentage of *Outgoing* data (synchronized or downloaded to the device). If you let the mouse pointer rest on either color, a tooltip text will reveal the actual percentage.

The hatched area () at the beginning of the graphs shows the standard deviation and the mean (the solid blue line) of the total set of data.

The totals line shows the total amount of data moved. Note that the numbers in the lines above may not add up to the total shown here - the total is the system total, whereas the table only shows the number of lines specified in the table navigation bar.

❖ **Data average**

This column shows the average amount of DME data transferred by each user - that is, the average amount of data per request. The percentage number in parentheses indicates the user's average request size in relation to the total average shown in the totals line. This way you can for instance quickly identify users that transfer a large amount of data per request.

The first number in the totals line shows the total amount of data (the **Data** column) divided by the total number of users (the **User** column), resulting in the average amount of data moved per user. The second number shows the total number of requests (the **Requests** column) divided by the total amount of data, resulting in the average request size.

Functions

This subtab shows a table of the data usage of the DME system divided into functions. You can sort the table by clicking the table headers.

Statistics for Data						
Users Functions Time						
Statistics for the period: 27-09-2008 - 26-03-2009						
Function	Requests	▲	Data	Data average	Duration	Duration average
E-mail sync.	15,115		133.50 MB	(146%) 9.04 kB	45:08:22	(5%) 00:00:10
Application download	79		109.65 MB	(22891%) 1.39 MB	00:28:49	(10%) 00:00:21
System info	4,787		34.34 MB	(118%) 7.35 kB	10:02:12	(4%) 00:00:07
Attachments	237		30.72 MB	(2138%) 132.75 kB	00:42:27	(5%) 00:00:10
Time zones	570		16.75 MB	(485%) 30.10 kB	00:01:20	(0%) 00:00:00
Commit	16,871		16.16 MB	(16%) 1,004 B	02:03:56	(0%) 00:00:00
Statistic	5,202		11.81 MB	(37%) 2.33 kB	06:20:02	(2%) 00:00:04
Addressbook sync.	1,046		9.79 MB	(154%) 9.59 kB	02:57:48	(5%) 00:00:10
Calendar sync.	2,598		8.91 MB	(57%) 3.51 kB	04:16:56	(3%) 00:00:05
Adaptive push	12,317		7.23 MB	(10%) 615 B	3748:14:35	(517%) 00:18:15
Search	1,289		3.68 MB	(47%) 2.93 kB	01:30:48	(2%) 00:00:04
SmartLink	193		2.71 MB	(232%) 14.39 kB	00:01:12	(0%) 00:00:00
Adaptive push (IM)	2,291		2.64 MB	(19%) 1.18 kB	00:00:44	(0%) 00:00:00
Search	582		2.11 MB	(60%) 3.71 kB	01:22:51	(4%) 00:00:08
File sync.	560		1.16 MB	(34%) 2.13 kB	00:23:45	(1%) 00:00:02
Freetime search	300		1.08 MB	(59%) 3.67 kB	00:15:27	(1%) 00:00:03
To-do sync.	554		961.43 kB	(28%) 1.74 kB	00:31:46	(2%) 00:00:03
File sync., data	8		258.05 kB	(520%) 32.26 kB	00:00:02	(0%) 00:00:00
Password change	115		112.41 kB	(16%) 1,000 B	00:01:03	(0%) 00:00:00
n/a	189		110.92 kB	(9%) 600 B	00:00:06	(0%) 00:00:00
Root certificate	18		32.43 kB	(29%) 1.80 kB	00:00:00	(0%) 00:00:00
Diagnostic	2		774 B	(6%) 387 B	00:00:00	(0%) 00:00:00
22	64,923		393.70 MB	17.90 MB / 6.21 kB	3824:24:20	173:50:11 / 00:03:32

Within the time frame shown just below the subtab header, the statistics show the following (by column):

❖ Function

The name of the DME function that gave rise to data traffic. The statistics are accumulated from log entries of the category **Network**. For information about each function, see **Network**. The "function" called **n/a** is not a function as such, but means that some traffic could not be attributed to a function - this could be errors, attempts at anonymous logins, etc. Such data is attributed to the **n/a** "function" and the **Anonymous** "user".

The totals line shows the total number of functions in the system for which statistics were collected within the specified time frame.

❖ Requests

This column shows the number of data requests made, divided into the different functions, within the stated time frame. Next to the actual number of requests is a graph showing the function's share of the overall number of requests made to the server. If you let the mouse pointer rest on the colored part of the graph, a

tooltip text will reveal the function's share of the total requests made as a percentage.

The totals line shows the total number of requests made to the server.

❖ **Data**

This column shows the amount of DME data transferred on account of each function. After the actual number, a graph shows the function's share in the overall DME data traffic within the specified time frame. The graph is filled with two shades of blue: A dark blue (the left-hand end) showing the percentage of *Incoming* data (for instance calendar entries created on the device and synchronized to the server), and a lighter blue showing the percentage of *Outgoing* data (synchronized or downloaded to the device). If you let the mouse pointer rest on either color, a tooltip text will reveal the actual percentage.

The hatched area () at the beginning of the graphs shows the standard deviation and the mean (the solid blue line) of the total set of data.

The totals line shows the total amount of data moved.

❖ **Data average**

This column shows the average amount of DME data transferred by each function - that is, the average amount of data per request. The percentage number in parentheses indicates the function's average request size in relation to the total average shown in the totals line.

The first number in the totals line shows the total amount of data (the **Data** column) divided by the total number of functions (the **Function** column), resulting in the average amount of data moved per function. The second number shows the total number of requests (the **Requests** column) divided by the total amount of data, resulting in the average request size.

❖ **Duration**

This column shows the duration of the connection between device and server on account of each function, shown in the format HH:MM:SS. After the actual number, a graph shows the function's share in the overall DME connection time within the specified time frame. If you let the mouse pointer rest on the colored part of the graph, a tooltip text will reveal the function's share of the total connection duration as a percentage. Please note that the function **Adaptive push** is not included in this, as the nature of the network push aspect of the adaptive push connection is to keep a persistent data connection open.

The hatched area () at the beginning of the graphs shows the standard deviation and the mean (the solid blue line) of the total set of data.

The totals line shows the total duration of all connections within the specified time frame.

❖ **Duration average**

This column shows the average duration of the DME data connection by each function - that is, the average connection time per request. The percentage number in parentheses indicates the function's average request size in relation to the total average shown in the totals line.

The first number in the totals line shows the total connection duration (the **Duration** column) divided by the total number of functions (the **Function** column), resulting in the average connection duration per function. The second number shows the total number of requests (the **Requests** column) divided by the total connection duration, resulting in the average request duration.

Time

This subtab shows a historical table of the data usage in the DME system, by month. Note that the date filter does not apply in this subtab. You can sort the table by clicking the table headers. The statistics show the following (by column):

Statistics for Data 				
Users Functions Time				
Month	Requests	Data		Data average
2009 - 03	54,835 	317.17 MB		(0%) 5.92 kB
2009 - 02	4,786 	32.97 MB		(0%) 7.05 kB
2	59,621	350.14 MB		175.07 MB / 6.01 kB

❖ **Month**

The year and number of the month for which the data are shown.

The totals line shows the total number of months for which statistics are shown.

❖ **Requests**

This column shows the number of data requests made by devices within the month in question. A request could be one act of synchronization, or an application download (client upgrade). Next to the actual number of requests is a graph showing that particular month's share of the overall number of requests made to the server. If you let the mouse pointer rest on the colored part of

the graph, a tooltip text will reveal the month's share of the total requests made as a percentage.

The totals line shows the total number of requests made to the server.

❖ **Data**

This column shows the amount of DME data transferred within the month in question. After the actual number, a graph shows the month's share in the overall DME data traffic. The graph is filled with two shades of blue: A dark blue (the left-hand end) showing the percentage of *Incoming* data (for instance calendar entries created on the device and synchronized to the server), and a lighter blue showing the percentage of *Outgoing* data (synchronized or downloaded to the device). If you let the mouse pointer rest on either color, a tooltip text will reveal the actual percentage.

The hatched area () of the graphs shows the standard deviation and the mean (the solid blue line) of the total set of data.

The totals line shows the total amount of data moved.

❖ **Data average**

This column shows the average amount of DME data transferred within the month in question - that is, the average amount of data per request. The percentage number in parentheses indicates the month's average request size in relation to the total average shown in the totals line.

The first number in the totals line shows the total amount of data (the **Data** column) divided by the total number of months (the **Month** column), resulting in the average amount of data moved per month. The second number shows the total number of requests (the **Requests** column) divided by the total amount of data, resulting in the average request size.

Voice traffic

DME clients can track incoming and outgoing phone calls in order to build a statistical base, which you can use to monitor voice traffic to reduce TCO (Total Cost of Ownership).

Please note that the collection of statistics relies on a number of factors, including the ability of devices of different makes and models to collect and report the numbers correctly to the DME server. The DME server builds the statistics base on the received data, and DME cannot guarantee the correctness or completeness of this information.

The voice traffic statistics page is divided into a number of subtabs, each of which providing insight into the voice data from a different perspective.

The filter functions are used in the same way as for DME traffic statistics (see **DME traffic** on page 155).

Users

This subtab shows all incoming and outgoing calls for users whose devices are set up to log voice traffic. Each user's total traffic is shown as a percentage of the total traffic.

Country

Shows the sum of incoming and outgoing calls, by the country from which the voice calls were made.

Operator

Shows the sum of incoming and outgoing calls, by the operator through which the voice calls were made. Country is also included.

An operator marked with the  icon is the **Home operator**, meaning the operator which issued caller's SIM card.

An operator marked with the  icon is the **Service operator**, meaning an operator which lets you use its network where the home operator does not have coverage, typically in connection with roaming agreements.

Dest. country

Shows the sum of incoming and outgoing calls, by the country to which the voice calls were made.

Incoming

This subtab shows a detailed sum of incoming calls. The sum is based on the call operator and country.

Users	Country	Operator	Dest.country	Incoming	Outgoing
Statistics for the period: 12-06-2006 - 11-06-2007					
Operator	Country	Direction	Country	Calls	Total time
 N NetCom	Norway		Norway	3	4m 49s
 N NetCom	Norway		Denmark	3	9m 0s
 one	Austria		Denmark	5	10m 21s
 sunrise	Switzerland		Denmark	1	50s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		Denmark	722	35h 34m 26s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		United Kingdom	2	35m 58s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		Switzerland	1	2m 24s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		South Africa	2	30m 36s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		Netherlands	4	14m 43s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		Sweden	2	10m 43s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		Germany	3	33m 20s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		Norway	9	23m 53s
 TDC MOBIL	Denmark		Belgium	2	28m 58s
 vodafone ES	Spain		Denmark	9	44m 54s
 vodafone ES	Spain		South Africa	1	1m 34s
 vodafone NL	Netherlands		Denmark	11	44m 46s
 vodafone SE	Sweden		Denmark	13	25m 46s
 vodafone SE	Sweden		Sweden	1	15s
 Vodafone.de	Germany		Denmark	1	1m 42s

The table should be read like this: A DME user located in country A receives a call from country B. For instance, line two in the table above states that three calls have been placed from Denmark to numbers in Norway using the **N NetCom** operator. The \$ sign in the arrow means that the mobile phone was roaming when the call was made. This is important, as the call receiver pays for roaming calls.

Another example: In the last line but one, a call from Sweden was placed to a recipient in Sweden. However, the recipient was not a native of Sweden, so the call was roaming.

For an explanation of the operator icons, see **Operator** on page 162.

Outgoing

Corresponds to the **Incoming** subtab, but shows outgoing calls.

Messaging traffic

The Messaging traffic statistics page shows the number of SMS and MMS messages that have been sent and received from the client devices. The page is divided into a number of subtabs. Each subtab shows how many messages were sent or received from a different perspective.

Please note that the collection of statistics relies on a number of factors, including the ability of devices of different makes and models to collect and report the numbers correctly to the DME server. The DME server builds the statistics base on the received data, and DME cannot guarantee the correctness or completeness of this information.

The filter functions are used in the same way as for DME traffic statistics (see **DME traffic** on page 155).

The subtabs show the same as for Voice traffic statistics. However, instead of minutes of voice traffic, the subtabs show the number of messages sent and received.

Data traffic

The Data traffic statistics page shows the amount of data traffic that the client devices have used. The page is divided into a number of subtabs, each showing data traffic from a different perspective.

Please note that the collection of statistics relies on a number of factors, including the ability of devices of different makes and models to collect and report the numbers correctly to the DME server. The DME server builds the statistics base on the received data, and DME cannot guarantee the correctness or completeness of this information.

The filter functions are used in the same way as for DME traffic statistics (see **DME traffic** on page 155).

The subtabs show the same as for Voice traffic statistics. However, instead of minutes of voice traffic, the subtabs show the duration of data connections in minutes.

Analyzer reports

DME integrates with a third-party, open source project called BIRT ("Business Intelligence and Reporting Tools"). With BIRT, it is possible to develop and run custom reports on the DME database.

BIRT is an open source reporting system for web applications, especially those based on Java and J2EE. BIRT has two main components: a report designer based on Eclipse™, and a runtime component that can be added to an application server (such as DME). BIRT also contains a charting engine that lets you add charts to your reports.

Furthermore, a number of standard reports are included with DME. These reports are fully functional, and can furthermore be used as a basis for further development. Note that when the reports are run, the dates and times selected in the **Period** filter are used as parameter for the report. This means that if you change the date and time and click **Show period**, the report will be run again showing data for the new span of time. See **Standard reports** on page 169.

If you want to develop your own reports or customize the template reports supplied by Soliton Systems, do the following:

1. Download the BIRT reporting package from the **Eclipse BIRT website** <http://www.eclipse.org/birt/phoenix/>.

Note that you must get BIRT version **2.6.1**.

2. Install BIRT.
3. Install a JDBC driver for your DME database (can be obtained from the MySQL or Microsoft websites).
4. Register the JDBC driver in Eclipse.

It is highly recommended that you work with BIRT using a **read-only** user account on the database in order to prevent accidental data loss. Ask your Database Administrator about this.

For help on using the BIRT report designer, see the built-in online help for that product, or visit the **Eclipse BIRT website** <http://www.eclipse.org/birt/phoenix/>.

New reports

When you have made a *new report*, use the **Upload report** action to load it to the DME server (see **Upload report** on page 166).

Editing existing reports

To edit an *existing report*, first download the report file to your local drive, edit it, and then upload it to the DME server again (see **Edit report** on page 167).

DME upgrades

Whenever DME releases a server upgrade (a new version or a Service Pack), the template reports shipped with DME are included in the database of the new installation. The reports may have been amended compared with the previous version, or new ones added. When you launch DME for the first time after the upgrade, any *new* template reports are extracted from the database and installed into the report directory. However, in order to not overwrite any customization made by you in the template reports, DME only installs reports that do not already exist in the reports directory:

`C:\Program`

`Files\dme\jboss\server\default\filestore\reports`
(Windows)

`/var/dme/instances/base/filestore/reports` (Linux)

This means that if you want DME to install a fresh copy of a report, you must delete the existing report file (`<reportname>.rptdesign`) from the reports directory, and restart the DME server. This will cause DME to re-install the template report from the database and make it available from the DME web interface.

The following sections describe the **Analyzer reports** page menu, which contains functions to manage and view BIRT reports in DME.

Manage reports

This page shows a list of the reports available to the DME system. The reports are grouped into one of four pre-defined categories: **Comparison reports**, **Summary reports**, **Usage statistics**, **User reports**, or in a user-defined category.

The tab toolbar in the **Manage reports** view contains the following actions.

Run report



Run the selected report. This corresponds to selecting a report in the **View reports** window. For more information, see **View reports** on page 168.

You must pick a report in the list before selecting this action.

Upload report



Click the **Upload report** icon to upload a new report to the server.

➤ **Uploading a new BIRT report to the server**

1. Click the **Upload report** icon.
2. Browse to the location of the new report, and select it.
3. Supply a name and category for the report, and click **Save**.

Note that this is for uploading new reports only. If you want to replace an existing report with an updated version of the same report, you must select the report you want to update, click **Edit report**, and upload it from that window. For more information, see **Edit report** on page 167.

Edit report



Click the **Edit report** icon to edit details about the currently selected report, or to upload a new version of the selected report.

➤ **Editing BIRT report details and updating reports**

1. Select a report in the list.
2. Click the **Edit report** icon.
3. In the field **Report name**, you can edit the external name of the report, that is the name shown in the report list.
4. In the **Category** field, select one of the pre-defined categories, or type the name of an existing or new category in the field **New category**. In the report list, the reports are grouped by categories.
5. The field **Report file** shows the physical name of the report design file on the DME server. If your browser supports showing XML, clicking the report file name will display the report design file in XML format.

If you want to edit the report in the BIRT framework, right-click the link, download the report file to your disk, and load it into BIRT. When you are done editing the report, upload the edited report file for this report by clicking the **Upload report** icon in the tab toolbar.

6. If you select the field **Is runnable**, the current report is visible in the **View reports** list.

A report which is not runnable is typically a drill-down report, that is a report which is run when you make a selection within another report, for instance clicking a user name in a voice traffic report. The report passes the user name parameter to the drill-down report. The text **[drill-down]** is automatically added to the name of such reports.

7. Click **Save**.

Delete report(s)



To delete one or more reports, select it or them, click the **Delete report(s)** icon, and confirm that you want to delete the selected report(s).

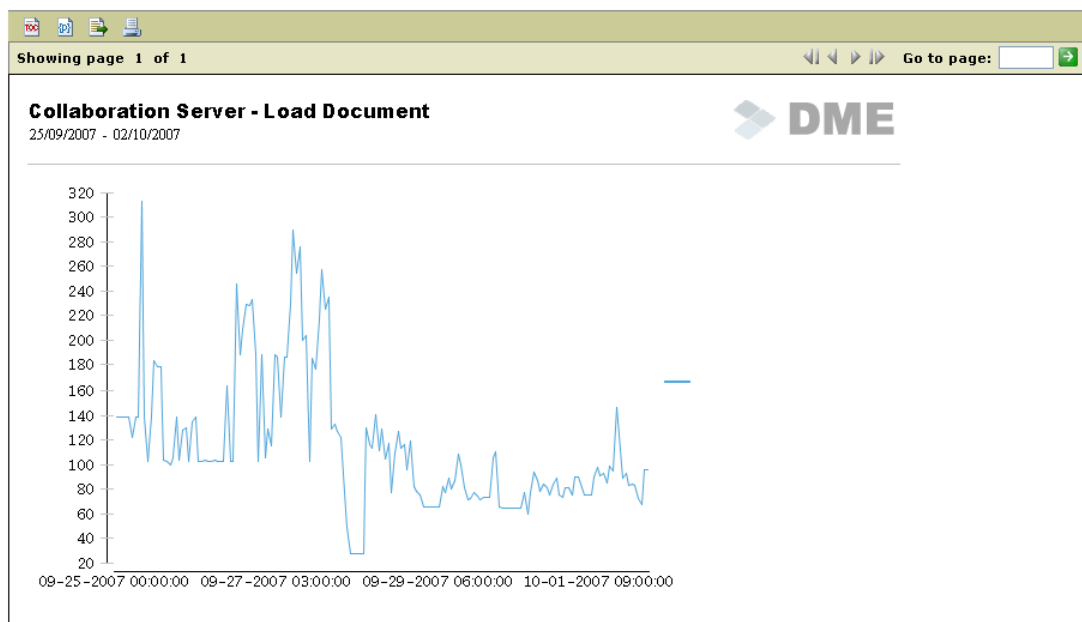
The reports are removed from the report list, and the associated report design files are deleted from the server. Please note, however, that if you delete a standard report (see **Standard reports** on page 169) in this way, it will be reinstalled the next time DME is restarted.

View reports

This page lets you choose a report from the **Select report** list. A report is included in the list if it has been uploaded to the server and marked as **Runnable**.

When you select a report, it is run immediately using the date range selected in the **Period** filter as parameter for the report. This means that if you change the date and time and click **Show period**, the report will be run again showing data for the new span of time. Please be aware that in order to run reports that cover a long time span, for instance a year, the DME server must have run without stopping for at least a full day. The BIRT round-robin database needs some time to build a reporting data foundation.

When you run a report, it is shown in a *report window* such as the one shown below.



The report window contains a number of buttons:

-  The TOC button toggles the Table of Contents on or off. This is not relevant for the standard reports, as they are all one-page reports.
-  Shows a parameter window. This is not relevant for the standard reports, as all parameters are passed from the server.
-  Exports the report data to a file with comma-separated values, which can for instance be opened in a spreadsheet application.
-  Convert the report to PDF format and display it in the browser. This ensures a good result if you want to print the report.

The navigation buttons on the right-hand side of the report window bar are not relevant for the standard reports, as they are all one-page reports.

Standard reports

Currently, DME includes the following standard reports, divided into groups:

Comparison reports:

❖ Compare settings

Shows groups and devices with settings that are different from the default settings or notification schedule. Clicking the groups or devices lets you edit the group or device in question.

Summary reports:

❖ Summary report

Shows a summary of a number of DME key performance indicators (KPI's): Traffic totals, top users, response times, memory usage, and service failures. Several of the KPI's include graphs for further details.

❖ Devices per OS and model

Lets you pick one or all device OS and/or device models, and shows a list of the selected device types. Grouped by device type, details are shown about each device found.

Usage statistics:

❖ Client notification methods

Pie chart showing the proportion of devices that receive notifications by SMS or network push, respectively.

❖ Data usage by operation

Shows a breakdown of the total amount of data handled by the DME server into data traffic types, for example e-mail synchronization, application download, etc.

- ❖ **Roaming and Domestic calls per month**

A dynamic cross-tab report showing the relation between roaming and domestic calls per year and month with groups, users in the groups. Numbers are color-coded - more than 500 domestic calls are shown in yellow, more than 1000 are red; more than 50 roaming calls are yellow, and more than 100 are red.

- ❖ **Top 25 data users**

Shows a graph of the top 25 users of data traffic. You can click a bar to drill down to a breakdown of the individual user's data traffic.

- ❖ **Top 25 voice users**

Shows a graph of the top 25 users of voice traffic. You can click a bar to drill down to a breakdown of the individual user's voice traffic by destination country. From here you can drill down to a list of the most frequently dialed numbers within the country in question.

- ❖ **Voice calls by country**

Shows a breakdown of voice traffic by country.

- ❖ **Voice usage, for user/country**

Lets you select a range of dates, a user ID, and a country ID (MCC - you can see a list of country MCCs at **Wikipedia** [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mobile_Country_Code_\(MCC\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mobile_Country_Code_(MCC))) to see a list of phone calls made by that user to the specified country.

User reports:

- ❖ **Current country and operator**

Shows the latest known country and operator for all users.

- ❖ **New users**

Shows new users with device, phone number, date of creation, date of latest sync, and client information within a range of dates.

Device statistics

The **Device statistics** section of the page menu contains one function.

View device list

This function lets you see a list of statistics pertaining to the devices registered in your system. It shows:

- ❖ Devices by type, with a count
- ❖ Operating systems used, with a count
- ❖ DME client versions used, with a count

The illustration below shows a section of the list; the part showing each version of the DME client installed on the server, and on how many devices each version is installed.

DME client version list	
DME version	Count
-	2
1.8.1	1
1.8.2	9
1.8.4	1
1.9.0	9
1.9.1	30
1.9.2	22
2.0.2	1
2.0.3	1
2.0.4	1
2.0.5	1
Total	78

The list is for information only.

Server

The **Server** tab contains functions and information used for managing the DME server.

If you are using the Web Administration Interface with the role of **DME_Superuser**, you are not able to change the server configuration.

Server configuration

The **Server configuration** panel is a list of grouped settings, which enable you to configure various aspects of the DME Server. After configuring a group of settings, click **Save configuration** to save your settings.

Note that the default values specified here are not necessarily the best values for your setup. Always consult your DME partner or a Soliton Systems consultant before changing the values.

This is the default page, meaning the page shown when you click the **Server** tab.

Client



In the **Client** section of the **Server configuration** panel you can configure various aspects of the clients' communication with the server.

Client software database

The **Client software database** group of functions contains the following field:

- ❖ **Software push, ticket lifetime (minutes)**

When software is pushed to the device by SMS or WAP, it is sent in the form of a link to the software on the server. This link will be valid for the specified number of minutes. If you specify "0", the link will always be valid. For information about installing software on clients, see **Installing DME on existing devices** on page 425. Default value: 60 minutes.

Connection

The **Connection** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Client request linger (seconds, client output cache)**

To keep the DME server from overloading the collaboration server, a mechanism exists to prevent excessive pulling in case of unstable GPRS connections. This setting defines the number of seconds that data to the client should be cached on the server. If a user tries to synchronize before the cache is flushed, the user will get the results from the cache instead of performing an actual synchronization, thus saving a connection to the collaboration server. Default value: 300 seconds. For more information about the cache, see *Clients online*.

❖ **Client request timeout (seconds)**

The maximum amount of time in seconds that a synchronization request can exist before it is returned to the client as a timeout error. This typically happens if the collaboration system fails to respond. Default value: 300 seconds.

❖ **Max. number of concurrent client processes**

This setting defines the maximum number of concurrent client connections from the DME server against the collaboration server. Please note this setting only has effect if set higher than `maxThreads` in `server.xml`. Note also that apart from this number of processes, the collaboration server needs to be able to handle the number of notification processes defined in the **Process** section of the **Notifications** setup panel. For more information, see **Process** on page 214. Default value: 100.

❖ **Upon busy server, retry after min. seconds**

❖ **Upon busy server, retry after max. seconds**

With these two settings, you define a range of seconds. If a client process has been denied access to the server because the number of concurrent client processes has been exceeded (see above), the server tells the process to try again after a random number of seconds between the minimum and maximum number of seconds specified in these fields.

❖ **Network minimum keep-alive time (minutes)**

In this field you can set the minimum time the server should wait before sending a keep-alive signal through the network push port. Default value is 3 minutes. In some configurations, this value and especially the maximum keep-alive time value can cause problems in connection with firewalls, proxies and other network equipment. For more information, see **Appendix F: AdaptivePush™** on page 388.

❖ **Network maximum keep-alive time (minutes)**

In this field you can set the maximum time the server should wait before sending a keep-alive signal through the network push port.

Default value is 30 minutes. The maximum value is 35 minutes. If the server waited longer than 35 minutes, Symbian devices would crash due to a limitation in the Symbian OS.

Limitations

❖ **Maximum field size, such as size of mail body**



In some cases, a large DME communication batch size is required to be able to show complex HTML e-mail on the client. This batch size is set by the client (version 4.1.3 and above).

However, Domino installations perform poorly with large batch sizes. For this reason, you can use this setting to control the batch size here, if the client sets the batch size too high. The default setting is **Value from DME Client**.

DM server

The **DM server** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ **Port**

In this field you can specify the network port you want to use for OMA DM traffic. If the field is blank, DME uses the same port as for synchronization traffic (**5011** by default). In a DME cluster setup, you may be required to use a separate OMA DM port, if the load balancer cannot handle multiple types of rules (both cookie and URL stickiness in this case). The load balancer needs to keep a persistent connection between the client and the DME server node providing the software requested by the DM engine.

If you change the port in this field, we recommend using port **5031** - this is the port used in the cluster configuration documentation. Note that you may need to change your firewall configuration as well.

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration.

Authentication



In the **Authentication** item of the **Server configuration** panel you can configure how devices are authenticated in the DME system.

Security

The **Security** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Create device on first connect**

If this field is set to **Yes**, the DME server will automatically add devices in the **Devices** tab, the first time a user logs on to the server with a device which is not known to the system already (that is, with an unknown device ID). The device is assigned to the

user. Unknown users are always created automatically if they pass the LDAP authentication.

If this field is set to **Two-step authentication**, new devices will be created with device ID and assigned to the user in the **Devices** tab, but locked. In order to enable regular synchronization with the device, the device must be unlocked by the DME Administrator. To help the DME Administrator identify the device, the device is permitted a system synchronization to populate the device identification fields, such as device type, user name, and phone number. These fields are visible in the device **Information** setup panel - see **Information** on page 86. To unlock the device, the DME Administrator can use the function **Toggle device lock** in the **Devices** tab (see **Toggle device lock** on page 61) or use a Web Service (see **approveDevice** on page 468).

Please note that if **Client signature** is enabled, and **Auto sign** is *not* enabled, the DME Administrator should send a new signing key to the device using the function **Add client signing key** on page 70 before unlocking the device.

If the field **Send mail on creation** below is **Yes**, the DME Administrator will be notified whenever a device is created or changes users.

If this field is set to **No**, you must create devices manually or import them in the **Devices** tab. Please note that using Apple MDM for adding devices to DME *will not work* if this field is set to **No**. When using Apple MDM, this field must be set to **Yes** or **Two-step authentication**.

❖ **Automatically created users are initially locked**

If this field is set to **Yes**, users who are created automatically (via LDAP) are initially locked, meaning that they are unable to log on to the DME server until the lock is cleared by an administrator in the **Devices** tab. If this field is set to **No**, users can start using DME immediately. Default: **No**.

❖ **Device allowed to switch users**

If this field is set to **Yes**, devices can change hands - users are permitted to log in to any device running DME. If this field is set to **No**, a device is bound to a user, and it cannot connect to the server if the user logging in is different from what is registered in the **Devices** tab. In order for a device to be passed to another user, it must be detached from the user first by a DME Administrator (see **Detach user from device** on page 57).

See also **Switching users** on page 79.

❖ **Allow Basic MDM devices**

If this field is set to **Yes**, Basic MDM devices are permitted access to DME. Basic MDM devices do not require authentication, and are created with "anonymous users" in the **Devices** tab. They are used for device management purposes, for gathering traffic statistics, and to some extent for synchronizing files. For more information, see **Appendix G: The Basic MDM client** on page 391. If this field is set to **No**, no "anonymous" devices are allowed on the DME server.

❖ **Client signature**

In this field you can specify if you want to require signed communication between clients and the server. Client signing is a process where the server confirms that the client is a valid user of the system, before any LDAP/AD authentication of the user takes place. This prevents Denial of Service (DOS) attacks on the LDAP system.

Client signing builds on a system of public and private keys, issued by the DME server. Each client receives a unique key from the server. When the client connects to DME, the server will verify the key presented to the server by the client. If the key is not validated, access is denied immediately.

For more information about the architecture behind the client signature feature, please request special documentation: "Client Signing" (NDA applies).

- ❖ **No:** The server does not expect the communication between server and client to be signed.
- ❖ **Compatible:** The server expects the communication between server and client to be signed, but only for compatible clients, that is DME clients version 2.0 and above running on the platforms mentioned above. This setting should only be used in a transition phase, for example during an upgrade from an earlier version of DME. When a certificate has been installed on all clients, you should change this field to **Yes**.
- ❖ **Yes:** Every connection made by the client to the server is signed according to DSS (Digital Signature Standard). This means that before establishing the connection and looking the user up in LDAP, the server verifies that the client is in fact known by the system using a system of public and private keys.

See also **Auto sign** below.

When client signatures are enabled, a challenge can arise when the user changes his or her network password using a PC (not the device). If the network password is changed, the user may be unable to connect to DME. There are two variations of this scenario:

- ❖ The DME client has been closed (the device has been rebooted or the DME application has been switched off): In this case, the user must start the DME client, log in using the **OLD** password, log out, and then log in using the **NEW** password. If the user tries to verify a new password without having used the old password first (which is stored encrypted on the device), then the DME server will reject the device because the client signature certificate on the client does not match the one on the server.
- ❖ The DME client has not been closed since the user changed his or her network password: In this case, the user must log out, and then log in to DME using the **NEW** password.

The important thing to remember is that you should not try to "help" the user by removing the signature key from the device in DME. You, the administrator, should only issue a new signature key to the device if the user is unable to log in to the device because the server is unable to verify the new password (because the client certificate cannot be verified by the server).

❖ **Auto sign**

If this field is set to **Yes**, unsigned devices should be provided with a certificate (key pair) when they connect for the first time. If **Client signature** is enabled (see above), you can enable this setting in a transition period until all existing, compatible devices have been provided with a signature. If this field is set to **No**, you must use the tab function **Add client signing key** on page 70 in the **Devices** tab to generate a key pair for a device.

❖ **Send e-mail on creation**

If this field is set to **Yes**, an e-mail is sent to an administrator when a device is created, a device changes users, or a new device signing key is generated. The DME Administrator can then verify the change, unlock any locked devices, or generate new keys for devices. The e-mail address is specified in the **Alert e-mail** section of the **Collaboration** on page 178 panel section.

❖ **Store user password (encrypted)**

If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will store an encrypted version of each user's mailbox password in the local DME database. The password is stored the first time a user synchronizes his device. This way DME can employ the user's own password for scanning mailboxes instead of having to grant access to the DME server user. The password is only used for mailbox scans. See **Collaboration** on page 178 for more information about the DME server user.

Note that if you change this setting from **Yes** to **No**, DME will flush all stored passwords. If you switch it back to **Yes**, the

process of collecting the individual users' passwords starts over. This process requires that the active user sessions first time out in the JBoss application server, and this will take some time - approx. 20 minutes. During this period, those users will be unable to establish a connection from their DME clients.

❖ **Lock jailbroken/rooted devices**

DME relies on the clients for information about which clients are jailbroken (iOS) or rooted (Android), and which are not. The client reports that a device is jailbroken or rooted by adding **(Jailbroken)** or **(Rooted)**, respectively, to the device name - for instance **iPhone 3GS (Jailbroken)**.

If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will lock all devices that have been reported to be jailbroken or rooted. When you enable this setting, DME will lock all existing jailbroken and rooted devices the next time they contact the DME server, and create new devices as locked if they are jailbroken or rooted.

If the setting has been enabled, and you disable it again, you must manually unlock the locked devices.

Note: When you manually unlock a locked, jailbroken/rooted device, the device will not be locked again when it connects to the server, and the user can use the device as any other device.

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration.

Collaboration



In the **Collaboration** section of the **Server configuration** panel you can configure how the DME server should manage S/MIME certificates, interact with the IBM Sametime instant messaging system, and send system-generated e-mails.

S/MIME

The **S/MIME** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Secondary LDAP Certificate Store**

In this field you can enter the URL to a secondary certificate store based on the LDAP protocol. For instance, VeriSign maintains a list (a public directory) here: <ldap://directory.verisign.com>. By entering this URL, you entrust an external partner (VeriSign) to maintain a list of trusted public keys. A description of this concept can be found here:

<http://www.verisign.com/stellent/groups/public/documents/guides/005327.pdf>

This way you do not have to install all root and external certificates on the DME server.

❖ **Automatically store unknown certificates**

If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will automatically store certificates from "external people". External people (sometimes called "other people") are here defined as people who are not users in the DME system. Say that an external accountant sends a signed e-mail to the CFO of your company. The accountant's certificate will then be stripped from his mail and stored here as an external certificate. Now every user in the DME system will be able to receive signed messages from the accountant, and DME certificate holders will be able to send signed and encrypted messages to the accountant without further setup.

❖ **Perform CRL/OCSP lookups**

If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will look up certificate revocation lists (CRL) and certificate status using the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) to check if external certificates are valid. However, if the server does not have access to the Internet, you should set this option to **No** to keep the server from attempting something that is not possible anyway.

❖ **Accept certificate even if CRL lookup fails**

If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will accept a public certificate from an external person, even if the certificate's CRL is unavailable at the moment, for instance if the CRL home page is down, or an Internet connection is temporarily down. Note that if the CRL is available, and the external person is found in the CRL, the certificate will naturally still be rejected.

Instant messaging

The **Instant messaging** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **IM server**

In this field you can enter the path to your instant messaging (IM) server (currently only IBM Sametime is supported). This enables IM presence in the clients, so users of the DME client can see the status of other users of the instant messaging server entered in this field.

❖ **IM username**

In this field you can enter the user name used for logging in to the Instant Messaging service user. The service user is used for acquiring the IM status of the users shown in client mailboxes.

❖ **IM password**

In this field you can enter the password of the Instant Messaging service user. The service user is used for acquiring the IM status of the users shown in client mailboxes.

SMTP relay

The **SMTP relay** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ SMTP mail relay server

This is the external name of the mail server used by DME for sending system administration messages (see **Alert e-mail** below). Note that this mail server must allow relays from the DME server IP address.

Note also that using a corresponding field on the **Main** section of the connectors' setup page you can set up a mail relay server for each connector, which will handle system-generated messages about calendar conflicts and name resolution errors. See **Main** on page 274.

❖ SMTP mail sender

In this field you can enter a name you want to show as sender when a user receives a system-generated message as described above. For instance, you can enter **DME Administrator** or similar as sender to make it obvious to the user that the message is system-generated. If you leave the field empty, system-generated messages will be sent with **root@DME-Server** as sender.

Please take steps to ensure that e-mails from this sender are not evaluated as spam by the recipients' e-mail clients, for instance by instructing the DME users to add this sender to the "Safe Senders list" or similar. E-mail in spam mailboxes is rarely read, and almost never synchronized to DME clients, so there is a risk that important information is missed by the users.

Alert e-mail

The **Alert e-mail** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ E-mail from

In this field you enter the sender name of e-mails sent by the server to inform an administrator that a client was created on the server or a new client signing key was generated by the server. The e-mail is sent using the SMTP mail server specified in the field **SMTP mail server** above. As sender name, you can for instance choose the name of the current server. If you leave it blank, DME uses the name entered in the **SMTP mail sender** field above.

❖ E-mail to

In this field you enter the recipient of the administrative server e-mails mentioned above.

Pre-caching sync. data

The **Pre-caching sync. data** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ **Pre-cache enabled**

If this field is set to **Yes**, pre-caching is enabled on the server. Please note that if you are using a technical user (**DME_Server**) for scanning the users' mailboxes, this technical user must have full access to all the users' mailboxes for pre-caching to work correctly. You are using a technical user if the field **Store user password (encrypted)** in the **Authentication** panel is **No** (see **Authentication** on page 174). If this is the case, you must accept a warning about this in order to enable pre-caching.

See below for an explanation of the DME concept of pre-caching.

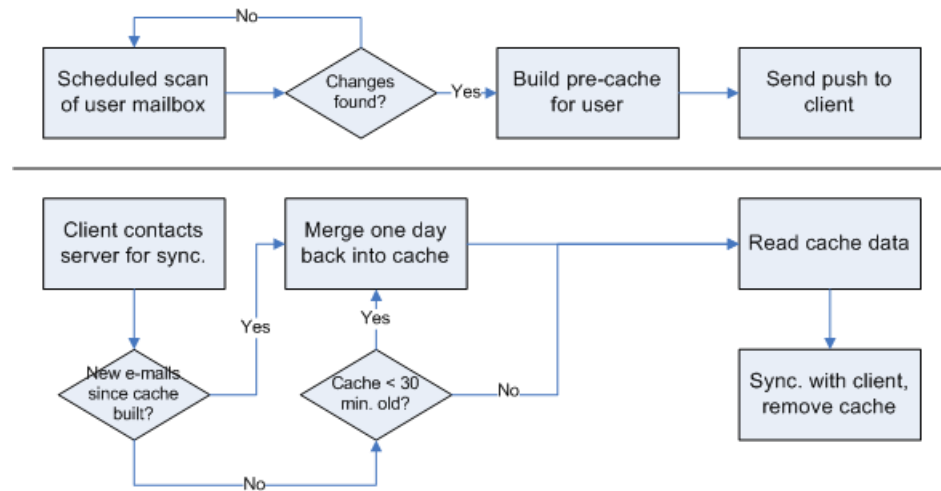
Pre-caching is a mechanism to reduce the time it takes to synchronize e-mails to the DME client. This mechanism was introduced in DME 3.5 Service Pack 7. Pre-caching does not require any new client.

Whenever the notification scanner detects a change in a user's mailbox, a request is sent to the connector in charge of synchronizing that user's e-mail. On receiving the request, the connector immediately begins to build a read-ahead cache where links to the user's e-mails are stored. When the cache is complete, the notification scanner sends a push using Adaptive Push to the client with information that new e-mail has arrived. When the client connects to the server in order to pick up new e-mail, the synchronization request is routed to the pre-built cache, and the new items are immediately available. Before synchronizing, the connector checks if a new e-mail has arrived in the space between the building of the cache and the actual synchronization by comparing the latest e-mail in the cache with the latest e-mail in the collaboration system.

If the cache exists already, it will be used if it is less than 30 minutes old. This means that any changes such as marking read/unread, moving to folders etc. that have been made in the collaboration system within this period of time will not be reflected in the DME client until the next synchronization.

If the cache is older than 30 minutes, the mailbox content from today and yesterday, including changes due to marking read/unread and moving to folders, is read out from the collaboration system and merged into the cache.

The cache is removed when the client synchronizes. See illustration below.



This applies to push, scheduled, and manual synchronization. In case of an import, the cache is never used.

Benefit

The user will experience significantly faster e-mail synchronization when receiving a push, because the server can compare the contents of the client's mailbox with the cache and does not need to contact the collaboration system for anything other than getting the new e-mails (or information about deleted or read e-mails, or whatever is required by the changes discovered in the mailbox). This speed optimization is especially significant on devices that do not support e-mail synchronization as a background process (as in Apple's iOS).

Security

The cache stored on the connector does not include the e-mails as such, only an MD5 checksum and a reference to the e-mail (a so-called *minimal note*). The e-mail content is stored securely in the collaboration system mailstores.

S/MIME

Due to the way in which S/MIME e-mails are handled by the collaboration system, enabling pre-caching will *not benefit* overall system performance if most of your e-mails are S/MIME. In other words, if your users primarily send and receive S/MIME e-mails, you should not enable pre-caching on the server.

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration.

Data



In the **Data** section of the **Server configuration** panel you can view the amount of data used by the DME database, configure the DME data cleanup thread, specify directories for data storage, determine the volume of log entries, set the maximum size of file uploads, and configure the obfuscation of phone numbers in the statistics database.

Database usage

The **Database usage** group of fields shows the current size of three tables in the DME database. The size is shown as a ratio between the current size and the maximum amount available for the table in question. On systems based on the MySQL database, the maximum size is typically 4 GB. On systems based on MS SQL Server, the table size can usually be expanded dynamically, and you must ask your database administrator for information about the maximum size of each table.

❖ Log table

A graphical view of the ratio between the actual and the maximum amount of data in the log.

❖ Statistics table

A graphical view of the ratio between the actual and the maximum amount of data in the statistics table.

❖ Voice statistics table

A graphical view of the ratio between the actual and the maximum amount of data in the voice statistics table.

Log configuration

The **Log configuration** section contains one option:

❖ Only show info messages from DME

If this field is set to **True**, only information about DME is shown in the log.

If this field is set to **False**, information from a number of third-party applications will also be included in the log, such as information about JBoss, Domino, CORBA and so on, as configured in the `jboss-log4j.xml` file on the connector. This information is also available elsewhere, that is in other log files. See the documentation for the third-party application in question.

Default: **True**.

Surveillance log

The settings in the **Surveillance log** group of fields are used to specify options for the **Surveillance** log type. For more information about which events are tracked and how this operational logging is configured, see **System** on page 147. This group of functions contains the following fields:

- ❖ **Enable surveillance log**

If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will monitor its internal state of health and output any error messages in a uniform and readable way.

- ❖ **Run every (seconds)**

The **Surveillance** type of monitor checks for errors at various intervals (see **System** on page 147). The shortest of these intervals is by default **10 seconds**, but you can change that here. This frequent check applies to DME database and Central Services availability.

Please note that for a change in this setting to take effect, a *DME server restart is required*.

- ❖ **Report delay (seconds)**

If an error situation arises, the **Surveillance** monitor will wait for the period of time entered here (in seconds) before a message is written in the log. This is to allow for any planned interruption of service. By default, DME waits 5 minutes (300 seconds) before entering an error message pertaining to database and Central Services availability. Enter **0** in this field if you want the monitor to log a message immediately.

Database maintenance

The settings in the **Database maintenance** group of fields are used by the internal cleanup thread, which cleans out old log entries and statistics that have lost their relevance. This group of functions contains the following fields:

- ❖ **Delete log older than (days)**

This setting specifies how old a log entry must be to be cleaned out of the database automatically. Default is **180**, which is about six months. However, if you run an active system with many users, it is a good idea to reduce the number of days to 90 or even 30 days, as the database log table will otherwise grow very large.

- ❖ **Delete statistics older than (days)**

The functionality of this field is similar to that of the field **Delete log older than (days)** above, but applies to statistics entries.

❖ **Delete old log & statistics every (hours)**

In this field you can specify (in hours) how often the cleanup thread should be launched to clean out old log and statistics entries. Default is **24 hours**, meaning that the server will clean out log entries and statistics older than the number of days specified above daily.

Data storage directories (including custom graphics for Android and iOS)

The **Data storage directories** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Local data directory**

This is the directory in which DME stores local data, including files for synchronization, device images, device statistics, and custom (*white-label*) images for Android and iOS clients.

For information about how to add custom graphics to Android and iOS clients (version 4.0 and up), see **Appendix J: Custom graphics on Android and iOS** on page 459.

❖ **Local temporary data directory**

The directory in which DME stores temporary data, such as files being uploaded, temporary cache data, etc.

Data limits

The **Data limits** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ **Max. file size for upload to server**

In this field you can specify the maximum size of files uploaded to the server. This limit applies to all files uploaded to the server. A file can be uploaded as a result of a file synchronization rule or as an attachment to an e-mail sent from a DME client, or it can be a DME client uploaded to the **Provisioning** tab.

If your DME database is a MySQL database, and you increase this value to above the default value of **16 MB**, you will probably need to change the configuration the `max_allowed_packet` value for your database accordingly in order to prevent errors. For instance, if you change the value here to **32 MB**, enter the following command in the database shell:

```
mysql --max_allowed_packet=32M
```

For more information, see the following article on the MySQL home page: **Packet too large**

<http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.0/en/packet-too-large.html>

.

Statistical data

The **Statistical data** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ **Hide no. of phone number digits**

In statistical reports using the BIRT reporting framework it is possible to create reports that allow drill-down to individual phone calls. In many countries, it is not permitted to display the entire phone number in such reports for reasons of privacy.

In this field, you can enter the number of digits that DME should hide from the phone numbers stored in the statistics database.

The phone numbers are obfuscated by replacing the digits with an **X**. The digits are replaced from right to left. If you enter **0** in this field, the phone numbers will be fully displayed.

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration.

SMS modem

 In the **SMS modem** section of the **Server configuration** panel you can configure the SMS server attached to the DME server. DME supports Kannel and Now SMS (Windows only) as SMS server. The SMS server was installed together with the DME application, and you can configure some of the options here.

SMS modem

The **SMS modem** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Phone country code**

The default phone country code used for the SMS gateway.

❖ **SMS server**

The DNS name or IP address of the SMS gateway.

❖ **Username**

The user name giving access to using the SMS gateway.

❖ **Password**

The password giving access to using the SMS gateway.

❖ **OMA PIN**

Some devices require a PIN code to be able to open OMA configuration messages. The default OMA PIN code is "12345". See below and **Self-provisioning** on page 453.

❖ **SMS Service PIN**

You can permit devices to use SMS codes for initiating downloads of configuration files and software (see **Self-provisioning** on page 453). By setting a PIN code in this field you can require that the SMS sent from the device must be followed by a PIN code (to

enhance security). If you do this, the download request SMS sent from the device must have the following form:

<SMS Code> <PIN>

-and be sent to the number specified in the field **Modem phone number** below.

❖ **SMS gateway POST PIN**

For enhanced security (to keep third parties from posting to the DME server), you can define a secret PIN code which must be part of the URL for the SMS gateway. This PIN code must be appended to the URL that connects the SMS gateway with DME in the form `&gateway_pin=<GATEWAY_PIN>` - where `<GATEWAY_PIN>` is the number entered in this field.

If you are using Now SMS, you need to append this to the URL in the field **Command to Execute** in the **2-Way** tab in the Now SMS configuration utility. See the separate document **Integrating Now SMS with DME** for more information.

If you are using Kannel, you need to append this to the URL specified in line 80 (approx.) of the Kannel configuration file `/var/dme/kannel/kannel.conf`. The line contains something like

```
post-xml =
```

```
"https://<HOSTNAME>:5011/msggateway/smsService"
```

After the change, the line should be something like

```
post-xml =
```

```
"https://<HOSTNAME>:5011/msggateway/smsService&gateway_pin=<GATEWAY_PIN>"
```

Restart the Kannel server after changing the configuration file.

❖ **Modem phone number**

The phone number of the SMS modem attached to the SMS server. This is also the number used by the clients to report their phone number to the server, if the phone number in **Settings > General** for the device is blank (see **Phone number** in General settings). This means that if this field is blank, devices cannot report their phone number to the server.

*Please be aware that if you are using a web-based SMS service center, and you cannot get SMS feedback from the clients, **this field must be blank** in order to avoid that the client keeps trying to report its phone number to the server.*

SMS gateway configuration

The SMS gateway configuration group of functions contains the following field:

❖ **Choose gateway interface**

In this dropdown list you can choose which SMS gateway has been installed for sending out SMS messages and SMS/WAP push to the

clients: **Kannel** or **Now SMS**. Then fill in the fields that apply to the SMS gateway you have chosen.

Kannel

The settings in this group of fields apply if you have installed Kannel as SMS gateway on the server. See also the documentation for the Kannel gateway.

The **Kannel** group of functions contains the following fields:

- ❖ **WAP push path**

The path to the **WAP Push** script on the Kannel server.

- ❖ **OTA path**

The path to the **Send OTA** script on the Kannel server.

- ❖ **SMS path**

The path to the **Send SMS** script on the Kannel server.

- ❖ **Does the Kannel server use delivery reports**

If this field is set to **Yes**, Kannel will expect a confirmation message from the operator that each SMS has been transmitted correctly.

- ❖ **DME host for delivery reports**

If the use of delivery reports is enabled, enter the DME host name or IP address open for receiving delivery reports, that is the server where Kannel is installed. If empty, the external DME server address (the "server path" is assumed).

- ❖ **Bind SMS gateway input to IP address**

In this list, you can choose to bind the SMS gateway only to a specific connector or to them all. In this way you can make sure that the SMS gateway can only be accessed from inside the company. The list is built from settings in the server configuration files, which are specified during the installation of DME.

Now SMS

This setting applies if you have installed the Now SMS/MMS Gateway (NowSMS) as SMS gateway on the server. See also the documentation for the Now SMS/MMS Gateway at <http://www.nowsms.com>.

The **NowSMS** group of functions contains the following field:

- ❖ **NowSMS server port**

In this field you can specify the port number for the NowSMS web interface (default is **8800**).

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration.

Central Services

 In the **Central Services** section of the **Server configuration** panel you can configure feedback to DME Central Services (CS), and turn third-party push notification (GCM and APNS) on or off.

DME Central Services (CS) is a customer installation feedback service provided by Soliton Systems. When enabled, your DME server will automatically collect information about your system settings, your device mix, generic usage statistics, and system errors and warnings. This information is posted regularly to the DME CS server, which is run by Soliton Systems. The information is collected from all participating DME customers. Note that this is strictly one-way traffic - the DME Central Services server will never contact a DME server.

With this information, Soliton Systems gets more accurate background data about the server environment of their customers. The information is available to a group of DME support staff, who use it to access up-to-date data when helping our customers, and selected lead developers, who use the data to constantly improve DME.

It is very important to stress that the collected information is completely anonymous. In the **Installation information upload** section below you can read more about which information is uploaded, and how Soliton Systems uses it for your benefit.

Third-party push notification

The **Third-party push notification** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ Third-party push notification

Set this field to **Yes** to enable third-party notification. This means different things on the Android and the Apple platforms:

For Android devices, this is the Google Cloud Messaging (GCM) service, which is *highly recommended* for Android devices to receive push notifications from DME. For more information, see **Notifications on Android devices** on page 224.

For Apple iOS devices, this is the Apple Push Notification Service, which is *required* for iOS devices to receive push notifications from DME. For more information about further requirements, see **Notifications on iOS devices** on page 221.

Please note that you can disable third-party notification for individual devices or groups of devices using the **Third-party push notification** setting in the **Device settings** page (see **Adaptive Push settings** on page 339).

Installation information upload

The **Installation information upload** group of functions contains the following fields. Note that all fields are set to **No** by default, so you must enable them to take advantage of the Central Services statistics and error reporting features. Note also that all data that is sent to the CS server is anonymized. For instance, device IDs are hashed so that it is not possible to connect individual devices with their owners.

❖ Upload basic installation information

If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will connect to the CS server 2-24 hours after the installation of DME 3.5 SP 3, and 2-24 hours after every subsequent server restart. The two-hour delay enables you to turn this feature off if you have a reason not to keep it enabled.

The following information about your system is sent:

Server settings: The status of some of the settings in the **Server configuration** panel. Security-related settings from the **Authentication** section are not included.

License information: The number and type of licenses acquired, and how many free licenses are available.

❖ Upload basic topology information (requires installation info)

In order to enable the collection of topology information, the field **Upload basic installation information** above must be enabled also. If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will connect to the CS server once every two weeks and send the following information about your system:

System properties and environment: DME server version, Java version, etc. (largely the information shown in the **Monitor > Server properties** section).

Database properties: Version, type, and JDBC driver version.

Connector properties: Some of the settings made for each connector (no security-related settings).

Device properties: For each device, its client version, platform, type, and settings such as what DME features are enabled (e-mail sync, calendar sync, etc.). Device IDs are hashed (made anonymous).

❖ Upload usage statistics (requires topology info)

In order to enable the collection of usage statistics, the field **Upload basic topology information** above must be enabled also. If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will connect to the CS server once every two weeks and send the following information about your system:

Usage statistics: The same statistics that form the basis for the built-in trend graphs on the **Monitor** page. Note again that the statistics are completely anonymous.

❖ **Upload error/warning log statistics (requires installation info)**

In order to enable the collection of errors and warnings, the field **Upload basic installation information** above must be enabled also. If this field is set to **Yes**, DME will scan your system's log files and send the following information to the CS server once a day:

Errors and warnings: The errors and warnings that occur most frequently (up to 20 of them) are picked out from the log files, and each error is hashed and given a special ID. This ID is then sent to the CS along with a list containing the following information: One instance of the complete error message; a time stamp for each occurrence of the error (max. 500 time stamps); a list of affected device types and how many times each type is affected by the error.

With this information, Excitor can gain a deeper understanding of how our customers use DME, and what your needs are. This understanding is essential for the future development of DME.

As a more immediate benefit to you, Soliton Systems will analyze the error messages that are reported. With this information, Soliton Systems can build fixes for those particular errors, and send the fixes to those customers that are affected by the error.

The URL address of the DME Central Services (CS) server is `cs.excitor.com`. This cannot be changed. Port **443** (SSL) must be open from the DME server to the DME CS server. DME pings the CS server once every hour. If there is no response from the CS server, a message is written in the log.

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration. Click **Start upload** to upload the installation information to the Central Services server immediately.

Web



In the **Web** section of the **Server configuration** panel you can configure various aspects of the DME server Web administration interface and of logging.

Web administration

The **Web administration** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Days of statistics shown in Analyzer tab (default)**

The default number of days for which statistics are shown on the **Analyzer** tab. You can change this value in the date filter in the **Analyzer** tab - see *Finding information* on page 131.

Recommended value: 30.

❖ **Days of searchable log entries in Log tab (default)**

The default number of days for which logs are searchable on the **Log** tab. You can change this value in the date filter in the **Log** tab - see *Finding information* on page 131. **Recommended value:** 30.

❖ **Installation name**

In this field you can specify the name of the installation managed by these administration pages. It is the name shown in title bar of the web browser, typically the name of your company. The name is initially entered by the DME Setup Wizard, but you can change it here.

Note that you can have multiple instances of DME running on the same machine, for instance a production instance and a test instance. Entering different names for different instances makes it easier to distinguish between them.

❖ **Server name**

In this field you can specify the name of the server on which the current installation is run. If the server name is empty (default), DME uses the server hostname as defined in the server OS. In a cluster setup, we recommend that you change the name in this field to a short name, which helps you to identify the server easily.

The server name is printed on every entry in the server log, and can be seen on the entries visible in the **Log** tab. The server name is also added as the first part of the name of the different statistics you can see in the Monitor panel section.

The inclusion of the server name in log entries makes it easier for a load balancer to distribute the server load and for a fail-over system to cease using a defective server. In a cluster, you set up all servers (virtual or physical) with the same installation name, but different server names. For more information, please request special cluster setup documentation.

❖ **Refresh user/group membership (minutes or time hh:mm)**

The way that individual devices are structured into groups is important when notification schedules have been set up for individual groups. For instance, if a user is member of the LDAP group **Sales**, and a special notification schedule has been set up for this group, then it is important that DME knows which users are

member of **Sales** in order to notify the users' devices about new e-mail etc.

DME uses the group membership to help you release DME licenses that are no longer in use. When a user is removed from a group that gives access to using DME, then the user's license will be released when DME refreshes the user/group membership.

DME refreshes the relationship between users and groups by scanning the LDAP/AD system at regular intervals as defined in this field. You can either enter the number of minutes that should pass between each refresh, or you can enter a specific time of day in **hh:mm** format, and DME will then perform the user/group refresh at that time. You could for instance specify that DME should refresh the user/group memberships every night at **02:00**.

If you want to make sure that the user/group memberships are up-to-date, click the **Run now** button to perform a manual refresh. You may want to do this if you change the relationship of a device to a group (by adding devices to or removing devices from a group, or by changing the priority of a group), or if you switch users in or out of groups in the LDAP/AD system.

❖ **Server documentation url**

In this field you can specify the path to the online documentation for the DME server. Excitor A/S maintains a website with the documentation for the different versions of the DME server and other documentation. By default, the server path is set to [http://resources.excitor.com/manuals/server/\[ServerVersion\]](http://resources.excitor.com/manuals/server/[ServerVersion]), where **[ServerVersion]** is the version of the current DME server, with underscores replacing the periods - for instance **4_6**. In case firewall restrictions or other issues makes it impossible to access the Excitor documentation site, you can request a copy of the online documentation for installation on the local machine.

The online help is shown when you click a question mark icon  in the page. For more information, see **Online help** on page 43.

❖ **Bind admin site to IP address**

With this setting, you can choose the port you want to use for accessing the DME web administration interface, typically 8080. By binding the web interface to a specific port, you exclude access from other ports which are used for other purposes, for instance the 5011 sync port. The chosen port can for instance be configured by a firewall to be available from inside the company only (and not the internet). Please note that you must not choose the port which is used for network push (5021 by default), as this will lead to undesired effects in the Web Administration Interface.

The list of available ports is built from settings in the `server.xml` configuration file, which is generated during the installation of DME.

When you connect to the web interface in a cluster setup, for instance using `https://<path to load balancer>:8080`, the load balancer will direct you to the next available server in the round-robin rotation. If you want to be able to manage a specific server node in the cluster, you must set up rules on the load balancer that forward you to the intended server. For instance, you can forward port 8081 to port 8080 on the `DME-1` node, 8082 to `DME-2:8080`, and so on. Thus, entering the path above with port 8080 will show you a random server, port 8081 will show you `DME-1`, and so on.

It should be noted that in a cluster setup you can manage any server node in the cluster, and the node will immediately propagate your configuration changes to the other nodes. The only case where you need to see a specific node is when viewing statistics on the **Monitor** page on the **Server** tab, which can only be viewed from the master node. The master node is the node shown first when you view the **Server properties** subtab on the **Monitor** page.

Log

The **Log** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ Whois server

The **whois** server is used for looking up the provider of the connecting device, translating IP addresses in the **Log** tab to human readable DNS names.

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration.

Monitor



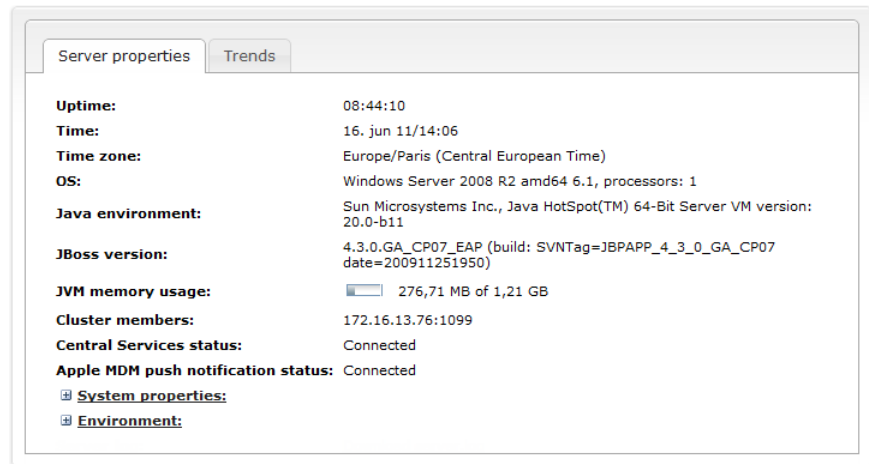
In the **Monitor** section of the **Server configuration** panel, you can view the properties of the DME server and the different services that the DME server depends on. Furthermore, you can see statistics and trends about server and connector performance.

This information is useful for troubleshooting the server and connectors.

The **Monitor** section is divided into the following two tabs.

Server properties

The **Server properties** tab shows some statistics and environment information about the DME server.



The following information is shown:

❖ Uptime

The DME server has been running for this amount of time. The time is shown as a number of days plus a number of hours, minutes, and seconds.

❖ Time

This is the current server time.

❖ Time zone

This is the current server time zone.

❖ OS

The full name of the operating system on which DME is installed.

❖ Java environment

The Java version installed on the server.

❖ JBoss version

The version of the Java application server JBoss from Red Hat. Note that as of DME 3.5, DME uses the Enterprise Edition of JBoss - in previous versions, we used the Community Edition.

❖ JVM memory usage

This is the memory usage of the Java Virtual Machine.

For instance, if the numbers are **1.15 GB of 1.22 GB**, it means the following: 1.22 GB is the maximum amount of memory available for Java objects in the JVM. The JVM itself takes up memory, but that is not included in this amount. Out of the 1.22 GB, 1.15 GB is actually being used by JBoss and DME. Please note that for performance reasons, the JVM will not release memory (from

no-longer-used Java objects etc.) until it is necessary, and therefore the usage will often seem to be higher than it actually is.

❖ **Cluster members**

This field lists the IP addresses of the online, active members of the DME cluster. The server listed first is the primary server in the cluster (the *master node*). If the master node is down, number two in the list will take over and become the master node. This does not change, even when the original master node is back online.

If DME is not set up with multiple servers, only the current server is listed in this field.

❖ **Central Services status**

If the DME server has been configured to connect with DME Central Services, this field shows if the connection was successful (**Connected**). Among other things, this has an impact on Apple Push Notification Services. For more information, see **Setting up notifications on Apple iOS** on page 224 and **Central Services** on page 189.

❖ **Apple MDM push notification status**

If an Apple MDM APNS certificate has been installed on the server, this field shows **Connected**. It is then possible to enroll and configure iOS devices. For more information, see MDM on Apple iOS.

❖ **System properties**

Click to expand this field. The field shows information about the Java system installed on the server, as reported by Java.

❖ **Environment**

Click to expand this field. The field shows information about the server environment as reported by Java.

Trends

The **Trends** tab shows a collection of statistic trends and key performance indicators concerning the DME server and connectors.

The list of statistics contains four columns:

❖ **Statistic**

This is the name of the statistic. Click the name to view the statistic (as explained below).

❖ **Location**

The DME component to which the current statistic pertains. This could be the DME server, which is shown with a server icon and the name of the server, or a connector, which is shown with a connector icon and the name of the connector.

❖ Trend 4h

An arrow in this column shows if the trend has been rising or falling over the last 4 hours. The trend analysis is based on a linear regression analysis of the measurements. If the result of the regression analysis is at least 5% above the measured average, the trend is rising, and a grey upward arrow is displayed. If the result is at least 5% below the measured average, the trend is falling, and a grey downward arrow is shown. If no significant change has occurred, no arrow is shown.

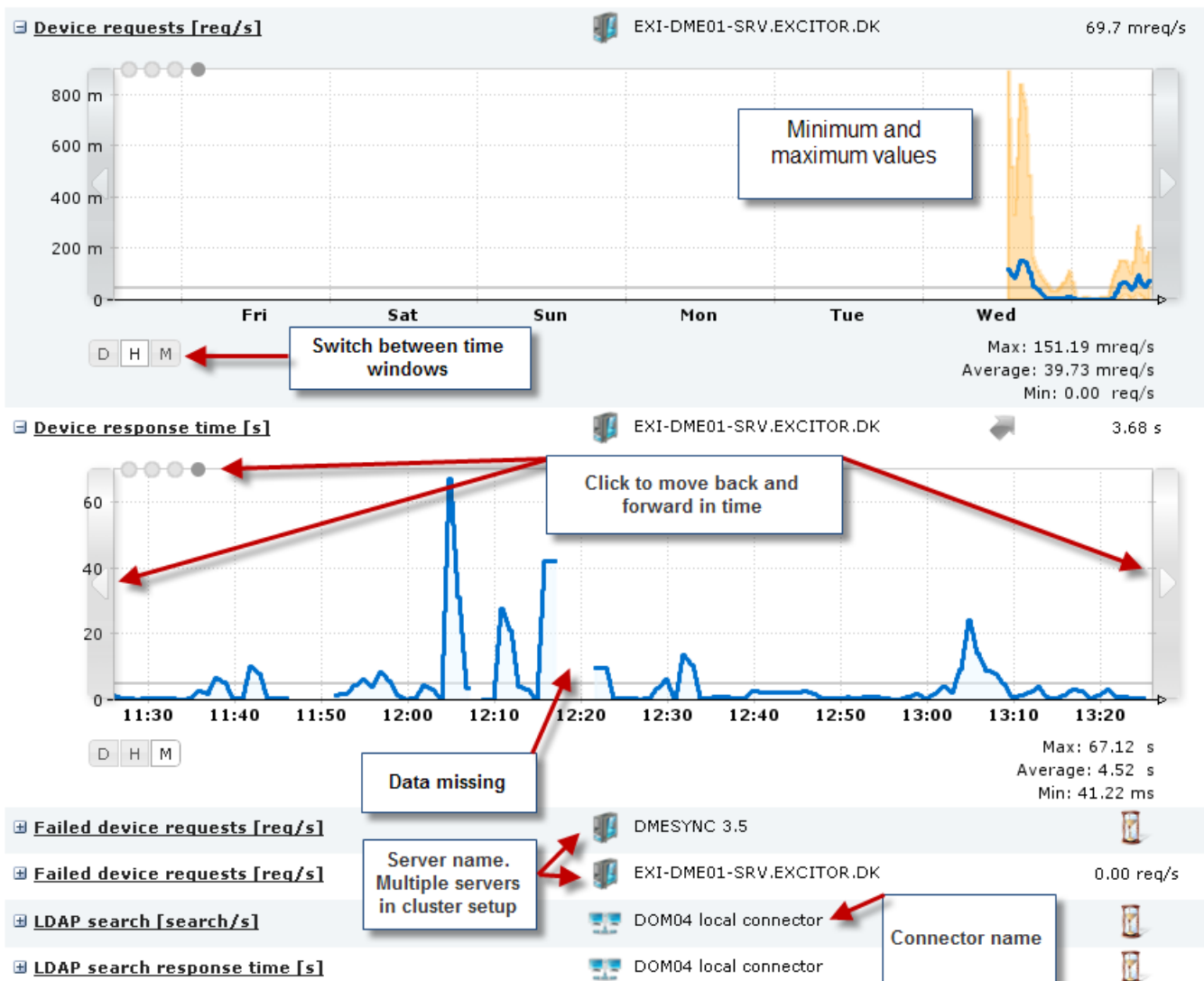
❖ Avg 4h

This column shows the average over the last 4 hours. An  icon in this column means that the average cannot be calculated due to lack of data.

When you click the name of a statistic, an interactive graph is shown below the name. All statistics are created using the RRD4j tool, which makes use of round-robin databases for dynamic collection and display of data. For a technical explanation of the principles behind the collection and display of data, please see the following tutorial: **RRD4j Tutorial** <http://code.google.com/p/rrd4j/wiki/Tutorial>.

Each trend graph contains three *trend blocks*: **Days**, **Hours**, and **Minutes**. You can switch between them by clicking the **D**, **H**, or **M** button at the bottom left of the graph. Each trend block contains four *windows* showing data for a span of time. The **Days** trend block contains a total time span of 2 years, split into 4 windows of 6 months each. The **Hours** trend block contains a total time span of 4 weeks, split into 4 windows of 1 week each. The **Minutes** trend block, which is the default view, contains a total time span of 8 hours, split into 4 windows of 2 hours each.

Clicking the grey, vertical bars to the left and right of the graph moves the window back or forward, respectively. You can also click one of the grey dots at the top left of the graph to select one of the four windows. Note that when you move between windows, *the Y axis scale may change*. When the latest window is displayed (dot no. four is selected), the graph will be updated automatically. There is no need to press **Refresh** to update the graph. In fact, if you refresh the browser page, all open graphs will close. Below the graph are the statistics for the window shown in the graph.



DME collects data every minute (this is called the *sample time*). This is important when you want to understand the numbers. For instance, the graph may show that 4.3 database connections were open at a given point - such a number only makes sense when you remember that the number of connections was measured once every minute, and an average calculated. The graph is drawn using linear interpolation - a straight line is drawn between each measuring point (minute) to create the graph (instead of drawing only vertical and horizontal lines, for instance, or only drawing lines between every other measuring point).

The calculated average for the current view is shown as a thin, grey line across the graph. If more than 50% of the data in the view is invalid (typically if there are no data for a period of time), no average is calculated. This accounts for any "holes" in the graph.

Below the graph are the **Max**, **Average**, and **Min** values of the current window. The numbers are reflected directly in the graph - the **Max/Min** values are the highest and lowest points of the blue line, and the **Average** equals the grey line. In the **Hours** window, the peak and low values of individual samples are shown with an orange color, and the blue line shows the average of 60 sample values.

In the following, each statistic is described briefly.

Authentications [auth/s]

Shows the number of authentications per second performed by the current connector.

Authentications response time [s]

The time it takes to perform one authentication operation.

Device web threads usage [%]

Shows the percentage of the threads allocated to the Tomcat web server that are actually in use. The maximum number of threads is set up per connector by altering the `MaxThreads` value in the `server.xml` file (located in

`/var/dme/instances/base/deploy/jboss-web.deploy`).

Collaboration items [items/s]

A collaboration item can be one e-mail, one contact, one calendar entry etc. The graph shows how many items are read out per second from the collaboration system.

Collaboration item response time [s]

The time it has taken to read out one collaboration item (one e-mail, one contact, one calendar entry etc.) (total number of items in sample/total time in sample).

Tasks [s]

How many *tasks* are performed by the current connector per second. A task is a connector operation such as a settings sync., an e-mail sync., an connector info request from the server, etc.

Task response time [task/s]

How many seconds does it take for one task (e.g. a sync operation) to be performed by the connector.

Thread usage [%]

A thread is a process on the connector. The maximum number of threads is set up in the **Main** panel section of the connector setup page. The graphs shows the percentage of the threads allocated to the connector that are actually in use.

Database connections usage [%]

Shows the percentage of the available database connections that are actually in use by the DME server. The maximum (and minimum) number of database connections can be set up in the `dmebaseDB-ds.xml` file, which is located in `/var/dme/instances/base/deploy.`

Device network data [b/s]

How many bits per second are moved between device and connector. The amount of data corresponds to the values shown in the **Data received** and **Data sent** entries of the **Network** category in the **Log** tab.

Device requests [req/s]

How many requests were sent from devices per second. A request is any communication from the server - sync, time zone request etc.

Device response time [s]

How many seconds it takes to respond to one device request (total number of requests in sample/total time in sample).

Failed device requests [req/s]

How many requests sent from devices have failed - per second. A request is any communication from the server - sync, time zone request etc. A request can fail due to server timeout or lack of authorization.

Rejected (please retry) device requests [req/s]

How many requests sent from devices were rejected by the server - per second. A request is any communication from the server - sync, time zone request etc. A request can be rejected due to a server timeout or because the same request had already been submitted (e.g. a manual sync sent just after a scheduled sync).

LDAP search [search/s]

The number of LDAP searches performed by the current connector per second. An LDAP search comprises almost any communication with the LDAP, including user lookups.

LDAP search response time [s]

The time it takes to perform one LDAP search by the current connector per second. An LDAP search comprises almost any communication with the LDAP, including user lookups.

Network push [push/s]

How many push notifications have been sent per second from the DME server through the network push connection to DME client devices.

iPhone push [push/s]

How many push notifications have been sent per second from the DME server through the Apple Push Notification Service to iOS devices.

Connected network push [devices]

How many devices have been connected to the server over the network push connection, and when.

Network push connection lifetime [min]

For how long time have the devices been connected over the network push port. A high number is sign of a healthy system. Some firewalls disconnect the network push connection after a number of minutes. To steer around this, you can set the maximum (and minimum) "keep-alive time" in the **Client** panel section of the **Server configuration** page.

Memory used [B]

This is the JVM memory heap used. In the **System properties** tab of this page you can see the current value for the server. This graph shows memory usage over time. A memory usage graph exists for both server and connectors.

Notification scan tasks [task/s]

How many notification scans are performed per second.

Notification scan tasks response time [s]

How long time does it take to perform one scan (total number of notifications in sample/total time in sample).

Skipped notification scan tasks [task/s]

The number of notification scan tasks that were skipped per second. Notification scans can be skipped (postponed) for a number of reasons - if the scanned resource is disabled; if the device is roaming; if a pending flag has been set for the client.

Send SMS [SMS/s]

How many SMS text messages are sent by the server per second.

Notifications

Clicking the **Notifications** page menu entry opens the **Data notification** panel. This panel is a list of grouped settings, which makes you able to configure the DME Notification Framework. The notification framework is enabled or disabled in the field **Status** in the Process panel section (see **Process** on page 214).

Please note that special considerations apply to Apple iOS devices. See **Notifications on iOS devices** on page 221 for more information.

The notification framework

The notification framework is the system by which DME scans the collaboration system and other systems for changes and lets the clients (devices) know that changes have occurred. This scan takes place periodically, and the frequency of the scan can be adjusted for each DME resource. DME operates with the following resources:

- ❖ **E-mail** (including e-mail folders)
- ❖ **Calendar**
- ❖ **Contact**
- ❖ **To-do**
- ❖ **Notes (Journals)**
- ❖ **System information**
- ❖ **Files**
- ❖ **RSS**

Each of these resources is described later.

The flags

The frequency, priority, and other settings for the scanning of a certain resource is called a scan *scheme*. For each scheme, and for each device, DME keeps track of when the system needs to scan for changes again. You can see the time of the next scan in the **Schedule** section of the individual devices in the **Devices** tab (see Schedule).

When a scan is run, a change may be found (as described in **Scanning** on page 205).

- ❖ *If no change is found:*

The time of the next scan is calculated based on the scan scheme, and nothing more is done.

❖ *If a change is found:*

A flag is raised for the device in question. The device now has a *pending notification*, which can be seen in the **Pending** panel section for all devices (see **Pending** on page 220), or in the **Pending** subtab of the **Schedule** section of the individual devices (see **Schedule**). The flag shows the type of the resource for which the scan was made, for instance a **Sync. e-mail** notification.

Furthermore, the scan for the scheme in question requires minimum resources, as it only checks for the presence of the Pending flag and moves the time of the next scan into the future.

The *Pending* flag will be cleared in the following cases:

- ❖ When the device performs a synchronization of the same type as the pending flag (as mentioned above), either due to a scheduled sync., a push, or a manual sync. This is the regular way to clear a flag.
- ❖ When the flag's time to live (TTL) expires. In the field **Process cache TTL** in the **Process** panel section, you can set a maximum time to live for these pending flags. This is to clean up the list of pending notifications if the device for instance is turned off. If the same device keeps producing notifications which are not cleared by a synchronization, but only because the TTL expires, the system can be configured to not scan devices after a certain number of such notifications. When this happens, the pending flag becomes a *permanent pending flag*, and no more notifications are set for the device until the flag is cleared by a sync. See **Process** on page 214.
- ❖ If the synchronization scheme is reset. This is done by selecting the action **Reset schedule(s)** in the **Schedule** panel section, either in the **Server** tab (for all devices) or when editing a group (for a group of devices). See **Schedule** on page 204. See also below for reasons to reset the scheme.

After the flag has been cleared, the time of the next scan is calculated from the scan scheme, and the process starts over.

Suspension of notifications

The DME server may stop sending notifications for specific devices in the following events:

- ❖ If the device is roaming, and the setting **Notification scan when roaming** is set to **Disabled**.
- ❖ If the particular resource is disabled in the settings for the device. For instance: If a general scan scheme has been set up for **Files**, but the synchronization of files is disabled for the device, DME will scan for that resource much less frequently.
- ❖ If the maximum number of notifications has been reached (see **Notification** on page 206).

Note that the user will still be scanned, but no notifications will be sent to his or her device.

Error handling

Sometimes, an error may occur during scanning. This can for instance happen if the DME database cannot be reached, or the collaboration system is being restarted, or if DME cannot access a user's mailbox. DME distinguishes between two types of errors:

1. *Login errors.* This is when DME cannot log in to the collaboration system for some reason. In this case, the scan is suspended for 30 minutes. If the error arose because a user with credentials stored on the DME database could not log in, the credentials of the user in question are furthermore erased from the database. This is in order to prevent the scanner from accidentally shutting the user out of the collaboration system and, by extension, the network - which might happen in some types of setup if the scanner tries too many times without success. The scanner will automatically restart when the user synchronizes his or her device.
2. *Other errors.* If any of the subsystems are down, DME will attempt to scan again after 2 minutes, then after 4 minutes, then after 6 minutes, and finally DME will keep retrying the scan every 1 hour.

If an error condition has occurred, and you resolve the error, you do not have to wait for the scanner to discover this after perhaps a full hour. Instead you can select the action **Reset schedule(s)** in the **Schedule** panel section to force DME to restart the scanner immediately. The time of the next scan for the affected resources and devices is then recalculated, and the timer is started again. Note that this action is available at all levels (default in the **Server** tab and for groups and individual devices in the **Devices** tab).

Schedule

In the **Schedule** section of the **Data notification** panel you can define the default *schedule* for all devices. If you need to specify a different schedule for an individual device or a group of devices, you can do so in the **Devices** tab.

The notification schedule includes different types of information:

- ❖ The *resource* to which it applies (see **Scanning** on page 205).
- ❖ The *method* by which the devices are notified of changes (see **Notification** on page 206).
- ❖ The *scheme* of the notification cycle (when the scan is run - see **Frequency** on page 206 and **Setting the scheme** on page 209).

The schedules defined create scan jobs, which are fed into a scanning queue. This queue can be seen in the **Clients** section (see **Clients** on page 212).

Scanning

Scanning is the process where DME checks to see if a change has occurred in the collaboration system or in DME, affecting the device being processed. If a change has occurred in the collaboration system, DME will notify the device about the change as a push (if enabled), and raise a "flag" that a change has occurred. This flag is detected if the device is pushed or polls for changes, and removed when the synchronization has taken place. You can monitor the scanning process in the sections **Clients** on page 212, **Process** on page 214, **History**, and **Pending** on page 220. If the user initiates a manual synchronization, a full scan is always performed.

A change may occur in several different areas, called *resources*:

- ❖ **E-mail**: Has a new e-mail arrived in the user's mailbox, or has a change in the e-mail folder structure occurred? Has an out-of-office rule been created, changed, enabled, or disabled?
- ❖ **System information**: Has a change been made on the DME server, which affects the device? This could be a change in a setting, an application block, or a Mark for Installation.
- ❖ **Calendar**: Has a meeting been created, deleted, accepted, declined, or updated?
- ❖ **Contact**: Has a contact been created, deleted, or updated?
- ❖ **To-do**: Has a to-do been created, deleted, or updated?
- ❖ **Files**: (*requires special license*) Has any file sync. rule detected that one or more files should be synchronized?
- ❖ **Notes**: (*Domino only*) Has a notebook or a note (also known as a *journal*) been created, deleted, or updated?
- ❖ **RSS**: (*requires special license*) Has an RSS feed been created, or have new articles appeared in an existing feed?

One or more scanning schemes can be set up for each resource individually.

In order to know if a change has occurred for any of the resources except **System information**, **Files**, and **RSS**, DME scans the mailbox of the user who holds the device. The mailbox scan can take place in one of two ways:

1. **DME_Server** technical user scan: A technical user, usually called **DME_Server**, has access to all mailboxes. The mailboxes are then scanned for changes through this user. The technical user is specified in the **Collaboration** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Collaboration** on page 178).
2. Scan using individual users: The credentials of each user are used for scanning the mailbox of the user in question. The advantage of this is that no single user (the technical user) has access to all mailboxes. However, the credentials of each user must be stored in the DME database (heavily encrypted). See also the description of the **Store user password** field in the **Authentication** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Authentication** on page 174).

The choice of mailbox scan method will depend on company policies. See collaboration system integration documentation for information about how to set up Domino or Exchange to match the selected choice.

If a change has occurred, a notification may be sent to the device - depending on the schedule setup (see **Notification** on page 206).

Frequency

For the **Calendar** and **To-do** resources, a distinction is made between a *fast scan* and a *full scan*. As the name implies, the fast scan is a quick way to see if any change has occurred in the immediate future. The full scan is a more thorough, but also more time consuming process.

For **Calendar** and **To-do** resources, a synchronization is scheduled if:

- ❖ **Fast scan:** A calendar entry for today or tomorrow is changed.
- ❖ **Full scan:** Any calendar entry is changed within the entire span of time defined in the client settings (the *synchronization window*).

For all other resources, there is no difference between fast and full scans.

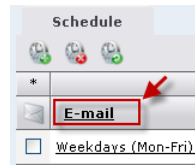
The frequency setting does not apply to schedules that are based on Exchange subscriptions. Every 45 minutes a process is run to verify and clean out unused subscriptions.

Notification

For each resource, you can specify different notification options.

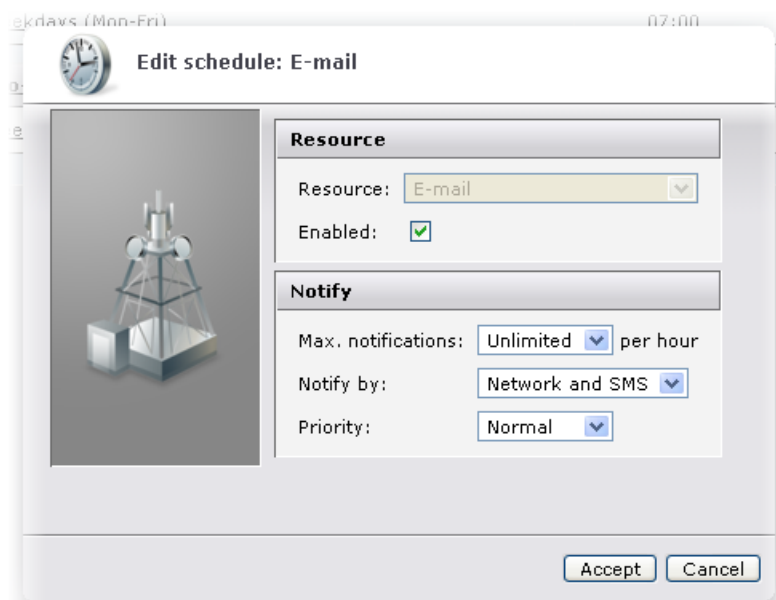
➤ Setting notification options

1. In the **Schedule** section of the **Notifications** panel, click the resource whose options you wish to change, for instance **E-mail**:



or

If the resource is not shown, click the **New schedule** icon  to create the resource in the list, and then click the resource link. The pop-up window **Edit schedule: E-mail** (depending on the resource you selected) is shown.



While you are editing the schedule, the scheduled resource is disabled (not used by the scanner), and the text "[disabled]" is added to the resource heading, for instance **E-mail [disabled]**.

2. If you select the check box **Enabled**, notifications for the resource in question are enabled.

If notification is disabled, the affected client(s) will not receive any notification of changes within the resource in question. Note that notification can be enabled or disabled at all levels (system, group, and device).

3. In the drop-down list **Max. notifications**, select the maximum number of notifications you want to send to the devices per hour: **3**, **5**, **10**, or **Unlimited**.

The number of notifications per hours is calculated as a floating time window. For example: You have chosen to send a maximum

of 3 notifications per hour. Say a user receives one new e-mail every 10 minutes. DME will then send a notification to the client in question according to the following table:

Time	DME server action
10:00	"New mail" notification sent to user.
10:10	"New mail" notification sent to user.
10:20	"New mail" notification sent to user.
10:30 - 11:19	No action.
11:20	"New mail" notification sent to user, telling that 6 new mails have arrived (one every ten minutes since 10:20).

This way you can save SMS traffic costs. Note that if you use network push (see below), you can safely set the value to **Unlimited**.

1. In the drop-down list **Notify by** you can choose the mechanism to be used by DME when notifying the device about changes. You can choose between the following options:
 - ❖ **Only Network:** Notification is only sent as network push, that is by IP over the HTTP or HTTPS protocol.
 - ❖ **Network and SMS:** AdaptivePush™ notification - a network push as above is first attempted, and if this is not possible for any reason, an SMS is sent to the device instead. A network push may be impossible due to misconfiguration, if the device is off, or if the device does not have network access. Note that SMS push may be disabled for individual users - see the setting **Enable SMS fallback** in **Adaptive Push settings** on page 339.

For more information about adaptive push over the network, see **Appendix F: AdaptivePush™** on page 388.

2. In the drop-down list **Priority** you can set the default scan priority. The selected priority (**High** - **Normal** - **Low**) instructs the server how to rank mailbox scan requests on the server. These requests can be seen in the **Clients** section of the **Notification** panel - see **Clients** on page 212.
3. Click **Accept** to save the changes to the notification schedule.

Setting the scheme

When you open the **Schedule** section of the **Notifications** panel, an overview of the scan cycle scheme for each listed resource is shown:

Data notification

Schedule

Schedule

*	Day	Start	Stop	Frequency	Full scan
E-mail					
☐	Saturday	10:00	19:00	60 min	Every 12. hour
☐	Sunday	10:00	22:00	60 min	Every 12. hour
☐	Weekdays (Mon-Fri)	07:00	21:00	5 min	Every 4. hour
System information					
☐	Weekdays (Mon-Fri)	07:00	19:00	15 min	Every 12. hour
Calendar					
☐	Sunday	15:00	19:00	60 min	Every 7. hour
☐	Weekdays (Mon-Fri)	07:00	21:00	5 min	Every 4. hour
Contact					
☐	Weekdays (Mon-Fri)	07:00	19:00	20 min	Every 1. hour
To-do					
☐	Weekdays (Mon-Fri)	07:00	19:00	90 min	Every 12. hour
Files					
☐	Weekdays (Mon-Fri)	07:00	19:00	120 min	Every 12. hour

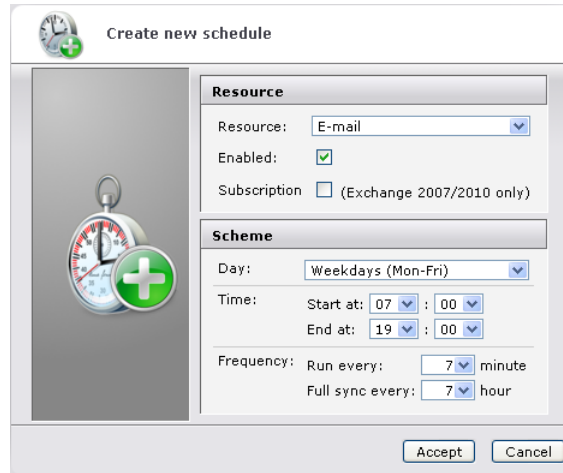
The overview shows the name of the resource and the scan cycle(s), or *scheme(s)*, defined for the resource in question. The schemes are shown with the day or days and time frames within which the scans take place, the frequency of fast scans, and the frequency of full scans.

If the scheme name is followed by the text **(subscription)**, the current scheme is an Exchange push subscription. For more information, see below.

➤ Setting and editing a notification scheme

1. Click the **New schedule** icon .

The **Create new schedule** dialog is shown:



2. In the **Resource** drop-down list, select the resource for which you want to create a new notification schedule. The resources are described in the section **Scanning** on page 205.
3. The **Enabled** field allows you to disable the scanning scheme so that it is not included by the scanner.
4. **Subscription:** If your collaboration system is Exchange 2007 or 2010, you can choose to subscribe to Exchange notification events for e-mail, contacts, calendar, and to-do schedules. DME will then listen to events from the Exchange server, and create a notification to the client if applicable. A notification is always created in case of *new* e-mail events; a notification is created in case of *update*, *delete*, or *new* calendar/to-do events if the calendar item is within the client's calendar/to-do synchronization window; and a notification is created in case of *update*, *delete*, or *new* contact events.

Note that as of DME 3.6 SP2 the clients will receive a notification for every event (every time they receive a new e-mail for instance). See the description of the **Process cache TTL** field in **Process** on page 214.

If you choose to base a schedule on Exchange subscriptions, the **Frequency** fields below change to 45 minutes and 24 hours, respectively. You cannot change these values. Furthermore, the text **(subscription)** is added to the name of the scheme in the **Schedule** section, and the **Frequency** and **Full scan** columns display a dash (-). The **History** panel section shows information about notifications created from subscriptions - see History.

When a subscription schedule is created, a subscription URL is sent to Exchange. This subscription URL is set on the DME Exchange connector. See Functions.

DME subscribes on a per-user/per-resource (e-mail, calendar, contact, to do) basis. If you define a schedule from 07:00 to 19:00,

DME will send **X** subscription requests times the number of resources, where **X** is the number of users at 7:00, and will then send an unsubscribe command at 19:00. This could potentially amount to a large amount of notifications. If you define a 00:00 to 23:59 schedule, then only 1 subscription per user per resource type is sent.

Please note that when you enable Exchange subscriptions, you cannot "turn it off" again. If you later decide not to use Exchange subscriptions, you must delete the schedule where subscriptions are enabled, and then create a new schedule similar to the current one, but without enabling subscriptions.

5. In the **Day** drop-down list, select the day in the week on which the scan should be run. You can choose among the following options:
 - ❖ **Monday** through **Sunday**
 - ❖ **Weekdays (Mon-Fri)**
 - ❖ **Every day**
6. **Time:** In the fields **Start at** and **End at**, specify the time of day within which the notification scan cycle should be run. For instance, if you choose 07:00 to 17:00 on weekdays, the devices to which the schedule applies will not receive notification of changes within the current resource outside regular working hours. The user of the device may, however, choose to do a manual synchronization at any time to check for new items. Furthermore, you may choose to define an additional schedule with less frequent scans to cover off hours.
7. **Frequency:** In the field **Run every**, you define the frequency of fast scans for the resource in question (see **Frequency** on page 206). Specify the frequency in minutes. Note that you cannot set a frequency for Exchange subscription schemes.
 The amount of minutes specified in this field should be divisible by the amount specified in the **Full sync every** field below, converted to minutes. DME schedules the scans to occur every number of minutes specified here, with the scan occurring on the hour specified in **Full sync every** being a full scan. If the full sync does not occur on the same minute as the regular scan, the schedule will in effect be reset every time a full scan is performed. This does not impact performance much, but it is best to specify the value in the **Full sync every** field as a multiple of the number of minutes in **Run every**. Values such as 2, 3, 5, 10, 15, 20, and 30 will always work, because all these numbers can be divided into 60 (one hour).
8. In the field **Full sync every**, you define the frequency of full scans for the resource in question (see **Frequency** on page 206). Specify

the frequency in hours. Note that the full scan applies to the **Calendar** and **To-do** resources only.

9. Click **Accept** to add the notification schedule to the resource in question.

Note that the schedule only applies to automatic synchronization (push and pull). In case of manual synchronization from the client, and in case the client has created new items (such as an e-mail), a full synchronization is always performed.

To edit an existing scheme, click the scheme. The dialog is the same as when creating a new scheme, except that you cannot change the resource type.

To delete a scheme, select the scheme or schemes to be deleted by clicking the check box next to the scheme name. Then click the

Delete schedule icon , and confirm the deletion.

To reset a scheme, mark the scheme or schemes to be reset by clicking the check box next to the scheme name. Then click the **Reset**

schedules icon , and confirm. See **Notifications** on page 202 for reasons to do this.

Clients

In the **Clients** section of the **Data notification** panel you can view information about the scanning to be performed for clients. A *client* is a term used for the connection between one user and one device.

The list shows a maximum of 50 scans. The text **<more>** at the bottom of the list simply indicates that more scans are pending (the list could contain thousands of entries).

Clients							
	Device	User	Function	Priority	Next	Last	Notification hist.
1.	356211004300037	CAN	Email	Medium	28.Nov-14:53	28.Nov-14:52	28.Nov-14:14
run next candidates							
2.	353261014679584	PEG	Todo	High	26.Apr-02:00	20.Nov-11:50	20.Nov-11:46
3.	353261014679584	PEG	Contacts	High	26.Apr-02:00	20.Nov-11:50	-
4.	353261014679584	PEG	Calendar	High	26.Apr-02:00	20.Nov-11:49	20.Nov-11:04
5.	353261014679584	PEG	System information	High	26.Apr-02:00	20.Nov-11:49	20.Nov-11:49
6.	352255013540541	BBR	Email	Medium	28.Nov-14:53	28.Nov-14:52	28.Nov-14:50
7.	351892010477896	SP	Email	Medium	28.Nov-14:53	28.Nov-14:52	28.Nov-14:51

This section shows an overview of which users' mailboxes are to be scanned next according to the current notification schedule. This is called the *scan queue*, and the list contains the following information:

❖ Device

The current device of the user whose mailbox (or file sync. rules or system information) is to be scanned. Click the device to see

how the device is set up. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a device link, a box with more information about the current device is shown.

❖ **User**

The user whose mailbox (etc.) is to be scanned. Click the user to see more information about the user. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a user link, a box with more information about the current user is shown.

❖ **Function**

The resource being scanned: **E-mail**, **Calendar**, **Contacts**, **To-do**, **System information**, or **File**.

❖ **Priority**

The priority here reflects the corresponding setting for the device - either **Low**, **Medium**, or **High**. See **Schedule**.

❖ **Next**

When is the next scan scheduled. Scans that are being passed to a scanning thread are shown above a thin gray line with the text *run next candidates*.

The scan time is color coded. If the timestamp is green, the time for the next scan is close to "now". If it is 1 minute behind "now", the timestamp is yellow - or if your sample time as defined in the **Process** section is more than 1 minute, it becomes yellow when the sample time has passed. If it is more than 5 minutes behind, or if the sample time is greater than 5 minutes and the sample time has passed, the timestamp is red. You can use this information to determine whether you need to adjust notification settings (see **Process** on page 214).

❖ **Last**

The date and time of the last scan.

❖ **Notification hist.**

A historic list of the last notifications sent to the device in question. The number of notifications shown in the list depends on the setting of the field **Max. notifications per hour** in the **Schedule** panel section in the **Server** tab or for individual devices (see **Schedule** on page 204). If, for example, a maximum of 5 notifications are sent per hour, the notification history list will record the time of 5 notifications. If **Unlimited** is selected, this window will not show any notification history.

❖ **(no name)**

The last column shows an e-mail icon, calendar icon, or to-do icon if the device has a pending notification. If it does, it is moved to the bottom of the scanning queue. Furthermore, a warning icon or

information icon may be shown. In this case, point the mouse to the icon to see the warning or information message.

For more information about pending notifications, see **Pending** on page 220.

The jobs scheduled for scanning are processed by *notification scanner threads*, which can be monitored in the **Process** section. See **Process** on page 214.

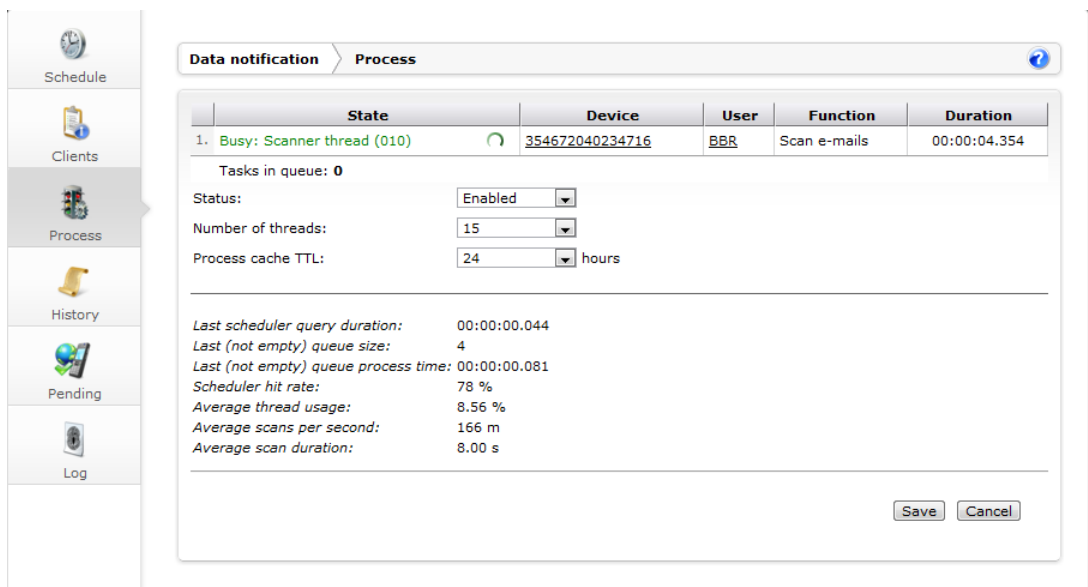
Process

In the **Process** section of the **Data notification** panel you can specify features of the way DME scans the collaboration system for changes in users' mailboxes etc. You can turn scanning on or off, and you get a live view of the scanning processes (the *scanner threads*).

Each time the notification scheduler is run (see **Notifications** on page 202), it finds out which users' mailboxes need to be scanned, and for what. For instance, it may be time to scan the calendar for 20 users. All these *scanning tasks* are placed on the queue shown in this section. Each scanner thread takes care of one scanning task. The number of tasks currently on the queue is shown at the bottom of the table after the text **Tasks in queue**.

DME makes use of a so-called a *command stack* - a list of commands to be processed when the client connects to the server. For more information about the command stack, see the next section:

Command stack priorities on page 217.



State	Device	User	Function	Duration
1. Busy: Scanner thread (010)	354672040234716	BBR	Scan e-mails	00:00:04.354

Tasks in queue: 0

Status:

Number of threads:

Process cache TTL: hours

Last scheduler query duration: 00:00:00.044
 Last (not empty) queue size: 4
 Last (not empty) queue process time: 00:00:00.081
 Scheduler hit rate: 78 %
 Average thread usage: 8.56 %
 Average scans per second: 166 m
 Average scan duration: 8.00 s

The table part shows the currently busy threads - up to the number specified in the field **Number of threads** below. If the server is currently not scanning the collaborations system, no threads are shown. If any scanning tasks are waiting to be processed (apart from the ones shown in the table), then the number of tasks in queue is displayed below the table. The number shows the difference between the total number of current scanning tasks and the the number specified in **Number of threads**.

Table columns:

❖ **State**

This column shows that a thread is active. This is also indicated by an animated thread icon: . The number in parentheses is an internal number used to identify the thread.

❖ **Device**

This column shows the device whose owner's mailbox is is being scanned. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a device link, a box will appear with more information about the current device. Click the device link to view and edit the device in the **Device** setup panel.

❖ **User**

This column shows the user name of the user whose mailbox is being scanned. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a user link, a box will appear with more information about the current user. Click the user link to view and edit the user in the **User** setup panel.

❖ **Function**

This column shows the item type that is scanned for (**E-mail**, **Calendar**, etc.).

❖ **Duration**

This column shows the duration of the scan. This duration is used as a basis for the statistics below, among other things.

Using the fields below the table, you can enable or disable scanning, tune the server's use of threads, etc. After changing values, click **Save** to commit the new settings to the DME server.

Fields:

❖ **Status**

This might be called the "notification framework main switch". This field is initially set to **Disabled** (after installing the DME server). When the server has been set up and is working as intended, change the status to **Enabled** in order to start the notification framework and enable push notification to the clients.

❖ **Number of threads**

In this field you choose the number of threads to be used for client connections. You can choose numbers in increasing intervals between 1 and 50. The higher the number, the greater the load on the server. The number of threads should be balanced with the number of users, the tightness of the notification schedules, and the capabilities of the server hardware.

❖ **Process cache TTL**

TTL means "Time To Live". This setting adjusts the length of time the **Pending** flag is allowed to exist before it is cleared by the server. The scanner will reissue a notification if the notification has not been cleared by the client within the time set by the process cache TTL. For more information, see the **Pending** on page 220 panel section.

This value only applies if you are *not* running with Exchange subscriptions (see **Setting the scheme** on page 209). If you *are* using Exchange subscriptions, a new notification will be sent to the device on every event, only limited by the Adaptive Push setting **Max. notifications if no response from a device**. This is to accommodate devices that have no background sync ability, such as Apple iOS devices, where the Notification Center will then build a complete list of received e-mail notifications rather than just one that may cover any number of received e-mails. The notifications are cleared when the device synchronizes with the server.

Finally, a set of statistics is shown in the bottom pane. You can use these statistics when tuning the server.

Statistics:

❖ **Last scheduler query duration**

How long time did it take for the scheduler to read "who" and "when" to scan from the DME database. The duration applies to the result currently shown in the window.

❖ **Last queue size**

How many tasks were added to the queue. The queue size applies to the last time a non-zero number of tasks were found.

❖ **Last queue process time**

How long time did it take to process the entire queue. The process time applies to the number of tasks in the field **Last queue size** above.

❖ **Scheduler hit rate**

How many times does a query for tasks result in new tasks. For instance: If the result is 50%, it means that half the queries to the DME database find new entries in the scanning queue.

❖ **Average thread usage**

How many of the maximum number of threads (from the field **Number of threads**) are used on average. This average is based on a round-robin principle. Thread usage is sampled frequently, and the average is calculated over one hour's worth of samplings.

❖ **Average scans per second**

How many scans are performed per second. For instance, a value of **789m** means that in one second, DME scans 789 "millitasks" - almost 0.8 task per second. This average is also based on a round-robin principle, and calculated over one hour's worth of samplings.

❖ **Average scan duration**

How long time does each scan take on average. For instance, a value of **652m** means one scan per 652 milliseconds - about 0.65 second. This average is also based on a round-robin principle, and calculated over one hour's worth of samplings.

In the trends graph **Notification scanner thread usage**, you can see some of these statistics graphically over time. See **Monitor** on page 194.

Command stack priorities

When a client connects to the server for any purpose - for instance to synchronize e-mail - DME checks the *command stack* for the device in question before executing the client request. The reason for this is to check if any other commands with a higher priority are waiting for execution on the client - for instance a device flush, which would be more important than an e-mail sync.

The following is a general description of the way DME gives priority to the various commands.

- ❖ If a client is *unknown to the server*, it is forced to send in full system info before anything else, except if a **Flush data** command has been issued to it. A device is unknown for as long as a full system information has never been received from the device.
- ❖ If a device has a *pending e-mail import* and it tries to perform an e-mail sync, the import will be performed first.
- ❖ If a device has a *pending flush data*, the device data will always be flushed.
- ❖ Actions that are force-sent from the server to the client never time out (they have no *Process cache TTL* (see **Process** and **Pending**)).
- ❖ The full command stack is always sent to the client after each successful synchronization.

The general list of priorities is as follows:

1. *Flush data* takes precedence over all other commands.
2. *Send full system info/Import system info* takes precedence over all other commands apart from **1** (Flush data).
3. *Synchronize system info* takes precedence over all other commands apart from **1** and **2**.
4. *Import x* (for instance *e-mail*) takes precedence over *Synchronize x* only.

The command stack sent from the server can include other commands, for instance *Get diagnostic log*. The list of commands sent to the client is ordered according to the above list of priorities.

One result of the command stack is that if a user synchronizes e-mail (for instance), he or she may experience that a calendar sync is performed afterwards. This is because a pending calendar notification existed, and the server makes use of the existing connection to synchronize. This saves time and resources on the client.

History

In the **History** section of the **Data notification** panel you can see a history of client connections. The list shows the time of connection, the device and user, and a description of the connection - what resource was scanned, if the scan was a full or fast scan, how long time it took, if any changes (such as new e-mails) were found, if data was taken from the pre-cache, and what the status of the scan was.

Data notification		History		
Time	Device	User	Text	
17.jun-13:50:21 143	e26c98ac23046b733f936b9e885c39fd240e4422	ALG	Resource:	Scan system info (Fast scan)
			Duration:	00:00:00.025
			Changes:	no
			Pre-cache:	Not requested
			Status:	Info: Has pending Sync. system info. notifications!
17.jun-13:50:21 141	e26c98ac23046b733f936b9e885c39fd240e4422	ALG	Resource:	Scan e-mails (Fast scan)
			Duration:	00:00:00.025
			Changes:	no
			Pre-cache:	Not requested
			Status:	Info: Has pending Sync. e-mail notifications!
17.jun-13:50:21 141	359419030182512	TOS	Resource:	Scan system info (Fast scan)
			Duration:	00:00:00.025
			Changes:	no
			Pre-cache:	Not requested
			Status:	Info: Has pending Sync. system info. notifications!
17.jun-			Resource:	Scan system info (Fast scan)
			Duration:	00:00:00.025

The status can for instance show if the scan in question was in fact carried out. A scheduled scan may be prevented from being executed for a number of reasons:

- ❖ It may have been blocked because the device in question already has pending notifications. In this case, the status message will say something like **Info: Has pending Sync E-mail notifications!**
- ❖ The scan is postponed because the device settings exclude the possibility of a sync. anyway. In this case, the status message will say something like **Info: Sync Calendar disabled - scan postponed 1 hour.**
- ❖ Or the scan engine might report an error. In this case, the error message is shown as status.

If multiple connections happened simultaneously (within the same second), they are grouped together using a thin gray bar with an arrow pointing to the simultaneous connections.

In case of Exchange subscription notifications (see **Setting the scheme** on page 209), you can use the list to see if the subscription is validated/created correctly, meaning that the connector subscription web server (see **Exchange e-mail and PIM** on page 298 > **General**) received an **OK** from Exchange EWS. This requires that an e-mail sync route has been defined for the user in question (the same applies for calendar and contacts). If e-mail sync is disabled for user **X**, or if the user hasn't yet imported calendar/contacts, then no subscription is created for this user. A notification will be sent again 4 times at an interval of a number of minutes, then delay one hour before trying again.

A maximum of 250 history lines are displayed.

Pending

In the **Pending** section of the **Data notification** panel you can see a list of pending notifications. You can sort the list by clicking the text of the column headers.

Data notification Pending				
* ☐	Function	Device	User	Created
☐	Sync. e-mail	00440214-227615-7	FF	17.jun-13:47
☐	Sync. system info.	00440214-227615-7	FF	17.jun-13:44
☐	Sync. e-mail	e26c98ac23046b733f936b9e885c39fd240e4422	ALG	17.jun-13:25
☐	Sync. e-mail	f0865088164615a6e6c5d78598caa9496b7bcad4	MAI	17.jun-13:18
☐	Sync. e-mail	35506704-651915-3	EX2K7USER24	17.jun-13:10
☐	Sync. e-mail	35187901-224086-9	PET	17.jun-12:50
☐	Sync. e-mail	D8EF291D60C032517FEA5C2EE9CDB9E6	ex030004	17.jun-12:50
☐	Command.AppBox	35296104-150508-9	EX2K10USER2	17.jun-12:16
☐	Command.AppBox	35506704-651915-3	EX2K7USER24	17.jun-08:51

DME makes an entry in this list every time it runs a scan according to the schedule and finds that a new e-mail, calendar entry or other item should be synchronized with the client at the next synchronization (see **Schedule** on page 204). The list shows the type of notification, the device and user, and the time at which the entry was created in this list. The entry information has been pushed to the device in question (if push is enabled for the device), and at the next synchronization the entry in question will be removed from the list.

When the icon in the **Function** column is shown like this , the notification was by network push (or APNS for Apple iOS devices).

When shown like this , the notification was delivered by SMS.

An item can also be removed from the list if the time limit set in the field **Process cache TTL** in the **Process** panel section (see **Process** on page 214) has expired. For instance, if a new e-mail is found for a user, but the user's device does not synchronize within the specified process cache TTL (Time To Live), the entry will be removed from the list of pending processes.

Furthermore, you can delete one or more pending notifications manually in this window. Select one or more pending notifications,

and click the action **Delete pending notification(s)**  to delete them. You may for instance want to delete a pending notification if you push a synchronization or import job to a device in error.

Log

In the **Log** section of the **Data notification** panel you see a subsection of the information shown in full in the **Log** tab. You only see information related to notifications.

For more information, see **Notification** on page 143.

Notifications on iOS devices

Due to the application design rules on the Apple iOS device platform, notifications work differently on those devices. This note explains how Apple iOS devices receive notifications.

As the DME client for Apple iOS is shut down every time you log out (due to iOS design rules), it is impossible to have it listen for push messages from DME, either using network push or SMS push while the client is not running. To overcome this problem, DME has removed the network push option for iOS devices, and makes use of the Apple APNS (Apple Push Notification Service) framework, which makes sure that every Apple iOS device in the world can be contacted via Apple APNS servers. The notifications are thus sent from the DME server, via Apple's servers, to the iOS device. The notification is presented to the user on the device, and he/she can then take some action, for instance launch DME.

As an alternative to the APNS solution, DME has implemented a form of SMS notification - the SMS received contains a URL on the form `dme://<command>`, which the user can press in order to open DME and start the action (for instance synchronize e-mail).

APNS is *required* if you want to receive push notifications on Apple iOS devices.

APNS and DME

The APNS solution works in the following way:

1. *The DME client for Apple iOS starts up and registers with the APNS that it wants to receive notifications.*

Through a system of certificates, Apple can route the notification pushes from the DME server to the DME application. This system is already in place, and no configuration is required.

It is important to note that all communication between the DME Server and the APNS is routed through a central DME server called *DME Central Services* (DME CS). This is the only way to truly separate the many different DME servers around the world that send notifications to Apple iOS devices. For more information, see **Central Services** on page 189.

2. *The DME client for Apple iOS receives a device token from the APNS, which it reports to the DME Server via DME CS.*

This is done in the form of a device property (visible in **Devices** > click Apple iOS device > **Information**).

3. *The DME Server composes the notification messages, and establishes the required SSL connections to the APNS via DME CS.*

The server uses the provided device tokens to send the notifications. APNS notifications are part of the Adaptive Push framework, and it therefore adheres to the following set of priorities:

- ❖ First DME sends the notification to the Apple iOS device as APNS (if enabled).
- ❖ Else it is sent as SMS (if enabled).

4. *If the DME client for Apple iOS is running, the client will react immediately when the APNS notification is received, and nothing is shown to the user.*

5. *If the DME client for Apple iOS is not running, the user will see a pop-up message with a text and a DME launch button.*

If the user chooses to launch the DME client, the client will perform the requested action. If the user ignores the action, then no action will be performed by the client when it is next started - this is a limitation imposed by Apple.

APNS feedback

DME has no way of telling if the notification reached the Apple iOS device. However, the APNS has a system to tell if the DME client has been removed from the device. If this is the case, a *feedback* notice is returned the DME Central Services server. All Apple feedback messages are collected on the DME CS server. The DME server sending the push notification will first check with the CS server if sending the notification is permitted (if there is no feedback message for the device in question).

If it is not permitted, the DME server will refrain from sending the push, and remove the token ID from the device in question as specified above. This will remove the device token from the Apple iOS device in question, effectively stopping the flow of notifications to that device.

What is sent to CS

This information is provided to assure you that DME security is in no way compromised by using Apple APNS over DME Central Services. In order to send an APNS message DME sends data to the Central Services server. The content of this data cannot be traced back to any particular user. The data contains the following elements:

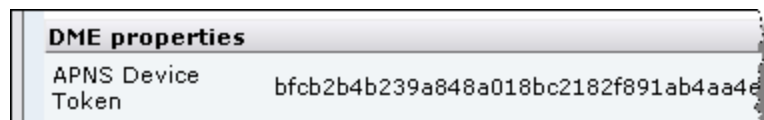
- ❖ **Device Token:** An iOS application-specific token identifying the combination of device and application - it is different for every installation of the DME application, and cannot be translated into device IDs.
- ❖ **Installation ID:** An ID identifying the DME installation the message derives from - from this we can see which customer is sending the message, but not what user. The installation ID is unique across all DME Server nodes in a DME cluster.
- ❖ **Hashed Terminal ID:** This is an MD5 hash of the device ID - we can use this to see that two messages come from the same device, but we cannot derive the real device ID from this hashed ID.
- ❖ **Originating Server ID:** An ID identifying which server in an installation that sent the message - identifies the DME Server node in the DME Cluster.
- ❖ **Message Type:** The type of notification - is this for an e-mail, contact etc.
- ❖ **Alert Body:** The message sent to the device - this is what the user sees.

Based on this information, a notification is sent to APNS. For more information about APNS, see the **Apple iOS Developer Library** <http://developer.apple.com/library/ios/#documentation/NetworkingInternet/Conceptual/RemoteNotificationsPG/ApplePushService/ApplePushService.html>.

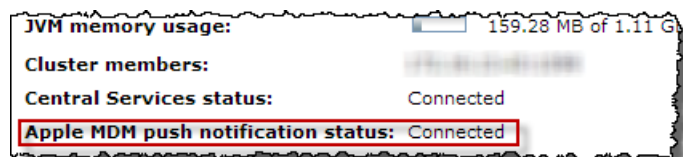
Setting up notifications on Apple iOS

To use APNS on your system, check the following:

1. Make sure that the **Third party push notification** setting is **Enabled** in the **Central Services** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Central Services** on page 189).
2. Make sure that the secure port **443** is open in the firewall from the DME server to the following website: `cs.excitor.com`. This allows the server to query the DME Central Services server.
3. Install the DME client for Apple iOS version 3.5 or later on an iOS device, and synchronize.
4. Verify that the device is shown in the **Devices** tab in DME.
5. Make sure that **Third-party push notification** is **On** in the **Preferences > Adaptive push** section of device settings (for the device, for the group, or by default). See **Settings** on page 89.
6. Synchronize the device (which cannot be jailbroken!) again. A full system information sync will provide a new property called **APNS Device Token** (visible in **Devices > click the iOS device > Information**), which is necessary for Apple Push Notifications to work:



7. In **Server > Server configuration > Monitor**, you should now be able to see that the **APN status** is **Connected**:



The Apple Push Notification Service is now up and running.

Notifications on Android devices

As of DME server 4.1, DME supports the Google Cloud Messaging (GCM) notification service. On the Android devices, GCM is supported by DME in clients 4.1 and above, and by Android 2.2 and above.

Minimum requirements for running GCM:

DME Server: At least 4.1
DME Client: At least 4.1

Android: At least 2.2
Other: A Google account

GCM (sometimes known as Google Push) is a service that lets DME send notification data from the DME server to Android devices. For GCM to work on a device, the user must have a Google account. Users typically have a Google account; on Android 4.x, a Google account is required to use the device.

GCM is a service which is run by the Android system. Thus it runs all the time, and not only while DME is running. This way, you will receive notifications about for instance new e-mails, even if DME is not running. Tapping the notification will open DME, start the synchronization process, and open the new e-mail.

If DME is running already when the GCM push arrives, DME will start a sync process immediately.

DME still supports the legacy Network Push. However, the Network Push functionality is deprecated and will be removed from DME clients and the server in the future.

Setting up GCM

No special setup is required for Google Cloud Messaging. All that is required is that the setting **Third-party push notification** is enabled in the **Central Services** setup panel. See **Central Services** on page 189.

You can verify that an Android device is connected in the following way:

1. Install the DME client for Android on an Android device, and synchronize.
2. Verify that the device is shown in the **Devices** tab in DME.
3. Make sure that **Third-party push notification** is **On** in the **Preferences > Adaptive push** section of device settings (for the device, for the group, or by default). See **Settings** on page 89.
4. Synchronize the device (which cannot be rooted!) again. A full system information sync will provide a new property called **GCM Device Token** (visible in **Devices > click the Android device > Information**), which is necessary for Google Cloud Messaging to work.

Notifications on Windows Phone devices

As of DME server 4.2, DME supports the Microsoft Push Notification Service (MPNS). On Windows Phone devices, MPNS is supported by DME in clients 4.1.1 and above.

Minimum requirements for running MPNS:

DME Server: At least 4.2
DME Client: At least 4.1.1
Windows Phone: At least 8
Other: A Windows Live account

MPNS (sometimes known as Microsoft Push) is a service that lets DME send notification data from the DME server to Windows Phone devices. For MPNS to work on a device, the user must have a Windows Live account. Users typically have a Windows Live account; it is required for downloading apps to the device.

MPNS is run by the Windows Phone operating system. Thus it runs all the time, and not only while DME is running. This way, you will receive notifications about for instance new e-mails, even if DME is not running. Tapping the notification will open DME, start the synchronization process, and open the new e-mail.

With DME client 4.2 and above, the DME tile at the Home screen will show an icon if new e-mails or meeting invitations have arrived since the user last opened DME.

If DME is running already when the MPNS push arrives, DME will start a sync process immediately.

Setting up MPNS

No special setup is required for Microsoft Push Notification Service. All that is required is that the setting **Third-party push notification** is enabled in the **Central Services** setup panel. See **Central Services** on page 189.

You can verify that a Windows Phone (WP) device is connected in the following way:

1. Install the DME client for Windows Phone on a WP device, and synchronize.
2. Verify that the device is shown in the **Devices** tab in DME.
3. Make sure that **Third-party push notification** is **On** in the **Preferences > Adaptive push** section of device settings (for the device, for the group, or by default). See **Settings** on page 89.
4. Synchronize the device again. A full system information sync will provide a new property called **MPNS Device Token** (visible in **Devices > click the WP device > Information**), which is necessary for the Microsoft Push Notification Service to work.

File browser

In this section of the DME Administration interface you can set up AppBox File Browser *remote locations*. When a remote location is defined, DME clients can access files on one or more WebDAV-enabled file servers using the AppBox File Browser. Each WebDAV-enabled server location is called a *file share*.

Files being copied or moved to or from the client device or between file shares are encrypted at all stages of the transfer by G/On encryption or HTTPS. Temporary files will be created on the DME server machine. These are also encrypted, and removed immediately after the copy or move operation has been completed (whether successfully or not).

To enable access to remote locations from AppBox File Browser, you must

1. Set up WebDAV on a Windows server.
2. Create file shares in the DME administration web interface.
3. In the G/On server, grant users permission to view the file shares through the AppBox File Browser.

These steps are described in the following.

Log messages from the AppBox File Browser can be made to appear in the **Log** tab of the DME Server. For more information, see **Logging AppBox File Browser** on page 153.

Setting up WebDAV

To make remote locations available to AppBox users, you must set up a WebDAV server. You can do this by adding WebDAV capabilities to MS Internet Information Server (IIS). Other systems, notably SharePoint, also provide WebDAV services.

To set up WebDAV services on Internet Information Server, follow the instructions for your version of the Windows server. Please note that your installation may have special requirements, and that no two installations are the same.

A guide, which can help you in the right direction, is available for partners at the **DME Resource Center**

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/find-documents>. Note that the WebDAV server is not part of the DME environment.

After correctly enabling WebDAV, you can proceed to set up the DME Remote File Browser Menu Action. For more information, see the AppBox Configuration guide, which is available at the **DME Resource Center**

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/find-documents>.

Large files

If you are planning to exchange large files using the AppBox File Browser, please be aware of the default setting for `requestLimits` in the WebDAV server setup. You can see this in the IIS Manager Configuration Editor, under

`system.webServer/security/requestFiltering`. Here you can change the maximum allowed content length from the default value of 30 million bytes (approx. 28 MB) in IIS 7 and 7.5 to a larger value in bytes.

Creating and editing file shares

In order to let users view the WebDAV-enabled file store, you must create a link between the file store and the DME AppBox. To do this, choose **File browser** in the page menu of the **Server** tab.

Any existing file shares are displayed in a table, showing the name you have given them, the path to the file server, and whether the certificate to the file server is trusted or not.

To create a new file share, see **New file share** on page 228.

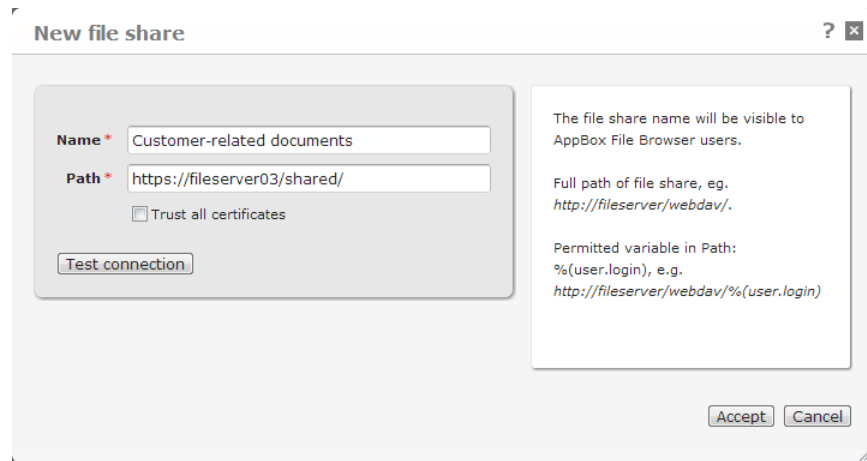
To edit an existing file share, see **Edit file share** on page 231.

To delete an existing new file share, see **Remove file share** on page 232.

New file share

 To create a new file share, click **Server > Server configuration > File browser**, and then click **New file share** in the toolbar.

A dialog such as the following is shown (in the example below, it has already been filled in).



❖ Name

This is the name of the new file share, for easy identification of the file share in the **File browser** table and later on when assigning the file share to users in G/On.

❖ Path

This is the path that publishes the contents of the WebDAV-enabled file server.

It is possible to insert a *user login name* into the path as a variable: `%(user.login)` - for instance

`https://fileserver02/users/%(user.login)/` or

`https://fileserver02/%(user.login)/documents/`

This will create a link to a personal folder on the file server, accessible as a regular location in the File Browser.

You could for instance create a file share called **My Drive**, and use a path that includes the user variable. If a user's login name is **NIF**, then that user's **My Drive** location will be

`https://fileserver02/NIF/documents/`

Please note: The file path is not case-sensitive. Also, the **My Drive** functionality does not apply any permissions to the folder. If the user folder is to be accessible to that user only, specific permissions must be set on the WebDAV server.

For more information, see **Setting up WebDAV** on page 227.

When setting up a *SharePoint* file share, please be aware of the special permission levels built into SharePoint. For instance, setting up a path to the root level of a SharePoint site requires Administrator access for all users.

❖ Trust all certificates

In this field you can choose whether to trust or not to trust self-signed certificates on the file server. This is used in connection

with self-signed certificates on secure (https) servers. For regular http servers, this option is unavailable.

If you enable this option, you will not receive any certificate errors if you run WebDAV on a secure server using a self-signed certificate. If you disable the option, the secure server connection will only work with certificates that are already trusted by the clients (for instance from VeriSign and others).

When you change the value of this option, DME will check if any other file shares exist with the same root path. For instance, if you enable the setting for `https://fileserver03/shared/`, the setting will apply to all file shares that originate from `https://fileserver03`. See **Edit file share** on page 231 for information about changing this setting.

❖ Test connection

Click this button to test the connection to the file server using credentials that you supply in the **Test connection** window. See **Test file share** on page 230.

Click **Accept** to create the new file share, or **Cancel** to discard your changes and return to the **File browser** table view.

Test file share

In the process of creating a file share, or for debugging purposes, you can choose to test the file share by clicking the **Test connection** button in the **New file share** or the **Edit file share** dialog.

When you do this, a dialog such as the following appears:

With this dialog, you can test the connection to a file share by supplying the actual credentials of a user. If the connection is successful, it means that the user in question will be able to reach the file share through AppBox File Browser.

Use this dialog in the following way:

❖ Username

Enter the user name of the user with which you want to test access to the file share. DME looks up the user name to find the user's domain, but you can enter a fully qualified domain name on the following form:

```
username@ADdomain.domain - for instance
xyz@headquarters.company.com.
```

❖ Password

Supply the domain password of the user above.

❖ Test

Click this button to perform the actual test. DME responds with the test results in the text box below. The following tests are performed:

Login test (can the user above log in to view the file share)

Which WebDAV operations are supported by the file share

Can a directory be created in the file share

Can a file be uploaded to (created in) that directory

Can a file be moved to that directory

Can a file be deleted from that directory

Can the entire directory be deleted again

When all tests are as expected, you can continue to grant or review the necessary permissions in the G/On server.

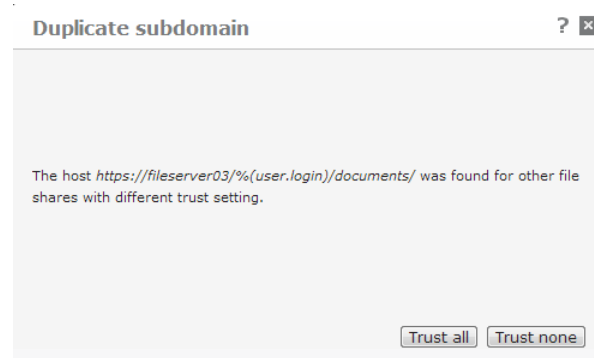
Click **Close** to close this dialog and return to the **File browser** table view.

Edit file share

 To edit an existing file share, click **Server > Server configuration > File browser**. Then double-click a file share in the list, or select a file share and click **Edit file share** in the toolbar.

A dialog similar to the **New file share** dialog is shown. You can change the fields as described for that dialog - see **New file share** on page 228.

However, if you change the setting **Trust all certificates**, DME will check if there are other file shares with the same root path (*subdomain*). For instance, if you change the setting for `https://fileserver03/shared/`, DME will apply the setting to all file shares that originate from `https://fileserver03`. A message will ask you if you want to do this:

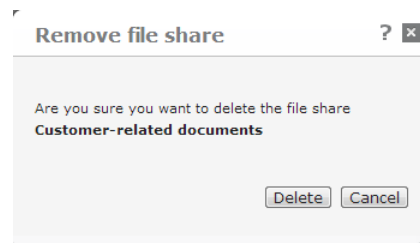


Choose **Trust all** or **Trust none** to enable or disable **Trust all certificates** for all file shares with the same subdomain.

For more information about the other fields in this dialog, see **New file share** on page 228.

Remove file share

To delete an existing new file share, click **Server > Server configuration > File browser**, and then click **Remove file share** in the toolbar.



Click **Delete** to remove the file share. The change is reflected in the DME File Browser immediately.

Enabling the file shares in AppBox

Access to the file shares is granted in the G/On server management interface. Create a menu item based on the **DME Remote File Browser** template, and enable it for the users.

When the file shares have been created in DME, they will appear as *Remote locations* in the File Browser.

In order to support https connections to remote locations, the version of G/On must be 5.6.1 or above. For more information, see the guide **AppBox Configuration** at the DME Resource Center.

Default settings

When a new device is created in DME, a set of default settings for the device is sent to the client the first time the device connects with the server, or when a new user takes over an existing device. Through a careful use of default settings and locking device settings you can enforce your company's security policies. In the following, a *setting* can be anything found in the **Default settings** setup panel - settings, files, application blocks, etc.

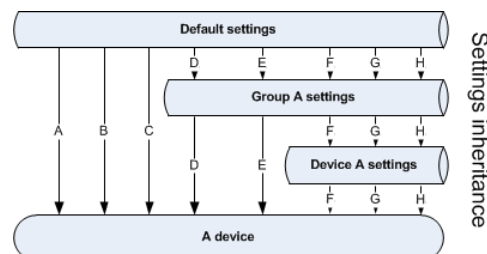
You can specify settings for a device at device at three levels:

1. Using **Server > Default settings**
2. Using **Server > Group management** > edit a group to which the device belongs
3. Using **Devices** > edit a specific device

DME uses the following order of inheritance when pushing settings etc. to a device:

- ❖ *Default settings are overwritten by group settings*
- ❖ *Group settings are overwritten by device settings*

This can be illustrated in the following way:



Settings set in **Default settings** apply to any device, unless the same setting has been changed for a group of which the device is a member, or changed for that device only. In the illustration above, the settings **A**, **B**, and **C** are applied to all devices. Devices that are member of **Group A** do not get default settings for settings **D**, **E**, **F**, **G**, and **H**, but inherit them from **Group A**. Furthermore, the specific device **A** does not inherit settings **F**, **G**, or **H** from the group, but gets the settings from the specific device.

This way you can set up a security policy by specifying strict default settings, and possibly make more relaxed settings for selected groups of devices or individual devices. For more information about how membership of different groups is handled, see **Group hierarchy and inheritance** on page 237.

When you have specified the various categories of settings in this setup panel as desired, remember to click **Save** to commit the settings to the DME server.

Settings



In this panel section, you can set and lock default values for client settings. For a description of how to work with the settings in this panel section, see **Settings** on page 89.

For a description of each of the many device settings, see **Appendix A: Device settings** on page 312.

For a description of how the changing of default settings applies to individual devices, see **Default settings** on page 233 and **Group hierarchy and inheritance** on page 237.

When you click **Save** to save the changes, a dialog shows which settings you have changed, and asks you to confirm that you wish to save the settings and send them to all affected devices at the next synchronization. A device is affected if the setting has not already been overridden by a group or individual setting, or if you lock the setting in this window.

Schedule



In this panel section you can set the default notification schedule and push e-mail options. For more information, see the **Schedule** on page 204 and **Process** on page 214 sections in the **Data notification** panel in the **Server** tab.

Files



With DME you can push files to devices or synchronize files between a server location and the device much the same way as e-mail and calendar information. This feature can be used for distributing different files to the devices of different DME users.

Files can be synchronized with devices at three levels:

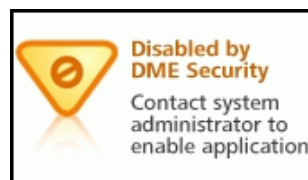
1. With *all devices*: Click **Server** > **Default settings** > **Files**
2. With a *group of devices*: Click **Server** > **Group management** > double-click a group > **Files**
3. With one *specific device*: Click **Devices** > double-click a device > **Files**

The method by which files are synchronized is the same in all three cases.

This panel section shows a list of file synchronization rules that apply to the currently edited set of devices (all devices, a group of devices, or a specific device). For more information, see **Appendix C: File synchronization** on page 362.

Applications

 This panel section contains a union of the applications and network connection types installed on all devices in the system. A network connection type is an access point to a network, controlled by the device - for instance a Bluetooth connection. You can use the list to block one or several applications or connections on any device. If an application or connection is blocked, the user will receive the following warning when he or she tries to use the application or network connection:



The **Type** column in the table indicates if the current item is an application or a network connection.

To block applications or connections, select the **Block** field for the item(s) in question, and click **Save** to save the new settings. A dialog shows the settings you have changed and asks you to confirm that you wish to save the settings and send it to the devices at the next synchronization. If you also select the field **Push to devices** in the confirmation dialog, the changes are pushed to the devices immediately. The devices will block those of the marked applications and connections that exist on the device in question.

The **Platforms** column shows the platforms on which the application on the current line is installed: **Series 60**, **UIQ**, **PocketPC**, or **SmartPhone**. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a field in the **Platforms** column, a tooltip shows which devices in your system belong to the platform in question:

Application	PocketPC	18. Dec 07/16:39
Application	SmartPhone	10. Mar 08/12:39
Application	PocketPC	10. Mar 08/14:12
Application	Series 60	10. Mar 08/14:12
Application	UIQ	10. Mar 08/14:12

It is not possible to block applications on Java devices due to restrictions in the Java operating system.

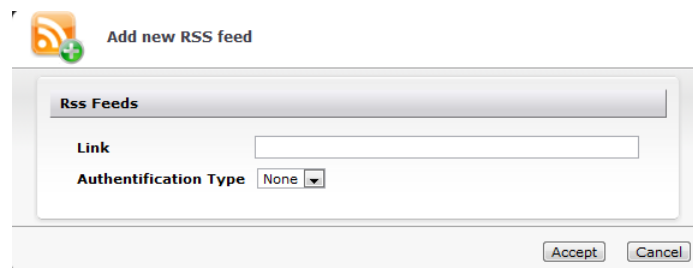
RSS feeds

In this panel section, you can define RSS feeds that are to be offered to all users.

The list shows the currently defined feeds.

➤ Adding an RSS feed

1. To add an RSS feed, click the **New RSS feed** button .



2. In the **Link** field, enter the link (URL) to the web page that provides the feed. This can be from a public site, such as a news site, or an internal site. The RSS provider will usually announce the exact name of the URL to be used on their website.
3. If the RSS provider requires the user to supply login credentials, specify the **Authentication type** in the drop-down list.

If an RSS feed cannot be read from the URL entered, DME shows a warning. You are allowed to create the feed, however.

To delete a feed, select one or more feeds in the list, and click the

Delete RSS feed(s) button . You will be asked to confirm the deletion.

The next time a user synchronizes feeds, the new feeds will appear on the user's device, and the deleted feeds will be removed.

Note that you can set up RSS feeds for a group of devices (see **View and apply settings** on page 242) or for individual devices (see **Setting up devices** on page 84).

Group management

Groups are the key to device management in DME. Every device is member of at least one group. Settings, schedules, RSS feeds, etc. (in the following simply called *settings*) should be applied to devices through their membership of groups.

A system of *group hierarchy* ensures that devices that are member of multiple groups are given the correct settings in case there is a conflict between settings in the different groups.

This group system has a number of advantages. First of all, you can be sure that all devices are given a set of settings. Secondly, it makes it easy to manage large numbers of devices because new devices are automatically assigned to groups. The groups that you create are *smart groups*, meaning that group membership is determined by the current properties of the device. If the properties change, the device may also change groups. For instance: You decide to create a group for each country where your company has offices. The country affiliation is based on the SIM card of each device. If a device in the country group **France** is given a new SIM card issued in the UK, the device will automatically switch to the **United Kingdom** country group. For more information, see **Adding groups** on page 240.

The group membership of a device is evaluated every time properties are changed for the device after a system information synchronization.

If you want to see which devices are currently member of a group, go to the **Devices** tab and click the **Advanced** button in the filter bar. Then click Group filter, select one or more groups, and click **Search**. The members of the selected group or groups are then displayed in the **Devices** tab. See **Advanced filters** on page 39.

On this page, you see a list of the groups that have been created, along with its *type* (described in the section **Adding groups** on page 240) and the number of devices in each group. The group **Default Settings** is a system group that cannot be removed.

Group hierarchy and inheritance

Groups are organized in a hierarchical structure. There are 8 *group types*, each of which has a certain *weight*, or place in the hierarchy.

The hierarchical weight of each group type is as follows:

Group type	Hierarchical weight
Default	0
Country	100
Operator	200
Platform	300
OS	400
Model	500
Directory group (LDAP/AD)	600
Manual group	600 (also)
Device	700

These weights are used for determining the *inheritance* of individual settings. This is best illustrated with an example.

Say you have created the following groups and settings (see **Adding groups** on page 240 for instructions how to do this):

Group type	Criterion	Settings
Country	France	RSS feed: Le Monde
Country	United Kingdom	RSS feed: BBC World
Platform	iPhone	Disable calendar push
OS	iPhone OS/5.1	Push Apple configuration profile A
OS	iPhone OS/6.1	Push Apple configuration profile B
Directory group	Sales	RSS feed: CRM updates

Now say that two new devices are added to the DME system: A **Nokia E72** belonging to a sales representative in the UK, and an **iPhone 4** running iOS 5.1 in France. This is the way in which DME will apply settings to these two devices:

Group	Nokia E72 (UK)	iPhone 4 (France)
Default settings	All settings	All settings
Country France		RSS feed: Le Monde
Country United Kingdom	RSS feed: BBC World	
Platform iPhone		Disable calendar push
OS iPhone OS/4.3.2		Push Apple configuration profile A
LDAP group Sales	RSS feed: CRM updates	

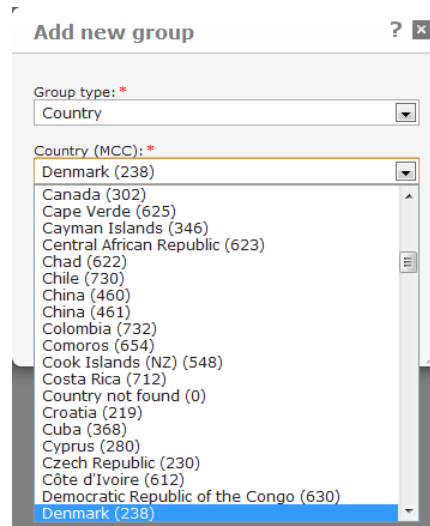
Thus, the two phones get a different set of settings because they are automatically arranged in different groups. Since the **Platform** group has greater weight than the **Default** group, the **Disable calendar push** setting will overwrite the default setting on the iPhone. You can say that settings in a group with greater hierarchical weight overwrites the same setting in a group with a lower weight.

In case of directory groups, a device can be member of two directory groups with conflicting settings. For instance, a device can be member of both a **Sales** LDAP group and a **UK** LDAP group. In this case, the hierarchical weight issue is determined by assigning a priority to each directory group in the window **Group priority**. For more information, see **Directory group priority** on page 246.

The "heaviest" weight is the device itself - making settings on an individual device overrides all other settings. To "flush" any settings made in heavier groups or for the device itself, you can choose to lock the settings at a lower (lighter) level. This means that the settings made on the lighter levels will overwrite settings on heavier levels, unless they themselves are locked. This way, you can for instance make sure that a specific setting is the same for all devices in the system. For more information about this, see **Default settings** on page 233.

Adding groups

To add device management groups in DME, click **Server > Group management > Add group**.



You can create different *types* of groups. The group type is used as criterion for selecting the devices that make up the smart group. The selection of the devices is based on the device properties which are reported to the DME server by the devices during system info synchronization. These properties can be seen for each device in the **Information** panel section of the device setup page (see **Information** on page 86).

➤ **To create a smart group:**

1. Select the group type in the **Group type** field.
2. Make a selection in the group type criterion field that is shown.
3. Optionally edit the name of the group in the **Name** field.
4. Click **Save** to create the new smart group.

You can choose among the following group types in the **Group type** field:

❖ **Country**

Devices are selected for the group by their country affiliation. The countries are identified by their MCC code (Mobile Country Code) as reported in device properties (**Current mobile country code**).

This group type could for instance be used if you want to send different RSS feeds to the devices, depending on their country.

❖ **Operator**

Devices are selected for the group by their home operator. The operators are found by first selecting a country in the **Filter country** field, and then selecting the home operator in the **MNC**

field. The operators are identified by their MNC code (Mobile Network Code) as reported in device properties (**Current mobile network code**).

This group type could for instance be used if you want to assign different RSS feeds to the devices, depending on their home operator.

❖ **Platform**

Devices are selected for the group by their platform. The list of possible platforms (for instance **Android**, **S60**, or **iPad**) is extracted from the existing devices in the system.

This group type could for instance be used if you want to assign all iPhones to a special group in order to send certain Apple profiles to them.

❖ **OS**

Devices are selected for the group by their operating system. The list of possible operating systems (for instance **SymbianOS/9.3**, **iPhone OS/4.3.1**, or **Android 2.2**) is extracted from the existing devices in the system.

This group type could for instance be used if you want to assign all Apple devices using a pre-4.0 OS to a special group in order to disable calendar notifications for those devices.

❖ **Phone model**

Devices are selected for the group by their device model. The list of possible models (for instance **Nokia E72**, **iPhone 4**, or **GT-I9000**) is extracted from the existing devices in the system.

This group type could for instance be used if you want to assign all Apple devices using a pre-4.0 OS to a special group in order to disable calendar notifications for those devices.

❖ **Directory group**

For this group type, the devices are selected based on their user's membership of directory (LDAP/Active Directory) groups. In other words, a device will be included in the group if the current user belongs to the selected directory group.

This group type could for instance be used if you want to push certain files or RSS feeds to members of the Sales organization.

❖ **Manual group**

This group type is provided as a means to group devices that are not logically related through any of the criteria above. You can assign individual devices to a manual group in the **Group** setup panel when editing a device. See **Group** on page 96.

The dialog will show different fields based on the **Group type**. When you have completed the fields, click **Save** to save the new smart group.

DME then scans the properties of all devices, and automatically assigns the devices that match the entered criteria to the new group. You can now assign settings, schedules, files, applications, licenses, RSS feeds, and possibly Apple profiles to the group of devices.

View and apply settings

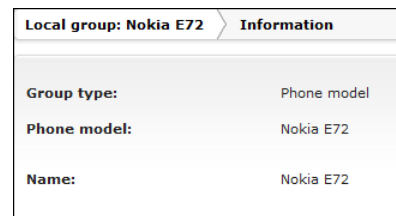
When you double-click a group name (or select a group and click **View and apply settings**), you can see and edit settings for the group in question.

For smart groups other than groups of the type **Directory group** you can specify Settings and RSS feeds. For **Directory group** groups, you can furthermore specify Schedules, Files, and Applications.

Information

In this panel section, you can see basic information about the current group.

The fields available in this section depend on the type of group, and correspond to the fields available when creating the group (described in the section **Adding groups** on page 240). You cannot change anything in this section.



Local group: Nokia E72	
Group type:	Phone model
Phone model:	Nokia E72
Name:	Nokia E72

This panel section contains the following fields:

❖ **Group type**

This field shows the type of the current group.

❖ **[Criterion]**

This field shows the criterion on which the group is created. For instance, for a group of the type **Platform**, this criterion (field name) would be called **Platform**, and the value could for instance be **S60**.

❖ **Name**

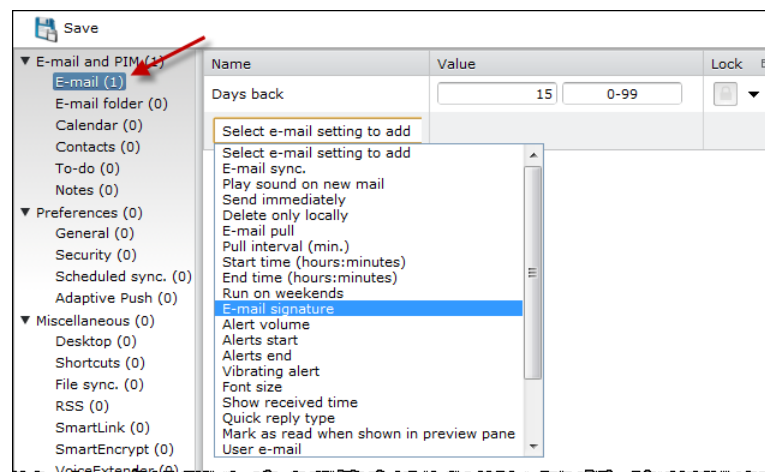
This field contains the name by which the group is known in the system (the display name).

Settings

In this panel section you can override settings that derive from default settings or from another group with a lower hierarchical weight, and apply them to the devices that are members of the current group.

To specify which settings to override, first select each one from among all available settings, set a value for the setting, and determine if the setting should be locked. When you have added all the settings you need for the group, click **Save** to apply the settings to the group.

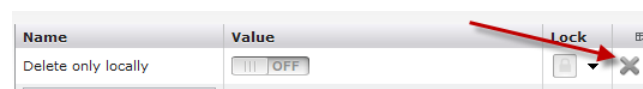
To add a setting, click the dropdown list that is shown in each group of settings, and select a setting. The example below is from the **E-mail** group of settings in the **E-mail and PIM** category.



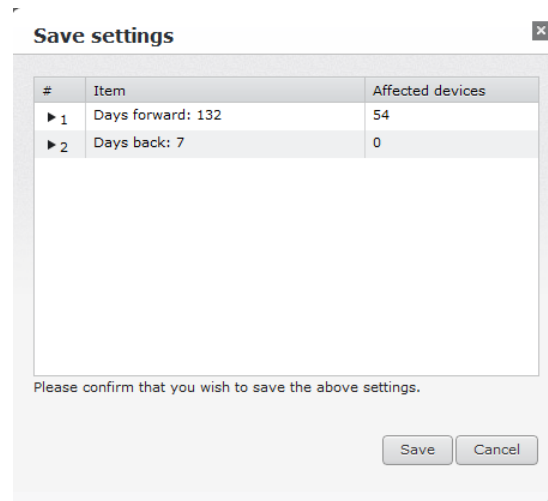
The **E-mail** group (arrow) indicates that 1 setting has been added to the group.

Now change the settings as required. You can change both the *value* and the *range* of permitted values. See **Settings** on page 89 for information about values and ranges. If you **Lock** a setting, it will be locked on all affected devices, meaning that the users cannot change the value from their phone. This is the way to enforce values in the DME system.

If you do not want to add a setting anyway, click to select it, and click the **Remove** icon:



When you are done defining the settings, click the **Save** button. DME shows a dialog such as the following:



Here you can see how many devices will be affected by the change. A device is affected by changes made to the group if:

- ❖ The device is member of the current group, *and*
- ❖ The same setting has not been set to a different value in a group with a high hierarchical weight, for instance directly for the device.

Click the small black triangle next to each setting in the confirmation window to see how DME has selected the affected devices.

Example

You change the setting **Days back** for e-mail from **5** to **15** in the group **S60**. The **S60** group has 22 members. The group is of the type **Platform**, which has a hierarchical weight of **300**.

Eight of the devices in the group **S60** are also member of a group called **SymbianOS/9.3**, which is of the type **OS** and has a hierarchical weight of **400**.

Furthermore, three of the devices in the **S60** group has an individual change of the **Days back** value made directly on the devices - corresponding to a hierarchical weight of **700**.

When you click **Save** to save the new value for **Days back** in the group **S60**, the setting will apply to 22 devices, minus the 8 in the **OS** type group, and minus the 3 devices for which individual settings had been made (assuming they are not also part of the **SymbianOS/9.3** group) - a total of **11** devices.

Schedule

If the current group is a **Directory group** or a **Manual group**, this panel section lets you override the default notification schedule settings for the current group. The functionality of this panel section corresponds to that of the **Schedule** panel section for the server. See **Schedule** on page 204.

Files

If the current group is a **Directory group** or a **Manual group**, this panel section lets you can override the default file synchronization settings for the current group. The functionality of this panel section corresponds to that of the **Files** panel section for individual devices. See **Files**.

Applications

If the current group is a **Directory group** or a **Manual group**, this panel section lets you override the default application and connection blocking for the current group. The functionality of this panel section corresponds to that of the **Applications** panel section for individual devices. See **Applications** on page 235.

RSS feeds

In this panel section you can set up one or more RSS feeds and enable the current group (the devices that are member of the group) to subscribe to them. The functionality of this panel section corresponds to that of the **RSS feeds** panel section for default settings. See **RSS feeds** on page 236.

Apple profiles



If the current group is based on Apple iOS devices, you can use this panel section to send one or more Apple iOS configuration profiles to the current group of devices. The profiles are made available in this panel section when they are uploaded through the **Provisioning > Apple iOS profiles** page (see **Apple iOS profiles** on page 120).

When you use this function to add a profile to a group of Apple iOS device, the devices will become enrolled with DME if they are not already enrolled.

To install profiles on the current group of devices, select the profiles you wish to install by switching them **ON** (or **OFF** if you want to remove them). Then click **Save**. The profiles will then be installed on the devices.

Note that the installation or removal process has a separate schedule. The server checks for changes in device profiles every 15 minutes between 08.00 and 16.00 server time. It may therefore take up to 15 minutes for the installation to start, or it will begin at 8 the following morning.

Profiles can also be added to individual devices. If a device already has a profile added, and the same profile is added through a group in this window later on, then the group setting will override the device profile, making it impossible to remove the profile from the device. If the profile is removed from the group, it will again be possible to remove the profile from the device (but it is not removed automatically).

Delete group

To delete one or more groups, highlight it or them in the **Group management** page, and click **Delete group**. You are prompted to confirm the deletion.

Deleting a group naturally does not delete the devices within the group.

Update references

To refresh the relationship between each device and its group, click **Update references**. This updates the groups created in DME based on directory groups with the actual directory groups in LDAP/AD.

DME usually does this for you when you create a directory group. However, if you create a user manually and assign a device to the user, or if a device has swapped users, then you should choose this action to make sure the directory group mapping is correct.

Directory group priority

A user can be member of more than one LDAP or AD directory group, for instance both a **Sales** and a **UK** LDAP group. However, a device can only inherit settings from one directory group - the group with the highest priority. The group priority is set in this pop-up window.

The pop-up window lists all directory groups defined in the **Group management** window. By default the list shows the group name, the LDAP/AD group upon which it is based, and the number of devices in the group. By clicking the  icon, you can also choose to see the group type (always **Directory group**), the hierarchy weight (always **600.0**), the current priority, and the date of last change.

To change group priorities, simply drag the row up or down in the table. The group with a higher priority overrides any other directory group.

Certificates

The **Certificates** section of the page menu contains the following functions:

S/MIME certificates

The **S/MIME certificates** panel is a list of grouped settings, which makes you able to configure and maintain S/MIME certificates on the server.

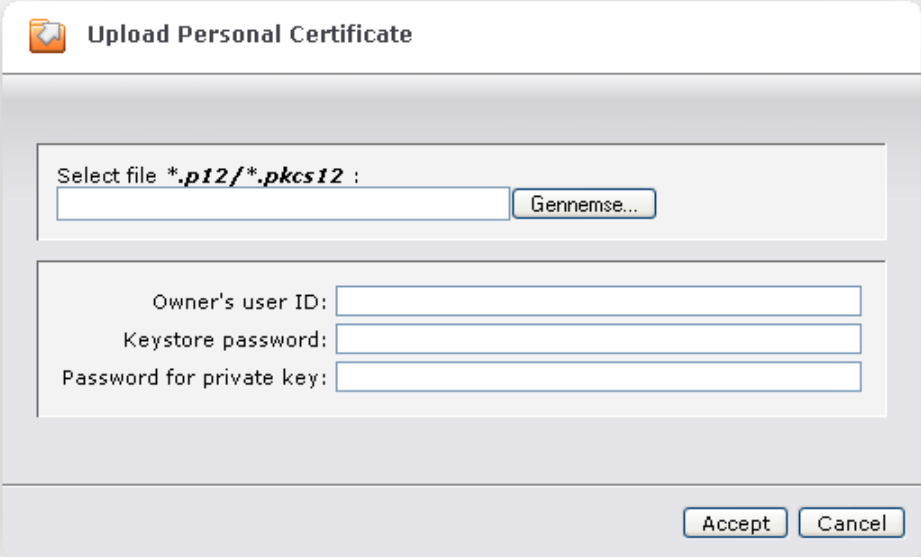
User

The instructions described here apply, whether you came to this page through the regular Web Administration Interface or through the **myDME** interface. For more information about **myDME**, see **Appendix E: myDME** on page 380.

In the **User** section of the **S/MIME** panel you can see user certificates. The certificates listed here are used by to sign outgoing S/MIME messages, to decrypt incoming encrypted S/MIME messages, and to encrypt outgoing S/MIME messages stored in your **Sent** folder. The list shows the certificate issuer, the date of expiration, and whether the certificate is valid.

This is where a user can install his or her private key through the **myDME** interface, or where the DME administrator installs the private keys on behalf of the DME users. In the following, it is assumed that the user installs the certificate himself or herself.

To install your personal certificate, click the **Upload Personal Certificate** icon  in the tab toolbar. Doing this permits you to upload the `p12` or `pkcs12` file, which you received from the trust authority (which issued the certificate - see **Appendix E: myDME** on page 380), and which contains your public and private keys. This will open the following pop-up window:



In the upload dialog, you are prompted for the location of the `p12` or `pkcs12` file. Furthermore, you must complete the following fields:

❖ **Owner's user ID**

This is your keystore identity (your DME user name (mail name) before the `@` sign). Note that in **myDME** this field is not shown, as you can only upload your own private keys.

❖ **Keystore password**

This is the password which must be supplied to open the encrypted keystore (`pkcs12`) file, and which is typically issued to you by the trust authority.

❖ **Password for private key**

This is the separate password for the private key contained in the `pkcs12` file. Only enter this if you know that it is required.

When you click **Accept**, the public and private keys of the user in question are uploaded and installed in the DME server's keystore. You can now click the user in the table to view the certificate and see the certificate chain (sometimes trust authorities issue certificates based on their trusting other authorities - this is described as a certificate chain).

To use the personal certificate in the DME client, you need to enter the private key password into the **Private key password** field in the **Security** page of the **Settings** menu of your device. If you have entered a password in the **Password for private key** field, this is what you must enter in the client. Otherwise, enter the **Keystore password**. Your client can now access your private key on the server.

External

In the **External** section of the **S/MIME certificates** panel you can view the public certificates of external persons (sometimes called "other people") - here defined as a person identified by an e-mail address which is not part of the DME system. Say that an external accountant sends a signed e-mail to the CFO of your company. The accountant's public certificate will then be extracted from his mail and stored here as the public certificate of an external person. Now every user in the DME system will be able to receive signed messages from the accountant, and DME users who have uploaded their personal certificates will be able to send signed and encrypted messages to the accountant without further setup, simply by selecting the appropriate functions in their client.

The certificates of external persons are automatically stored here, if the option **Automatically store unknown certificates** is selected in the **Collaboration** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Collaboration** on page 178).

Otherwise you can upload a public certificate by clicking the **Import Certificates** icon  in the tab toolbar. If you do this, the imported certificates are trusted if their issuing certificate authority (CA) exists in the DME certificate store (see **Root** on page 249).

Root

In the **Root** section of the **S/MIME certificates** panel you can view *root certificates*. Root certificates are the public certificates of certificate authorities that we trust. For instance, if an e-mail is received by the system with a certificate issued by trust authority **A**, DME scans the list of trusted authorities for **A**. If **A** is not found, the certificate is rejected, and the e-mail will not appear to be signed when opened by the recipient.

Just as user certificates, you can upload trusted root certificates in this section of the **S/MIME certificates** panel.

CRL

In the **CRL** section of the **S/MIME certificates** panel you can view the public CRL - *Certificate Revocation List*. Every trust authority maintains a list of certificates that are no longer valid for some reason. Such a list is called a "Certificate Revocation List" (CRL). The URL to the list is embedded in the certificate. The CRL of each trust authority known by the DME system is listed here. The CRL is checked automatically when a certificate is found in an e-mail sent to the DME system.

If the DME server succeeds in looking up the CRL, and the certificate is found in the CRL, the message is rejected.

The DME may be unable to look up the CRL for some reason (such as bad URL specified in certificate, spelling error, or connection error).

A setting called **Accept certificate even if CRL lookup fails** in the **Collaboration** section of the **Server configuration** panel specifies whether the certificate (and, by extension, the message) should be accepted even if the DME server could not reach the CRL. See **Collaboration on page 178**.

If you let the mouse pointer rest on the CRL source URL, information about the CRL issuer is displayed in a pop-up information box.

Viewing certificates

When you click a certificate, whether from the User, **External** on page 249, or **Root** on page 249 panel sections, you can view its contents. For instance, when clicking a user certificate, information similar to the following is shown in the **Common** subtab:

Common	Cert. Chain
Certificate Alias: CT	
This certificate is intended for the following purposes:	
Certificate issued to	
Common Name:	Thawte Freemail Member
Organizational Unit:	<not a part of certificate>
Organization:	<not a part of certificate>
Serial Number :	49:1c:54:5f:a3:09:75:9a:61:3d:fd:27:b9:95:6c:fe
Certificate issued by	
Common Name:	Thawte Personal Freemail Issuing CA
Organizational Unit:	<not a part of certificate>
Organization:	Thawte Consulting (Pty) Ltd.
Validity	
Valid from:	25. Jan 2007
Valid to:	25. Jan 2008
Key Algorithm:	RSA (2048 bit)
Fingerprints	
SHA-1:	87:83:89:f4:d1:dd:2a:e3:97:40:b4:0c:a2:75:4f:be:ce:b3:d2:31
MD5:	74:bb:4d:28:0f:ed:5e:c9:94:28:3e:36:b3:7a:e7:c7
Associated e-mail addresses	
♦ CT@EXCITOR.DK	

By clicking the **Cert. Chain** subtab, you can see the certification chain:

Common	Cert. Chain
Certificate Alias: CT	
	

This certification chain shows that **Thawte Personal Freemail CA** is the root issuer of the certificate (**CA** = **Certificate Authority**).

In the or **CRL** on page 250 panel section, information about the CRL issuer is displayed in a pop-up information box when the mouse pointer rests on the CRL source URL.

MDM

On the **MDM** page, you can choose if you want to use DME for Mobile Device Management (MDM) or an external MDM provider.

DME has partnered with an external MDM/MAM provider, SOTI, to integrate their advanced MDM capabilities called MobiControl into DME. This is described in detail in Appendix B - see **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350.

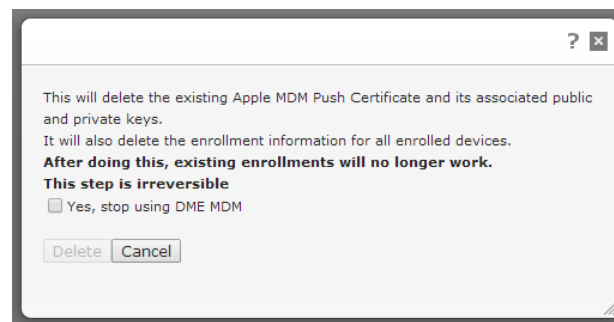
To go with standard DME MDM, leave the **Enable external MDM** switch **Off**. You then have these options for enrolling devices:

- ❖ Using OMA DM (legacy Symbian devices only; see **OMA DM installation** on page 403)
- ❖ Using Apple MDM enrollment (see MDM on Apple iOS)
- ❖ Configure devices as *Corporate device* (Android only; see **Android security settings** on page 341)

For a stronger and more coherent MDM integration, you can choose to integrate with an external MDM provider. If you do so, and the external MDM provider has been set up, you can, set the **Enable external MDM** switch to **On**.

1. If you have previously been using Apple MDM, you have uploaded an Apple MDM Certificate and its public and private keys. Switching to external MDM, the certificate and associated keys will be deleted.

Furthermore, all enrollment information for all enrolled Apple devices will be deleted, and any existing enrollment will no longer work. This is made clear by a dialog:



If you are sure that you know what you are doing, select **Yes, stop using DME MDM**, and click **Delete**. If not, click **Cancel**, and read **Appendix B**.

2. When you choose to use an external MDM provider, the DME Administration Web Interface will change:
 - ❖ The **Provisioning** tab will go away.
 - ❖ The **Device information** page will now include the **External MDM device ID** in the **Device properties** section.
 - ❖ Various MDM-related options are removed from the interface, as they are now handled by the external MDM provider:
 - Block / unblock device** function
 - Apple MDM** and **Apple profiles** subtabs on device

Android security settings

Options to **Allow Basic MDM devices** and **Lock jailbroken/rooted devices**

The **Applications** panel section for blocking apps at device, group, and default level

The Apple MDM status is not shown in **Server configuration > Monitor**

The Apple MDM enrollment page is disabled

- ❖ The option to allow devices to switch users is moved from to this window from **Server configuration > Authentication**.

When external MDM is enabled, enter the following details:

❖ **Path to external MDM**

This is the path to the server where the external MDM system is installed. The following is an example of a path:

`https://mobi.company.com`

❖ **User name**

This is the name of a user with administration permissions on the external MDM system.

❖ **Password**

This is the password for the user above.

❖ **Use REST API**

With MobiControl 13 or later, it is recommended to use the REST API, as this is the only supported interface. For more information about the MobiControl REST API, please click on the link: **External MDM REST API** below the *Use REST API* button.

❖ **Client ID and Client Secret**

The REST API uses OAuth2 authentication, and therefore requires a Client ID and a Client Secret created by the MobiControl server. The Client ID and Client Secret can be generated this way:

1. Log in to the MobiControl server
2. Launch a command prompt, and navigate to the MobiControl installation directory
3. Execute the command: `MCAdmin.exe APIClientAdd -n:DMEServer1`

❖ **Allow devices to switch users**

When an external MDM provider is selected, we recommend that devices are *allowed* to switch users. If this is not allowed, a device is currently prevented from passing to another user unless the device is completely removed from DME first. This option has been moved from **Server configuration > Authentication** to

this window to remind you to consider whether it should be allowed or not.

❖ **Allow un-enrolled devices**

If this switch is **OFF**, DME checks all devices that try to access DME to see if they are enrolled with the external MDM system, active in the system, and not blocked by the external MDM system. If a device fails either of these tests, it is denied access to DME.

If this switch is **ON**, you allow devices access to DME, even if they are not enrolled with the external MDM system. An un-enrolled device is only denied access if it has been blocked in DME. This is a more relaxed setting which allows you to include Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) in your device mix, even when integrating with an external MDM system.

❖ **Link to external MDM**

Below these options is a link to the administration interface of the external MDM provider, based on what you entered in the field **Path to external MDM**.

Click **Save** to complete the switch to or from external MDM control. For more information, see **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350.

Apple MDM

On this page you can configure the DME server as an Apple MDM server.

Apple Push Certificate

The following steps are required to create or renew an Apple Push Certificate.

1. Click '**Create new**' to create a new Apple Push Certificate, or click '**Renew**' to renew an existing certificate.
2. DME has created a CSR and downloaded it to your computer. Go to the Apple Push Certificates Portal to proceed. Afterwards upload the certificate on this page.

Renew

[Apple Push Certificates Portal](#)

Choose File

No file chosen

Upload

Delete existing certificate

Upload the Apple Push Certificate

Existing Apple Push Certificate

Topic

com.apple.mgmt.External.b6a61089-2ae6-4f07-8878-f18171ad4f4d

Expires in

349 days - on Fri, Oct 28, 2016

Apple MDM settings

These settings works for iOS only

Lock devices after

Never

Allow un-enrolled devices

ON

Save

Self-signed certificate for Apple MDM

Subject	C=DK, ST=Taastrup, L=Taastrup, O=Excitor, OU=dev, EMAILADDRESS=, CN=tos
Issuer	C=DK, ST=Taastrup, L=Taastrup, O=Excitor, OU=dev, EMAILADDRESS=, CN=tos
Valid from	Fri, Oct 16, 2015
Expires	Thu, Oct 16, 2025
Type	X.509

Create new

Furthermore, you can set options for refreshing Apple MDM system information.

Apple Push Certificate

Apple Push certificate

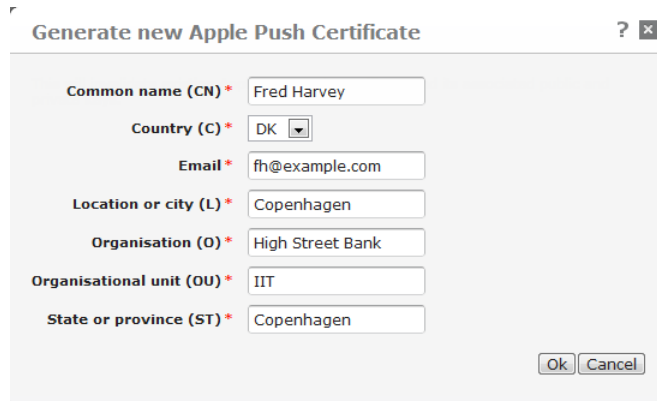
With this group of functions you can manage the Apple Push Notification Service (APNS) certificate, which is required for using DME as an Apple MDM server. DME detects if an APNS certificate has already been installed, and shows a **Create new** button or a **Renew** and **Delete existing certificate** button accordingly.

If a certificate has already been installed, details about the certificate are shown at the bottom of this section of the **Apple MDM** window. The details include the certificate **Topic** (useful when you need to find the right certificate on the Apple Push Certificates Portal) and the date by which the certificate must be renewed. If this date is approaching, a message will be written to the log (see **System** on page 147).

The steps required are outlined at the top of this section. The step highlighted with a **boldface** font is the step you need to perform next. They are as follows:

➤ **Managing APNS certificate**

1. **Create new.** If you want to *create* a new certificate for setting Apple MDM up for the first time, click the **Create new** button. You are then prompted to enter information about your organization, to be used for the generation of the Certificate Signing Request (CSR).



or

Renew. If you already have an APNS certificate on your DME server, the button will be called **Renew** instead of **Create new**. When you click it, DME immediately generates a new certificate sign request (CSR) file for you. The file is called `signedCSR` and is downloaded to your computer.

or

Delete existing certificate. If you already have an APNS certificate on your DME server, but you want to create a new one (start the process over), click **Delete existing** certificate. Confirm your choice by selecting **Yes, delete Apple Push Certificate** in the ensuing pop-up window, and click **Delete**. *Note that when you do this, the existing certificate is deleted along with the associated public and private keys. You will need to create a new certificate, and if any devices were already enrolled, they must be re-enrolled using this new certificate.*

Click **Ok**.

The DME server responds by first *deleting any existing certificate* on the server, and then downloading the CSR file to your computer. The file is called `signedCSR`.

2. Now upload the CSR file to Apple. Click the **Apple Push Certificates Portal** link listed on the page (<https://identity.apple.com/pushcert/>) in your browser.
 1. The website opens in a new page in your browser, and you are asked to sign in. You can use any valid Apple ID for this. After signing in, you reach the **Apple Push Certificates Portal** page. If you have any existing certificates, they are

listed here. If you do not have any certificates yet, the page will look like this:

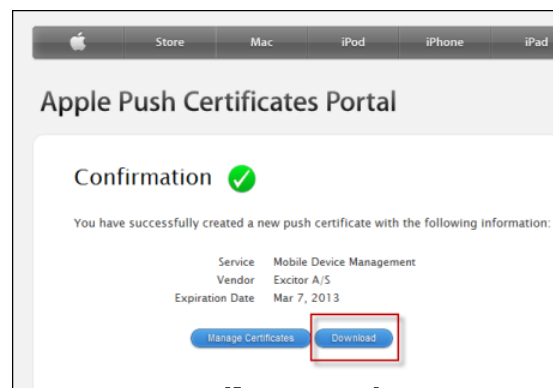


2. Click **Create a Certificate**.
3. Accept the Apple **Terms of Use**.
4. Upload the CSR file generated by DME in step 1 above:



Select the file, and click **Upload**.

5. Apple processes the CSR and generates a certificate for you. Click **Download** to retrieve the certificate.



Switch back to the DME web administration interface.

3. On the Apple MDM page, click **Choose file** in the **Upload the Apple Push Certificate** field, and browse to the certificate you received from Apple in substep 5 above.
4. Click **Upload**.

The certificate is uploaded to the server.

When you have completed the above steps, restart the DME server to refresh the certificate cache. DME detects the presence of the certificate, and automatically turns MDM APNS on. You can see the APNS connection status by selecting the **Server** tab > **Server configuration** > **Monitor** > **Server properties**. The field **Apple MDM push notification status** changes from **Disconnected** to **Connected**. See **Monitor** on page 194.

Important legal notice: Apple is very clear that a certificate can be installed on ONE server only. This means that if you for instance run a test server and a production server, you will need two separate certificates.

Firewall setup: The introduction of DME Central Services in DME Server 3.5 SP 3 made it possible to run APNS using the DME Central Services server, which in turn enabled you to close the firewall ports to the Apple APNS server.

However, the Apple MDM system requires that no proxy (the role played by the DME Central Services server) may stand between the Apple APNS server and the MDM server (DME). This makes it necessary to open your firewall to the following URIs:

`gateway.push.apple.com:2195`

`feedback.push.apple.com:2196`

Note also that if you are using an Apple iOS device over WiFi, you need to open port 5223 in order to be able to receive notifications. See the Apple knowledge base for more information.

When you are done, you are able to enroll Apple devices with the DME server. See **Enrolling devices**.

Apple MDM settings

❖ Lock devices after

With this function, you can let DME lock devices when they no longer respond to MDM messages. The devices can be locked after 24 hours, 7, 14, or 30 days, or Never. Once a device is locked the MDM enrollment will change state to Inactive. The enrollment state will change back to Enrolled if the devices starts responding to messages again, but it still needs to be unlocked manually by an administrator.

The reason you want to do this is to force users to be MDM enrolled in order to use the DME client. If an enrollment has been

removed on the device, locking the device makes sure that it is enrolled again before giving access to DME. Once an enrollment changes state to Inactive a message is also logged in the surveillance log (see **Data** on page 183).

It is important to note that the Apple protocols do not allow DME to prevent the user from removing an enrollment from their device. If the user removes the main DME MDM enrollment, the device loses its bootstrapped status, and must be enrolled again in order for any MDM feature to work.

❖ **Allow un-enrolled devices**

If this setting is On, DME will allow iOS devices that does not have an enrollment to connect to DME. Devices with an enrollment that is marked as removed on the device or an inactive enrollment will not be affected by this setting.

Click **Save configuration** to save the current configuration.

Self-signed certificate for Apple MDM

For Apple MDM enrollment to work, you need to create a special self-signed certificate (SSC). In this section of the **Apple MDM** page you can generate a certificate for this purpose. Until you do this, DME displays the message **MDM not configured**, and Apple MDM will not work.

To generate the certificate, click **Create new**. A window pops up in which you can enter information about your organization, just as when you created the Apple Push certificate (see **Apple Push Certificate** above). The **Common name (CN)** that you enter here will be used as the name of the Apple MDM profile on the users' devices.

When you click **Ok**, DME signs the certificate and stores it in the DME database.

If the self-signed certificate has already been generated, details about the certificate are shown in this section of the window.

In previous versions of DME, the self-signed certificate was auto-generated by DME and signed with **Excitor** hardcoded as common name.

License

The **License** section of the page menu contains one function, which is used for viewing and managing your DME server license: **Manage license**.

When a DME server is initially installed, a **Default license** is included. This license gives access to running a server with one connector, one user, and five devices. The **Manage license** screen will display the text **Default license**. This license can be used for testing your DME solution.

Once you are ready to start a larger-scale test, or release the DME solution in your company, a real license is required. To obtain a license, contact your DME Partner, who will supply a valid license file based on your requirements.

To install the license, click **Install new license** at the bottom of the screen. Browse to the license file you received from your DME Partner - it is called `dme_license.lic` - and click **Open**. When the license file is selected, DME will check the validity of the file, and show it in the **Install DME license** window. Then click **Install** to install the license on your server.

The next sections describe the content of the license file.

Company

The **Company** group of fields contains meta information about your license.

- ❖ **License given to**

This field contains the name of your company. This is the name by which you are known to Soliton Systems. (Default license: *****.)

- ❖ **Customer no.**

This field contains your customer number in Soliton Systems' customer system. (Default license: **n/a.**)

- ❖ **Serial no.**

This field contains the serial number of your DME installation. (Default license: **n/a.**)

- ❖ **Expires**

This field contains the date for when your license expires. (Default license: **Never.**) If there is 90 days or less till the license expiration date, a message will appear like this: 40 days left

When the license expires, you may continue to use DME for a number of days. A message will appear in the **Devices** tab saying that your license has expired. Contact your DME Partner, as DME will cease to function after some time.

Server

The **Server** group of fields contains specifics about your server license.

- ❖ **Hardware MAC address**

When ordering your license, you can choose to bind the license to one or more server hardware addresses. DME will only run on the hardware using the listed MAC addresses. This means that if you change hardware, you need to renew your license.

- ❖ **Server path**

Instead of (or in addition to) listing the hardware MAC addresses, you can bind your DME license to a specific server path. This may be easier for you, for instance if you are running a cluster with multiple servers. On the other hand, you will require separate licenses for a live system and a test system, for instance. * in this field means any server path.

- ❖ **Valid for version**

This field shows the version of DME to which your license applies. A * is a wildcard character meaning **any**. Hence, **4.*** means that the license is valid for any DME version 4, for instance 4.0 or 4.1.

- ❖ **Number of connectors**

This field shows the number of connectors you are licensed to use.

Users and devices

As of DME 4.0, two types of licenses exist: **Users** and **Devices**.

- ❖ **Number of users**

The number of active users permitted on the DME system.

- ❖ **Number of devices**

The number of active devices permitted on the DME system.

One user can have several devices, for instance an Android handset and an iPad tablet. This is reflected in the license file in the following way:

Example: Your company has purchased a license for 200 users, of which 100 users have two devices. The license file will then allow *200 users* and *300 devices*.

DME keeps a count of the active *users* on the system. You can release the license from a *device* by selecting it in the **Devices** tab and clicking **Release license** in the page menu. The device will automatically consume a license again if it is used to access the system, if a license is available.

DME helps you release licenses that are no longer required. If a user is removed from one of those groups in AD/LDAP that give access to using DME, then that user's license, and the license of all devices that belong to the user, will be released automatically when the user/group membership is refreshed. This takes place regularly - see the **Web administration** section of **Web** on page 191.

The licenses can have varying levels of access to the DME system, as described in the following section **Limits**.

Limits

This part of the **License** page contains information about the details of the license you have purchased. On the **Usage** subtab, you can see this information graphically.

- ❖ **No. devices with Mobile Device Management (MDM)**

This number specifies how many of the devices (from the **Users and devices** section) that may support Mobile Device Management (MDM). An MDM device could be a Basic MDM client (see **Appendix G: The Basic MDM client** on page 391), or it could be a device that supports MDM features such as Apple MDM enrollment etc. For instance, you could have a license for 100 users and 200 devices, with max. 100 MDM devices. This would permit 100 users with full clients and 100 anonymous users with a Basic MDM client.

- ❖ **No. users with Document viewer and editor**

This number of users are permitted to use the Document Viewer/Editor (available on the Android and iOS platforms).

- ❖ **No. users with Web AppBox applications**

This number of users are permitted to use Web AppBox (available on the Android and iOS platforms).

- ❖ **No. users with E-mail sync.**

This number of users are permitted to synchronize e-mail.

- ❖ **No. users with Contact sync.**

This number of users are permitted to synchronize contacts.

- ❖ **No. users with Calendar sync.**

This number of users are permitted to synchronize their calendar.

❖ **No. users with Todo sync.**

This number of users are permitted to synchronize to-dos.

❖ **No. users with Notes sync.**

This number of users are permitted to synchronize Domino notes.

❖ **No. users with File sync.**

This number of users are permitted to synchronize files.

❖ **No. users with RSS sync.**

This number of users are permitted to synchronize RSS feeds.

❖ **No. users with Telecom expense management**

This number of users can use the Telecom Expense Management (TEM) features (deprecated).

For all the limits above, with the exception of MDM, Document Viewer/Editor, and Web AppBox, DME will keep a count of users using those features. If the limit is exceeded, DME will deny access to the device trying to perform the sync function, and print a message in the log - for instance

Message:

The number of users using E-mail sync. (101) exceed the licensed amount of 100.

For MDM, Document Viewer/Editor, and AppBox, DME will display a message in the **Devices** tab similar to the one below, and print messages in the log when the limits are exceeded.

License warning

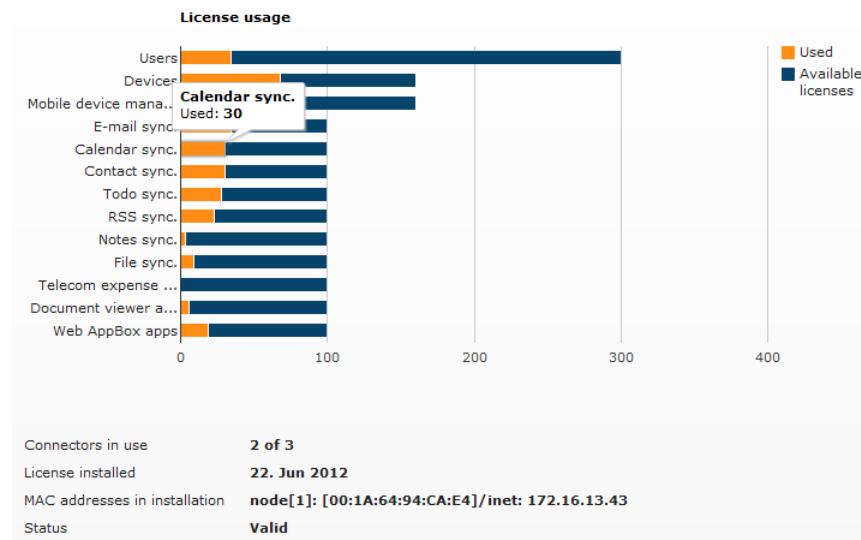
You are using 2 DME AppBox licenses, but your license only permits 1.
Please contact your DME Partner.

To prevent users from consuming licenses that they are not supposed to have, disable the feature(s) in question in **Settings** for individual devices or groups of devices.

Usage

This subtab shows a graphical overview of the number of installed licenses.

For each type of license, the total number of licenses is shown as a horizontal bar. The orange part of the bar indicates the number of licenses that have been used; the blue part shows how many are available. If you let the mouse pointer rest on any bar, a box shows the precise number of available licenses for the license type in question.



Below the graphic are some data about your installation.

❖ Connectors in use

This shows the number of connectors connected with the server.

❖ License installed

This shows the date on which the DME license was installed.

❖ MAC addresses in installation

This field shows a list of the MAC addresses of the server or servers running DME. For each *node* in the setup (possibly just one), the MAC address is shown along with the Internet address (*inet*) by which the node in question can be reached. *Node* is an expression from *clustering*, where multiple servers can share the load of running DME. The MAC address of each node in a cluster must be included in the license file (unless you are using the server path only for the license).

❖ Status

This field shows if the current license is valid or not. A license can become invalid if it is tampered with (opened in a text editor and changed), or if it is corrupted or missing from the server.

EULA

This subtab shows the End-User License Agreement (EULA) that applies to your use of DME. By using DME you accept the terms and conditions within the EULA.

The EULA can also be found as a PDF file by registered users at the

DME Resource Center

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/dl/end-user-license-agreement>.

Runtime

The functions in the **Runtime** section of the page menu are used to see the current state of SMS messages sent, connected DME clients, and system messages.

SMS commands

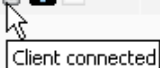
This page shows a list of the SMS commands sent from the server to devices, such as sync messages, WAP pushes etc. The list shows the date and time of the SMS and the phone number, device ID and user ID it was sent to. The information derives from the Kannel server.

If you let the mouse pointer rest on the icon in the left-hand column, a tooltip shows the nature of the SMS in question.

Active clients

Here you can see information about which clients are currently online - or rather, the clients for which the DME server still stores a cache.

The amount of time user sync data are stored is specified in the **Client** on page 172 section of the **Server configuration** panel.

*	Device	User	Client IP	Function	State	Output	Expires	Counters
☐	357580000665489	JEH	212.17.144.230	traffic	   1	1	12:32	
☐	351892010477896	SP	62.135.251.46	traffic	   1	1	12:36	
☐	352255013540541	BBR	62.44.158.29	traffic	   1	1	12:32	
☐	351879010147389	MS	62.135.251.119	systeminfo	   1	0	-	
Running processes: 1 / 0								

Apart from the device ID, user ID, and the device IP address, information about the online clients includes the following:

❖ **Function**

The type of data in the cache.

❖ **State**

The state of the cache. A fully drawn icon indicates that the state is active. Possible states are: **Connected** () , **Running** () , and **Data output ready** () .

The number following the icon indicates the number of times the current process has run. Sometimes a process is run multiple times, for example if the client connection is interrupted.

❖ **Output**

The number here indicates how many times the output has been sent to the client. Output may need to be sent multiple times, for example if the client connection is interrupted, or if the client makes an identical request within a given time frame - in which case the results are passed to the client from the cache, and the figure in this field is increased.

❖ **Expires**

After the time in this field, the current cached connection is flushed. See the **Client** section of the **Server configuration** panel (**Client** on page 172).

❖ **Counters**

One or more counters may be displayed in this field. This typically happens if a situation arises which should be monitored - for instance a time-out condition. If this occurs, a time-out counter will appear in this field, counting the number of time-out conditions for the cached data in question.

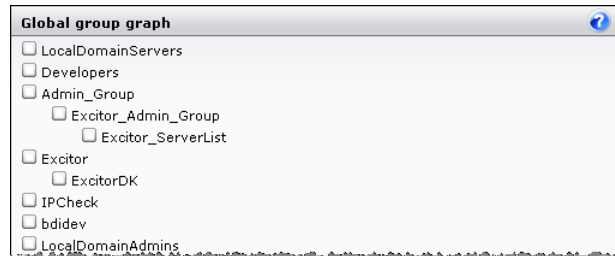
The **Running processes** indicator below the table indicates the number of current processes (equal to the number of entries in the table above where the **Running** icon is shown). After the slash, the number of orphan processes (known as "zombie processes" in Linux) is shown. An orphan process may occur if a client initiates a large process and then cancels it and initiates another, similar process. These conditions are rare, and the best thing that DME can do about it is to let the processes time out by themselves. The implications of killing such orphan processes is undefined. If many such processes occur, the problem usually lies in client setup or user behavior.

If you want to terminate and remove any client processes, select the processes in question, and click the **Delete** icon in the tab toolbar.

Show directory groups

The **Show directory groups** function is used for showing the global group graph from the LDAP/AD directory.

The graph reflects whether the setting **Group graph mode** in the **Domain** section of the connector setup panel is set to **Full** or **Partial**. If **Full**, all groups are shown. If **Partial**, only the groups that relate to the DME server are shown.



For more information, see **Domain** on page 276.

Connector

The **Connector** tab contains functions and information used for managing each connector attached to the DME server. For more information about the role of connectors in the DME system, see **DME server architecture** on page 17.

This tab contains two subtabs: **Connectors**, which shows a list of all connectors known to the DME server, and **Users**, which shows detailed routing information about each user serviced by a connector.

Furthermore, the page menu contains the following items:

- ❖ **Routes** - Refreshes the **Connector** tab page.
- ❖ **AppBox** - Link to the DME AppBox. Also accessible from the **Server** tab. See AppBox.
- ❖ **Show directory groups**. Also accessible from the **Server** tab. See **Show directory groups** on page 267.

Connectors

The **Connectors** subtab contains a list of all connectors known to the DME server. The following columns show information about each connector:

- ❖ **Connector**

This column contains the name of the connector. This is originally specified during the installation of the connector, but can be changed in the **Main** section of the connector's **Connector settings** page. To view and edit the properties of the connector, click the name.

The icons associated with each connector have the following meaning:



Primary connector with broadcast (supported users are selected automatically)



Failover connector with broadcast



Locked connector (see below)



Primary connector, supporting a list of named users



Failover connector, supporting a list of named users



Primary connector, supporting the users of a specified LDAP group



Failover connector, supporting the users of a specified LDAP group

For information about the difference between the types of connectors, see **Setting up connectors** on page 273.

❖ **Enabled**

This column uses an icon to show the status of the connector on the current line.



A *locked padlock* icon means that the connector is locked. Connectors are locked by default when they are created - the administrator must unlock the connector before it can be used.



If the icon is a *green checkmark*, the connector is enabled and running correctly for this server. Note that if DME is installed as a *cluster solution* (that is, a solution with multiple DME servers), the connector may be unavailable to other servers in the cluster.



If the icon is a *gray dot*, the connector is currently unavailable because it has been stopped.



If the icon is an *x in a red circle*, the connector was once reachable and working, but is now unavailable. This can happen if the number of threads available for the connector has been exhausted - in other words, the connector is overloaded (see the **Main** section of the connector's **Connector settings** page). The connector will not accept new jobs until there are available threads again. If DME is installed as a cluster solution, the connector may be available to other servers.

❖ **Connector type**

This column shows which collaboration system is serviced by the current connector:



for IBM Lotus Domino, or



for Microsoft Exchange.

❖ **Group graph**

This column shows a green checkmark if the current connector is used for building the LDAP/AD directory group graph as described

in the **Domain** section of the connector's **Connector settings** page (see **Domain** on page 276).

❖ **Functions**

The next 9 columns show the functions that the connector in question serves. For each connector, you can specify that it should for instance serve users by synchronizing their e-mail and contacts, or that the connector should be used for user authentication. A blue dot indicates that the connector is used for the function; a gray dot indicates that the connector is not used in that capacity. The available functions are:

- ❖ Authentication
- ❖ E-mail sync. and notification. This includes synchronization of e-mail folders
- ❖ Contact sync.
- ❖ Calendar sync. and notification
- ❖ Task / To-do sync.
- ❖ Notes sync. (Journals)
- ❖ RSS feed sync.
- ❖ Free time search
- ❖ Contact search
- ❖ Rooms and resources search
- ❖ SmartLink resolution

For more information, see **Setting up connectors** on page 273.

❖ **Location**

The **Location** column shows the network location of the current connector. The name of the server and the IP address of the server are shown.

❖ **Routes**

This column shows the number of *routes* that are serviced by the connector in question. The number of routes is calculated as the number of functions times the number of users. For example, if the current connector is used for authentication for all 300 DME users and for e-mail and contact synchronization for 100 of these users, the number will be (300 users × 1 function (authentication)) + (100 users × 2 functions (e-mail and contact sync.) = 500 routes.

Next to the number, a graph shows the percentage of the total number of routes for the DME server that are served by this connector. If you let the mouse pointer rest on the graph, a tooltip will show the actual percentage.

Users

This subtab shows a list of all users connected to the DME server.



User	Collaboration system	Directory lookup	Authentication	E-mails	Contacts	Calendar	Tasks	Notes	RSS	Free time search	Contact search	R & R search	SmartLink	Connector
ADE	Domino	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	SRV-DMECONN connector
	Exchange	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Domino7 dmesync
	Exchange	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	New Exchange 2007 prod

For each user, the columns to the right of the user show which functions are served by which connectors.

● The blue dot indicates that the connector is used for the specified function.

The faint gray dot indicates that the connector is not used in that capacity (yet).

○ The hollow, blue dot indicates that the connector has been used for the specified function (a route exists to the user), but the function has since been disabled.

✗ The red X indicates that the route is not available for the user in question on that connector. This can happen if a broadcast has found a connector to service a user for a certain function, but no connection to the user could be established. Note that a new broadcast will not be made - you need to flush the route table for the user in question in order to create a new route.

The following columns are shown:

❖ User

The first column shows the users on the DME system. You can click the user name to edit his or her properties.

❖ Collaboration system

The next column shows by a symbol the collaboration system to which the user is connected - Domino or Exchange.

❖ Directory lookup

A ● in this column indicates that the connector used for directory lookup - that is, for querying user information such as mail file and group memberships.

❖ Functions

A ● in any of the next columns indicates which connector or connectors serve the user with the function in question.

Note that a blue dot is not shown until the user has actually performed the function. For instance, if connector **A** is set up to

run the **Contact search** function, a blue dot is not shown in the **Contact search** column for a user until the user has in fact performed a search for contacts in the Global Address Book on his or her DME client. In other words, the route is not created for the user until required.

❖ **Connector**

This column shows the connectors that apply to the current user (that is, at least one column is marked with  or ). You can click the connector name to edit its properties.

Connector tab actions

The main **Connector** tab toolbar contains the following actions. After selecting each action, you are asked to confirm your choice.

❖ **Remove connector(s)**

Clicking this action removes any selected connector(s) in the list. The DME server no longer has a record of the location of the connector, and the connector must be reinstalled in order to appear in the list again.

❖ **Flush routes for selected connector(s) or user(s)**

As described in the section about the DME server architecture (see **DME server architecture** on page 17), each user is assigned to one connector to be serviced within a given function area (e-mail, search, etc. as specified in the connector setup). This is called the user's *route*. If that user needs to move to another connector (for instance because he is relocated to a different branch office), you need to select this action to flush the route table - both for the connector which the user leaves and the connector to which the user should be assigned. The route table is flushed for the entire connector. The DME server will start broadcasting users again, and the broadcast will be picked up by the connector to which the user has been moved.

The route from user to connector is created again at the time of the first synchronization. Please note that the notification scanner is not able to create routes. As a consequence, if there is no route to a user, a notification of a new e-mail will not reach the user until after the first synchronization, where the route is recreated.

You can flush routes for one or more connectors or users.

❖ **Toggle connector lock**

When a connector is installed on a server somewhere, and it tries to connect to the DME server, it is initially created in a **Locked** state. The DME administrator must manually toggle the lock status of the connector by selecting this action. Clicking this action toggles the lock of the selected connector(s).

Setting up connectors

Click the name of a connector in the **Connectors** or **Users** subtab to view and edit its properties. The following sections describe the *connector setup panel*.

Please note that some fields and groups of fields only apply to one particular collaboration system. Such fields are marked with a symbol in this manual:



for Lotus Domino



for Microsoft Exchange

Furthermore, some fields in the user interface are marked with a red * (asterisk). Such fields are considered mandatory - if they are not completed, DME will not work correctly. For instance, the **LDAP server** field in the **Authentication** setup panel is mandatory - but only if the current connector is set up to serve authentication requests (**Enable authentication** = **On**).

On every subtab in the panel sections of this Connector setup panel, you can choose the following options:

❖ **Save**

Saves the changes you have made in the current subtab. Note that switching subtabs also saves any changed values in the current subtab.

❖ **Cancel**

Restores the values in the current subtab to whatever they were before you opened the subtab or pressed **Save**. Canceling brings you back to the main **Connector** page.

Note that for reasons of overall stability, it is important that all network equipment is *not* set to auto-negotiate speed. The network equipment (network interface cards, firewalls etc.) should always be set to the speed of the slowest network component in

the chain to prevent speed fallbacks and resending of network packets.

Main

In the **Main** section of the **Connector settings** panel you can configure various properties of the current connector. All fields in this section are mandatory.

Connector

The **Connector** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ Display name

This is the common name of the current connector. The name is shown in the main **Connector** tab. The connector is given a name when it is originally installed, and that name is reported to the server. However, you can change the name in this field.

❖ Node type

In this field you select the *node type* of the current connector. You can choose between the following options:

❖ Primary

A **Primary** connector is the connector which the DME server will direct all applicable requests to. If you set up more than one **Primary** connector to service the same segment of users or functions, they will service the users according to a "round robin" principle. If there for instance are three connectors associated with the same group of users, DME will consider the load on all three connectors and which connector last serviced the user. Based on this information, DME will select the next connector in line to service the user, effectively load balancing the system.

❖ Failover

A **Failover** connector will be used if all **Primary** connectors are taken out of service or are exhausted (see **Process** below) for a segment of users or functions. It is good practise to set up a small-volume failover connector in case the primary connector(s) should fail or otherwise be taken out of service, to service the users until a primary connector is up and running again.

Process

The **Process** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Number of threads**

In this field you can enter a number of threads, or *processes*, that the connector should be able to handle at the same time. Default value: **25**.

❖ **Exhaustion level**

In this field you can enter a number of threads, or *processes*. When the queue of processes waiting to be executed by the connector reaches this number, it is a sign that the connector is overloaded. The connector will stop working, and any failover connector will take over. The main connector list will show a , and an entry will be made in the server log. Default value: **50**.

❖ **Execution timeout**

In this field you can enter a value in seconds. After a thread (a task given to the connector by the server) has not been completed during this span of time, it will be terminated, and an entry will be made in the server log. Default value: **900** seconds.

SMTP (e-mail notifications)

The **SMTP** group of functions define how DME can send certain system-generated e-mail messages to users, such as messages about calendar conflicts and name resolution errors.

Messages sent to the administrator in connection with client creation alerts etc. are sent by the SMTP relay server defined in the corresponding setting for the DME server (see **Collaboration** on page 178).

The **SMTP** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **SMTP relay server**

Connectors are not necessarily on the same network as the DME server. Therefore you need to enter the external name of the mail server used by the connector for sending the various e-mail messages described above. Note that this mail server must allow relays from the connector's IP address.

❖ **SMTP mail sender**

In this field you can enter a name you want to show as sender when a user receives a system-generated message as described above. For instance, you can enter **DME Administrator** or similar as sender to make it obvious to the user that the message is system-generated. If you leave the field empty, system-generated messages will be sent with **root@DME-Server** as sender.

Please take steps to ensure that e-mails from this sender are not evaluated as spam by the recipients' e-mail clients, for instance by instructing the DME users to add this sender to the "Safe Senders list" or similar. E-mail in spam mailboxes is rarely read, and almost

never synchronized to DME clients, so there is a risk that important information is missed by the users.

Info

This section contains information about the current connector.

The **Info** group of functions contains the following fields:

- ❖ **Connector ID** is an internal identifier of the connector used by the DME server. It is very important that this ID is unique across the entire DME system. The ID is written in the connector's configuration file `dme-config.xml` when the connector is installed.
- ❖ The **Version** field contains the version number of the connector. This version number can be used to verify that the current connector is compatible with the DME server. The number should match the version and build number of the DME server (which can be seen by clicking the DME Administration logo (see **About DME** on page 42)).

Click **Save** to save the new settings.

Domain

In the **Domain** section of the **Connector settings** panel you define the directory (LDAP/AD) settings of the current connector, and the generation of the directory group graph. All fields in this section are mandatory.

Directory server

The **Directory server** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ Domain info directory server



In this field you must enter the DNS name or IP address of the directory server (LDAP/AD) used by the current connector for looking up domain information such as mail file and group membership for authorized DME users. You can specify a non-standard port by adding a port number (`:<port>`). On Domino, it will always search the entire LDAP tree from the root.



In this field you must enter the DNS name or IP address of the Active Directory Domain Controller used by the current connector for looking up domain information such as mail file and group membership for authorized DME users.

You must use a certain syntax, which is as follows. For performance reasons, we recommend reading from a domain controller designated as Global Catalog Server. This is done by specifying `gc://`.

Read from absolute AD root:

```
gc://[DomainController][:port]/
```

Note the trailing slash, which means that the entire tree will be searched from the root.

Read from specific AD container:

```
gc://[DomainController][:port]/DC=Users,DC=company,DC=com
```

In this example, the search will be targeted to the **Users** container.

LDAP versus GC:

If you do not use a Global Catalog, you can prefix the domain controller path with `ldap://` instead of `gc://`.

A disadvantage of using `ldap` is that you risk slower performance or no response at all, depending on your AD configuration.

GC on the other hand, doesn't support users changing password using the DME client. Furthermore, it does not support the password expiration date calculation, so users cannot be warned about `Days before to show expiration warning` in the DME clients. If these functions are wanted, LDAP should be used.

Note that if you use secure connections, you can use the following syntax: `gcs://` or `ldaps://`.

If you do not specify either `gc://` or `ldap://`, it will default to using the domain name root of the domain controller that you specify. For instance, `ad1.company.com`. This will enable you to search from this domain down; you will be unable to search up through the specified domain.

❖ User for domain info queries

In this field you enter the name of the user which performs the directory lookups on behalf of the DME users. For more information about creating this user, see the separate Domino and Exchange Integration documentation issued by Soliton Systems. This user should have access to querying the directory for information such as mail file location and group memberships. By convention, this user is most often named **DME_Server** and called the *server user* or *technical user*.

❖ Password

In this field you specify the password of the directory query user specified above.

❖ Follow referrals

One LDAP repository can refer to other LDAP repositories for information. This is especially the case for Active Directory

environments. By default, DME allows this, but in some cases it may not be desirable. If you disable this field, DME will only search for information in the LDAP specified above, and not follow any chain of LDAP referrals.

❖ **Test connection**

Click this button to verify that the connection to the LDAP server can in fact be established with the connection information you have entered for this connector. You should do this before clicking **Save**. Note that the function only tests the LDAP specified in the **Domain info LDAP server** field, and not all LDAP servers that this DME server can reach. This way, you can test the connection against one connector at a time.

Enter the name of a user that you know exists in the LDAP directory. DME suggests the DME query user, but you for instance enter your own user name.

Click **Test**. If the connection to LDAP is successful, the result page will show various information about the user, retrieved from LDAP. If the connection failed, the result page will show an exception which may help you pinpoint the problem.

Click **Back** to try with another user, or click **Cancel** to end the test.

User groups (group graph)

The **User groups (group graph)** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Read out group graph**

The DME server requires a group graph, which is a tree representation of the directory groups from the organization's directory server (LDAP/AD). This graph is used by DME to detect the rights of a given user, based on the user's association with a group: is the user member of a group which is a member of **DME_User** (or a group impersonating **DME_User** - see **Access rights** below), of **DME_Superuser**, or **DME_Admin**. For more information, see **The group graph** on page 21.

Furthermore, the groups in the group graph can be used for grouping devices in the **Devices** tab. For more information, see **Groups**.

Only one system-wide group graph can be used by the DME server. It is sufficient to let one connector read out the group graph from the directory and send it to the server. Letting more connectors do this is also allowed, but not recommended. The connector used for authentication uses the group graph stored on the DME server to verify that a user is member of the **DME_User** group. When this field is selected, the current connector will

extract the group graph from the directory server specified in the field **Domain info LDAP server** above, and send it to the DME server when you click **Save**. The group graph is extracted according to the specifications below.

❖ Group graph mode

In these fields you can specify the extent to which you want to send the directory group graph to the DME server. This is only relevant if the field **Read out group graph** above is also selected.

Group graph mode

☐ Full
☒ Partial (recommended)

Additional roots:

DME_User
 DME_Superuser
 DME_Admin
 DME_User_Domino
 DME_User_Exchange
 Sales

DME_User, DME_Superuser and DME_Admin are mandatory.

If you choose **Full**, all groups in the directory are included in the group graph. Choosing **Full** allows you to build Analyzer reports using the directory groups as parameter. However, if your organization's directory contains a very large number of groups (10,000+), it is recommended to choose **Partial**, as building the group graph can put quite a strain on the connector.

If you choose **Partial**, the DME groups **DME_User**, **DME_Admin**, **DME_Superuser** and their subgroups are included in the graph by default. However, you can enter additional roots to be traversed. If, for example, you enter **OtherRoot** as in the example shown above, the group graph will consist of the mandatory DME groups and any directory groups below **OtherRoot**. You can add roots that do not exist in the directory specified in the **LDAP server** group of fields above, for instance if you want to allow users, who are not members of any group in the specified LDAP server, to log on.

Furthermore, you can choose **Partial** and add the ***** keyword to the list. This means that all groups will be included (as in **Full**), with the addition of any other groups you need to specify.

When you click **Save**, the connector will read out the group graph and send it to the DME server. A log entry in the **System** category with the text **New group graph arrived:**, followed by the actual group graph, will be written to the log (see **Log** on page 130). The group graph can be seen by clicking **Show directory groups** in the page menu of the **Server** tab.

❖ Read timeout

In this field you can enter the number of minutes for which the connector should try to read the directory group graph. After the

specified number of minutes, the process will stop.

Recommended value: 60 minutes.

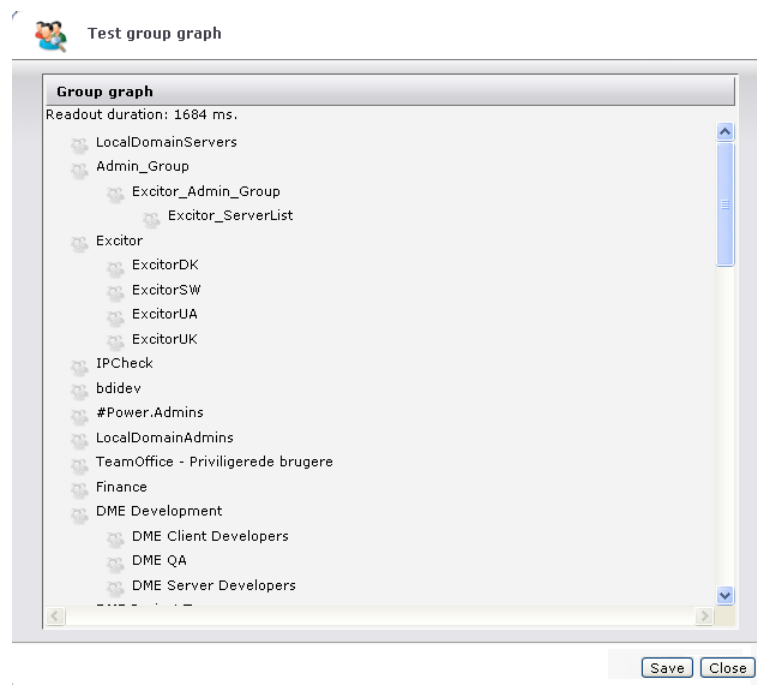
❖ Read frequency

In this field you can either enter the number of minutes that should pass between each refresh of the directory group graph, or you can enter a specific time of day in **hh:mm** format, and DME will then refresh the directory group graph at that time. You could for instance specify that DME should refresh the user/group memberships every night at **03:00**.

❖ Test readout

When you have specified the LDAP server or altered the group graph setup, you can click the **Test readout** button to verify your changes. This button is available if the field **Read out group graph** is selected. If it is not (if the current connector is not used for reading out the group graph), you can enable the field, test the group graph, and then disable the field again - enabling the group graph function for the connector does not take effect until you click **Save** in the **Domain** panel.

The test verifies that the group graph can in fact be read from the LDAP server with the information specified in the **LDAP server** group of fields above. A popup window shows *either* the group graph as defined in this group of functions (as an indication of success), or an error message as an indication that the connection to the LDAP server failed. Perform the test before saving your changes to the connector. The picture below shows an example of a successful readout of the group graph.



Click **Close** to exit to the **Domain** panel again.

If you have made changes that you want to apply before the next scheduled run of the group graph readout, you can also use the **Test readout** function as a manual refresh of the group graph.

Run the test, and click **Save** to save the group graph.

The **Access rights** group of functions contains the following fields:

Access rights	
Additional <i>DME_User</i> group	[none] ▼
Additional <i>DME_Superuser</i> group	[none] ▼
Additional <i>DME_Admin</i> group	[none] ▼

❖ Additional **DME_User** group

If you want to use an LDAP group in addition to **DME_User** for DME users, choose an LDAP group here. This group will then have the same rights as **DME_User**. For more information about user groups, see **About users** on page 78.

❖ Additional **DME_Superuser** group

The functionality of this field is similar to that of the field **Additional DME_User group** above, but applies to the **DME_Superuser** group.

❖ Additional **DME_Admin** group

The functionality of this field is similar to that of the field **Additional DME_User group** above, but applies to the **DME_Admin** group.

Supported users

The **Supported users** group of functions lets you specify which users should be serviced by the current connector (the *route users*) - either manually or by letting the connector broadcast for users to be serviced.

If you have a central directory server and a local mail server for a specific office/location, you can for instance configure a specific group in your directory for users of this office/location, and configure a DME connector to service users of this group only.

DME user domain



You can limit the connector to only serving users from a specific domain. This allows you to run one DME server for multiple domains. For instance, if your DME server hosts users from multiple distinct companies, you can set up one connector per company by only allowing the connector to create routes to users from a certain domain only.

The domain must be entered on the form `domain.com`. For Domino users, this must match the e-mail address of the user. For Exchange users, this must match the `UserPrincipalName`.

For instance, if `domain.com` is entered here, a user logging in as `john.doe@domain.com` can be serviced by this connector; a user logging in as `john.doe@example.com` cannot.

Route users

The users' route to a DME Connector is based on a built-in priority, where the more specific user selection has the higher priority. For instance, if a user is specified in the **Users** field of one connector, but is also found as member of a group specified in the **Members of** field of another connector, then the route will be created to the connector where the user is specified directly. If the user is not found in either of those fields of any connector, the route will be created to a connector set to **Automatic** (broadcast).

❖ **Users**

In this field you can specify a comma separated list of users that should be serviced by this connector. The users should be specified as they would be displayed in the **User** column in the **Devices** tab. A list could for instance be **NIF,LL,MFB**. In this case, only the users NIF, LL, and MFB would be serviced by this connector. This could for instance be used for debugging purposes in connection with the setup of a new DME connector.

❖ **Members of**

In this field you can specify a group from the directory specified in the field **Domain info directory server** above. The effect is similar to that of the field **Users** above, and should only be used in the same circumstances - while testing a new installation. Only users that are members of the selected group are serviced by this connector. This only applies if the field **Automatic** below is not checked.

❖ **Automatic**

If this field is selected (default), the fields **Users** and **Members of** above are ignored. Instead, the DME server determines which users should be serviced by which connector by way of a *user broadcast*, as described in the section about the DME server architecture - see **DME server architecture** on page 17.

Note that it is a requirement that *at least one* connector is set to **Automatic**.

If, for instance, you use the **Members of** setting to route your Exchange 2003 users to one connector, your Exchange 2007 users to another connector, and your Exchange 2010 users to a third

connector, then you must set up a fourth connector for **Authentication** only, using the **Automatic** setting - like this:

Connectors		Users												Location
Connector	Enabled	Group graph	Authentication	Emails	Calendar	Contacts	Tasks	Free time search	Contact search	R & R search	Smartlink			
 -Authentication	✓		✓									 excitor.co		
 -Ex2003	✓											 excitor.co		
 -Ex2007	✓											 excitor.co		
 -Ex2010	✓											 excitor.co		

Click **Save** to save the new settings.

Authentication

In the **Authentication** section of the **Connector settings** panel you define whether the current connector is used for authentication. All fields in this section are mandatory, except the **Password change** section in Exchange setups.

Function

The **Function** group of functions contains the following field:

❖ Enable Authentication

If you select this field, the current connector will be used for authentication purposes, meaning that it will accept user authentication requests from the DME server. The connector will verify the username and password of the user, and will detect which directory groups the user is member of. The groups are matched against the directory group graph stored on the server to see if the user is member of **DME_User**. At least one DME connector must have this role.

Authentication

The **Authentication** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ LDAP server

This is the directory (LDAP/AD) server used by the connector for authenticating DME users. After they have been authorized access to DME, the **User for domain info queries** (a.k.a. the server user) looks up domain information on behalf of the user, using the domain specified in the **Domain** panel section. That domain will usually be the same as the one specified in this field, but not necessarily.

This directory server may or may not be the directory server from which the group graph is derived. The user's group membership is sent to the server for comparison with the

directory group graph, to verify that the user is in fact member of the **DME_User** group (or equivalent) and thus has access to the system. Note that if you just enter an IP address or a hostname without indication of protocol in this field, DME will prepend the IP address with `ldap://`.

If your system is set up to use secure LDAP, you must enter `ldaps://` yourself, change to a secure port, and configure the firewall accordingly. The secure LDAP path has the following format: `ldaps://LDAP_SERVER_HOSTNAME:SECURE_LDAP_PORT` (the secure port is typically **636**, but this may be different in your setup). For more information, contact your DME Partner.

If you are using Microsoft AD with Global Catalog (GC) or Global Catalog Secure (GCS), for the best performance, you should enter `gc://` or `gcs://` respectively.

❖ Follow referrals

One LDAP repository can refer to other LDAP repositories for information. This is especially the case for Active Directory environments. By default, DME allows this, but in some cases it may not be desirable. If you disable this field, DME will only search for information in the LDAP specified above, and not follow any chain of LDAP referrals.

❖ AD domain

The AD domain entered in this field is used for authenticating DME users. After they have been authorized access to DME, the **User for domain info queries** (a.k.a. the server user) looks up domain information on behalf of the user.

The AD domain must be entered in *UPN suffix* format, which is usually the same as your DNS domain, for instance `your.domain.com` or something similar to `ad.domain.local`. Do not use the old Windows 2000 format such as `DOMAIN\`.

The login information from the DME client usually only consists of your user name, which is passed to the DME server. In order for the DME server and connector to successfully authenticate against the Active Directory or the Exchange server, it is necessary that the AD domain (UPN suffix) is appended to this user name (for example `your.domain.com`), giving the unique

UserPrincipalName of `username@your.domain.com`. You must enter the AD domain information in this field, even if you only use one domain.

❖ Test login

Click this button to open the **Test authentication** window, in which you can attempt a login process against the authentication LDAP server specified in the **LDAP server** field.

Enter the user name and password of a user in the corresponding fields, and click **Test**. If the test is successful, the window shows some information about the user, and the amount of time it took to retrieve the information. If the test failed, an error message is shown to help you pinpoint the problem.

Click **Back** to try with another user, or **Cancel** to exit the window.

The **Password change** group of functions contains the following fields: 

❖ **Administrator user name**

The DME client uses the users' AD password for authentication. At regular intervals, this password will expire according to company security policies. In order to ensure uninterrupted access to e-mail and calendar from the DME client, the client users are able to change their AD password from the client.

If you leave this field and the field **Administrator password** blank, the users have access to changing the password for as long as it is not completely expired yet - that is, when the users have received a warning that the password is about to expired in x days.

If you enter the user name of an AD administrator and a password in these fields, the users will be able to change their AD password, even if the password has expired completely (the flag 'User must change password on next logon' is marked on the user's account in AD).

Please note that the password change functionality requires a secure connection to your AD through the LDAPS protocol. The path to your secure LDAP server must be specified in the **LDAP server** field (above).

❖ **Administrator password**

In this field you can specify the password of the AD administrator entered above.

Click **Save** to save the new settings.

E-mail and PIM

In the **E-mail and PIM** section of the **Connector settings** panel you define the scope of the synchronization tasks of the current connector, and how the connector is to integrate with the collaboration system with regard to e-mail and PIM synchronization.

On every subtab in this section, you can choose **Test connection** (in addition to the **Save** and **Cancel** options). This function checks if your settings work correctly. See the section **Test** on page 286.

The settings available for each supported collaboration system are described separately below.

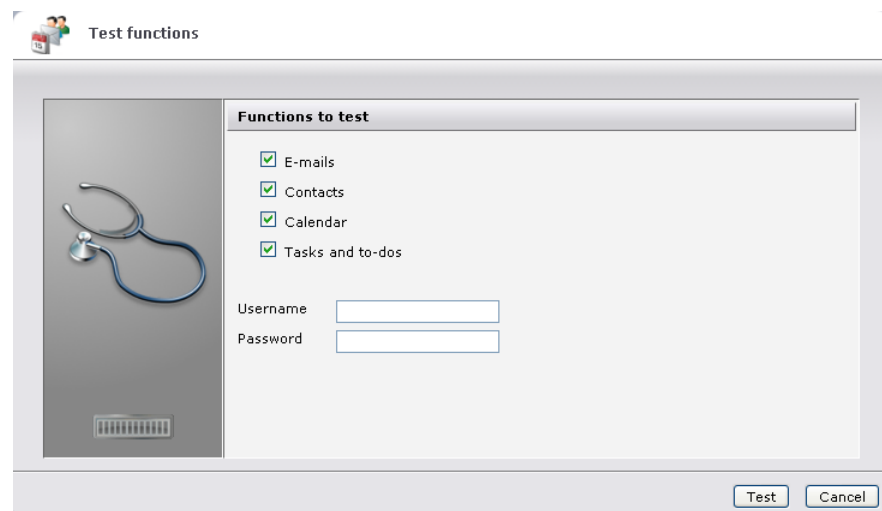
Domino e-mail and PIM on page 287 

Exchange e-mail and PIM on page 298 

Test

When you are done setting up the connector for Domino or Exchange, you can run an automatic test to see if everything is set up correctly.

When you click **Test connection**, the following window appears:



You can now test a full synchronization cycle with the user you enter in the **Username** field.

➤ **Performing an automatic test**

1. Select the functions you want to test using the current connector. Only select the functions that the connector is meant to service. Select a combination of **E-mail**, **Contacts**, **Calendar**, and **Tasks and to-dos**.
2. Enter the name of a user you know should be serviced by the connector. If no users exist in DME yet, you must create one manually first. The user created must exist in the LDAP/AD directory of the connector.
3. Enter the password of the user you are testing for in the **Password** field.
4. Click **Test**.

DME now runs a test for each function by attempting to make a synchronization. A dummy device is created for the indicated user, and a full synchronization cycle is run for each function. The result of the diagnostic is shown in the window:

Result of test				
E-mails test				
Diagnostic	deletes	creates	updates	
Received	none	none	none	
Sent	none	7	1	
Duration	00:00:07.075			
Contacts test				
Diagnostic	deletes	creates	updates	
Received	none	none	none	
Sent	none	none	none	
Duration	00:00:16.527			
Calendar test				

If any errors have occurred, they will be clearly marked in the window, and will also appear in the log. Any creates, deletes, and updates caused by the synchronization are rolled back immediately in any case, and the dummy device is deleted.

Click **Back** to perform another test, or **Cancel** if you are done.

Domino e-mail and PIM

The following subtabs are available when setting up a Domino connector.

General (Domino)

In this subtab of the **E-mail and PIM** section of the currently edited Domino connector, you can set up general Domino-related options.

❖ Server

If you need to overwrite the mail server information retrieved from the Domino LDAP directory as specified in the **Domain** setup panel, specify the mail server here. All users of this connector will use this mail server unless otherwise configured on the individual user pages.

❖ Using Notes session

This mode covers both *Notes session* and *Domino session*. In this mode, you install the connector on a machine on which a Notes client (32 bit) or a Domino server (64 bit) is also installed. You must configure the Notes client or Domino server according to the specifications set out in the **Domino integration guide**.

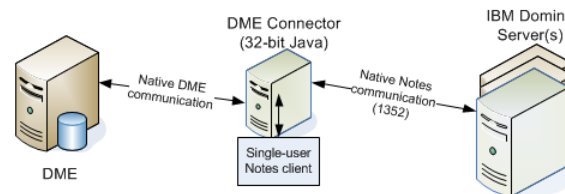
For *Notes session*, a user with **Manager** rights to the mailboxes of all DME users in the Domino system must be configured - this

user is called the *DME proxy user*. In the **Notes ID password** field, enter the password for the proxy user.

For *Domino session*, data is exchanged without a proxy user. Therefore, the **Notes ID password** field *must be blank (empty)* in Domino session mode.

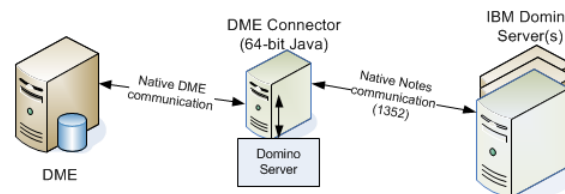
If you install a *Notes client* on a server running 32 bit Java, it must fulfill the following criteria:

Version 8.5 Basic installed as **Single User**. This applies, regardless of the version of Domino the mail server is running.



If you install a *Domino server* on a server running 64 bit Java, it must fulfill the following criteria:

Version 8.5.3 FP6 (or higher) installed as a **Messaging Server**. This applies, regardless of the version of Domino the mail server is running.

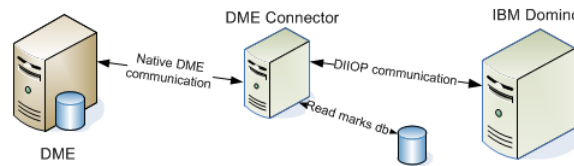


There are a number of advantages to using Notes/Domino session over the Remote/Corba connection solution (below):

1. The connector will not have to use the DIIOP protocol, which is slower than the native Java connection running on port **1352**.
2. No read mark database needs to be configured for helping the DME clients to know which e-mails have been read. For important information about this functionality, see **Read marks** below.
3. It is possible to use Notes encryption.
4. You can use a Domino system with multiple Domino servers.

❖ Using Remote / Corba connection

In case policy or geographical circumstances prohibit using the Notes binaries solution, you must connect to Domino using DIIOP (IBM's variant of the CORBA protocol), as illustrated here:



When you select this option, specify the DIIOP port to be used by the connector (**63148** by default).

Also specify if you want to use secure DIIOP by selecting the field **Secure (SSL)**. Note, however, that the performance penalty of running in **SSL** mode can be high, and that it is not recommended unless necessary.

Also complete the fields concerning the readmark database below. Please refer to the Domino documentation for information about how to manage the Domino keyring and set up secure DIIOP.

Refer to the **DME installation documentation** for further information about installing DME and integrating with Domino - see the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center - <http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist>.

❖ Use roaming settings if available

If this field is selected, DME reads the personal address book location from the roaming settings in the LDAP user profile. This is the default, but you can switch this feature off by removing the checkmark from this field, in which case the user's mail database is used as address book.

The **Notes encryption** group of functions contains the following fields:

There are two ways in which a user can send and receive Notes-encrypted e-mail on his or her device. In both cases, DME needs access the user's Notes ID file. Here you can choose which method you want to use for gaining access to the ID files.

❖ Get user ID files from iNotes

If you select this option, you can instruct the users to use the iNotes webmail interface to upload his or her user ID file. For instructions how to do this, see the Domino integration guide at the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center - <http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist>.

❖ Use ID storage database

If you select this option, you can enter the location of a special **IDStorage** database, which you can obtain from the **DME**

Resource Center

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/dl/support-files>. With this in place, the user can upload his or her ID file to a special Domino database. DME will then use the uploaded Notes ID file when encrypting e-mail sent from the device and decrypting e-mail synchronized to the device. This removes the need for the ID file to be stored on each device. The ID files are stored in such a way that it is *only* possible for the user himself/herself to access the ID file.

For instructions how to use this database, see the Domino integration guide at the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center -

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist>.

When the user has supplied his or her Notes ID file, he or she must enter the password for the ID file in the field **Private key password** in **Settings** on the device. The user is then ready to receive and send encrypted e-mail on the device.

❖ ID temp directory

This is the location where DME stores a temporary copy of the ID file while using it for encryption or decryption.

❖ Shred ID files after use

If you select this option, the ID files in the temporary directory will be shredded after use. Shredding means that the file is first altered in random ways, and then deleted. This makes it impossible to restore the file.

E-mail

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Domino connector to service e-mail users.

❖ Enable e-mail sync.

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing e-mail and e-mail folders for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept e-mail and e-mail folder synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

❖ Database

If you need to overwrite the mail file path information retrieved from the Domino LDAP directory, specify the mail file here. This can for instance be necessary if the mail boxes of several DME mail servers are replicated to a server with a different mail box path. To insert the user name into the path, use **{0}**. In the example below, the DME user name is **jd**, and **{0}** therefore equals **jd**:

```
mail\{0}.nsf equals mail\jd.nsf
```

Note that this setting can be overwritten on a per-user basis in the **Devices > User setup > Collab.conf.** panel section.

❖ **Mail domain**

The name of your Domino Mail Domain. This domain will be appended to all sent mails, to instruct the Domino server to evaluate the recipients. This way DME does not have to query the LDAP directory every time. Only use this option if you have only one corporate domain.

❖ **Sender address format**

This parameter determines how the sender addresses should be displayed in the DME client.

If you select **Domino format, then Internet address**, the sender's address will be shown as **John Smith/Headquarters/Domain** if possible in the **From** field of the e-mails you receive; otherwise it will be shown in the form **john.smith@domain.com**. Note that the addresses of other recipients of the e-mail (in the **CC** or **BCC** fields) are always shown in Domino format (**John Smith/Headquarters/Domain**).

If you select **Internet address, then Domino format** (default), the sender's address will be shown in the form **john.smith@domain.com** if possible; otherwise it will be shown as **John Smith/Headquarters/Domain**.

❖ **Recipient separator**

This field is mainly used for Exchange installations, but it is possible to specify the same option for Domino installations. Microsoft Exchange permits e-mail addresses such as **lastname, firstname <name@domain.com>**. According to e-mail standards, e-mail addresses containing a comma should be enclosed in double quotes (or similar). Since Exchange does not enforce this standard, addresses such as the above would be misinterpreted by DME. In order to circumvent this, you can use this field to define permitted separators between e-mail recipients. You can choose to allow comma only, semicolon only, or both comma and semicolon.

❖ **Connector temp directory**

The connector will use this directory for storing the cache if pre-caching is enabled on the server. See **Pre-caching sync. data** in **Collaboration** on page 178. If nothing is entered here, DME uses the standard TEMP directory for the connector OS. To avoid that the connector server is filled up by temporary files, DME cleans out temporary attachment files once a day.

❖ **Extract embedded images as attachments**

When a user receives an e-mail with embedded images, the images are not visible in the DME client unless this field is selected. If this

field is set to **True**, images that are embedded into received e-mails are extracted from the e-mail and included as attachments in the client. Furthermore, you must enable this function in order for DME to recognize URL links (*Domino hotspots*) in e-mails on the client.

Attaching embedded images will naturally increase the load on the DME connector. If this is a problem, consider installing a separate connector for users who definitely need images and working URL links in their e-mails on the client.

Please note that Lotus Notes imposes a limitation to this feature. If the size of the e-mail document (including attachments) exceeds 12 MB, the extraction of embedded images will not work, and a number of "Unable to execute request" error messages will be written to the server log.

❖ **Add attachments from document links**

In Notes, you may add links to Notes documents in an e-mail. If this field is **True**, DME will check if linked Notes documents contain any attachments, such as Word documents, image files, etc. If one or more attachments exist, they are added as attachments in the e-mail synchronized to the clients, and they are thus available for download on the clients. This is for instance useful if you use a shared document database and want to send Notes document links instead of sending the actual files. Performing this check for linked Notes documents will naturally increase the load on the DME connector.

❖ **E-mail disclaimer**

In this field you can write a standard disclaimer message which is appended to every e-mail message sent from the device through DME. The disclaimer is appended *after* any signature that may be automatically appended in the client (either the DME client or a regular e-mail client), and after any other text such as e-mail history.

The **Read marks** group of functions contains the following fields:

If the connector services e-mail, you may need to install a special DME Unreadmark database, which is available from the **DME**

Resource Center

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/dl/support-files>, in order for e-mails in the client to be marked as read or unread. The DME Unreadmark database supports the following platforms: **Windows 32-bit**, **Linux**, **AS/400** (with support library), **Solaris**, and **AIX**.

To see if you need to install this database and specify its location, see the following table:

	DIIOP mode	Notes session mode
Domino 7.x	Specify Database	Specify Server and Database
Domino 8.x	Specify Database	Specify <i>nothing</i> (remove any information in the fields)

This means that:

1. If the connector communicates with any supported version of Domino using DIIOP (Remote/Corba), you must specify the name of the **UnreadMark** database in the **Database** field, leaving the **Server** field blank.
2. If the connector is running as a Notes session, AND your Domino version is less than version 8, you must specify the name of the **UnreadMark** database in the **Database** field and the name of the server on which it is installed in the **Server** field.
3. If the connector is running as a Notes session, AND your Domino version is version 8 or above, the **Server** and **Database** fields must both be blank.

❖ **Server**

If you are running Domino 7.x in Notes session mode, you must specify the server on which the **UnreadMark** database is installed. If you leave this field blank, and a file path is specified in the field **Database** below, DME will look for the **UnreadMark** database on the user's mail server, and the **UnreadMark** database must be located on all mail servers accessed by DME.

In DIIOP (Remote/Corba) mode, you should not specify any server in this field.

This field *must* be blank when running Domino 8.x in Notes session mode.

❖ **Database**

This field contains the path to and name of the **UnreadMark** database, relative to Domino's data directory. The path to and name of the database must be the same on all Domino servers.

This field *must* be blank when running Domino 8.x in Notes session mode.

Contacts

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Domino connector to service users of Contacts synchronization.

❖ **Enable contact sync.**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing contacts for users that are routed to the

connector, meaning that it will accept contact synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

❖ **Server**

If you wish to use another contacts server than the one retrieved from the Domino LDAP as specified in the **Domain** setup panel, specify it with this setting.

❖ **Database**

If you wish to use another contacts file/URL than the one retrieved from the Domino LDAP, specify it with this setting. You can use **{0}** to substitute the user name.

❖ **Use Domino 7 address mapping**

In Domino 7 and earlier, there are only two address fields available. As of Domino 8, there are three. This means that with Domino 8, contact addresses map easily to the device contact fields **Home**, **Work**, and **Other**. However, if you run a Domino version before 8, DME employs the usual "Work/Home scheme" for addresses as well as for e-mail addresses, phone numbers, mobile phone numbers, and fax numbers. For more information, see "**Contact mapping**" in the "**Client deployment guide**".

If this field is set to **True**, DME uses the work/home scheme for addresses as well. Applies to Domino installations earlier than version 8.

❖ **Allow failover to mail database**

If this field is set to **True**, DME will attempt to read contacts from the mail database if the contacts database specified above cannot be reached.

❖ **Sync. primary phone number**

In the DME client, the user can dial a number by pressing the green Call key when, for instance, an e-mail is highlighted in the **Inbox**. The client will then check if the e-mail address of the e-mail sender can be found in the local contacts, and prompt to dial the number of the associated contact. If not found in the local contacts, the client will ask if the user wants to search the Global Address Book for the contact. If more than one number is associated with a contact, DME shows a list of numbers that the user can choose from.

The first number on that list is the *default number*. There are three ways to specify a default number:

1. The DME administrator can enforce the use of a certain phone number field as primary number by changing the contact sync mapping file, for instance to ensure that the users dial a low-cost number as their first choice when calling a contact.

For more information, see separate documentation about **Custom Mapping**, which is available to DME Partners.

2. If you use Domino as collaboration system, you can use the *primary number* set in Notes to specify the default number in DME. This applies to all device platforms, except iPhone. See more below.
3. The user can specify his or her own default numbers directly in the native phonebook application. This feature, however, is only available on Symbian devices. The administrator-enforced default number will always take precedence over any user-specified default number.

The default number is stored on the collaboration system as well. On Exchange systems, the default number is stored in a hidden field, and is only applied if the user chooses to import his or her contacts. On Lotus Domino systems, however, Lotus Notes also supports a default number; here it is called the *primary number*. You can choose to synchronize the Notes primary number and the phone default number, ensuring that they are the same.

If this field is set to **False**, DME will not synchronize the Lotus Notes primary number with the devices. Instead, the users' or the administrator's choice of default number is saved in a hidden field in Notes (as for Exchange), kept updated during contact synchronization, and applied when the user chooses to import his or her contacts to the device.

If this field is set to **True**, DME will synchronize the choice of primary number in Lotus Notes with the default number on the phone, keeping them identical. If a mapping file exists, the administrator's choice will be reflected in Lotus Notes. If a mapping file does not exist, selecting this field will synchronize the choice of default numbers on Symbian devices, and add the default number functionality within DME to devices on platforms that do not support default numbers by using the Notes primary number as default number.

For more information about using DME to place calls, see the separate client guides.

❖ **Use device platform specific contact mappings**

If this field is set to **True**, the connector will look for contact and search mapping files that have been customized for specific device models or device platforms. The connector looks for files with special file names. For more information, see the document "Custom mapping of fields in DME", which is available from the Resources website.

In Domino 8.5.2 a feature was added to Notes, where a contact could be *marked as private*:



When a user marks a contact as private, it will *not be synchronized* to his or her device.

Calendar

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Domino connector to service users of calendar synchronization.

❖ Enable contact sync.

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing contacts for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept contact synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

❖ Add room to location

In the synchronization process, DME does not pass information in the **Rooms** field back to the client. This means that if a user books a room but leaves the **Location** field empty, the DME client user will not be able to see where the meeting is held (even though the room is booked correctly). To get around this issue, you can specify in this field if you want to concatenate (join) the information from the **Rooms** and **Location** fields into the **Location** field of calendar entries in the DME client.

If you select **Never**, DME will not concatenate information in the **Rooms** and **Location** fields.

If you select **If Location field is empty**, DME will copy the value of the **Rooms** field to the **Location** field on the client, but only if the **Location** field is empty.

If you select **Always**, DME will always concatenate information in **Rooms** and **Location**. For instance, if the **Rooms** value is **Meeting Room 4**, and the **Location** value is **4th floor**, the **Location** field in the DME client will say **4th floor (Meeting Room 4)**. If the user changes the **Location** field and synchronizes, DME will attempt to split the value of the **Location** field into the **Location** and the **Rooms** fields on the collaboration system. If DME fails to split the value, for instance if the user removed a parenthesis from the value, the entire value will be entered into the **Location** field on the collaboration server.

❖ **Add chair and participants**

If you select this field, DME will include information about who is chair and which other participants were invited for a meeting, in the calendar entries synchronized with the client. This information is visible in calendar entries on the client. The information is not included if a meeting has no other participants than the chair, which is the case for personal appointments, all-day events, etc.

Tasks and to-dos

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current connector to service users who synchronize *tasks* (Windows Mobile clients) or *to-dos* (other clients).

❖ **Enable task/to-do sync.**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing the tasks/to-dos for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept task/to-do synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

Notes (Journals)

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Domino connector to service users who synchronize notes (or *journals* as they were called before Domino version 8.5).

❖ **Enable notes/journals sync.**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing the notes (or journals) for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept notes/journals synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

❖ **Server**

To set up synchronization of personal notebooks for *roaming users*, make sure the field **Use roaming settings if available** is selected in the **General (Domino)** subtab. The location of the personal notebook will then be picked up from the **Roaming** settings on the user document of the roaming users.

To set up synchronization of personal notebooks for *non-roaming users*, the notebook databases must be replicated to the Domino server. Then specify the location of the notebooks in this field and the field **Database** below. Leave this field blank, if it is the same server as specified in the **Domain** panel of the connector setup page.

❖ **Database**

For non-roaming users, use this field to specify the location of the personal notebooks on the form `path\notebookname{0}.nsf`, where {0} is the user's shortname - for instance `journal\notebook_{0}.nsf`.

Keep in mind that the notebook location can also be specified on a per-user basis in the user setup page > **Collab.conf**. A location specified here overrides any other setting.

Exchange e-mail and PIM

The following subtabs are available when setting up an Exchange connector.

General (Exchange)

In this subtab of the **E-mail and PIM** section of the currently edited Exchange connector, you can set up general Exchange-related options.

❖ Server

If you need to overwrite the mail server information retrieved from the Active Directory as specified in the **Domain** setup panel, specify the mail server here. All users of this connector will use this mail server unless otherwise configured on the individual user pages.

For *Exchange 2003*, you must enter the name or IP address of the frontend (OWA) server, if you have both frontend and backend servers.

For *Exchange 2007/2010/2013*, you must enter the name or IP address of the server or cluster with **CAS** role.

This field can only be left blank if you have an "all-in-one" Exchange server, where both frontend and backend are on the same machine.

❖ Server reg. expression

DME uses a regular expression to extract the name of the mail server from the users' entry in Active Directory. If the default regular expression should fail, you can enter another expression here. The expression is interpreted by Java. For more information about Java regular expressions, see <http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.2/docs/api/java/util/regex/Pattern.html>.

❖ Database

If you need to overwrite the mail file path information retrieved from the Active Directory, specify the mail file here. To insert the user name into the path, use **{0}**. In the example below, the DME user name is *jd*, and **{0}** therefore equals *jd*:

```
{0}_mail results in the WebDAV folder
.../exchange/jd_mail/...
```

This field should usually be left blank.

❖ Exchange domain

Users are authenticated through the AD domain specified in the **Authentication** panel section. After they have been authorized

access, the **User for domain info queries** (a.k.a. the server user) looks up domain information on behalf of the user. The Exchange domain as well as the Distinguished Name (DN) of the user is part of that lookup, and therefore you should usually *not* enter anything in this field. If you do enter an Exchange domain in this field, it will overwrite the domain from the domain info lookup.

If you are required to enter an Exchange domain here, you must do so in *UPN suffix* format. This is usually the same as your DNS domain, for instance `your.domain.com` or something similar to `ad.domain.local`. Do not use the old Windows 2000 format such as `DOMAIN\`.

The **Connection** group of functions contains the following fields:

❖ **Protocol**

In this field you can specify the protocol type of the version of Exchange you are using: **Exchange 2003 (WebDAV)**, **Exchange 2007 (Web service)** or **Exchange 2010 (Web service)**. If you do not choose the correct version in this field, the integration to your Exchange system will not work. The default value in this field is **Auto detection**. However, it is recommended to switch the value to the protocol type you actually use, as the DME server at regular intervals will use some resources on testing which system you are running.

❖ **Auth. scheme**

In this field you can choose how the connector should authenticate against Microsoft Internet Information Server (IIS). Exchange exposes the collaboration system to DME through the IIS (in the form of Outlook Web Access (Exchange 2003) or Web Services (Exchange 2007 and above)), so DME needs access to the IIS web server.

On the **Authentication Methods** page of the IIS Manager you define how users (such as the DME connector) can access IIS. In this field you must choose a corresponding value. Note that DME only supports **NTLM** (which corresponds to **Integrated Windows authentication**) and **Basic** authentication. The DME connector *does not support* NTLMv2 SSP. If the Exchange CAS server's local policy security setting **Network security: Minimum session security for NTLM SSP based (including RPC) servers** is set to **Require NTLMv2**, then the DME connector is unable to authenticate with CAS.

If you run Exchange 2003 and have enabled **Forms Based Authentication** (FBA) in your OWA setup, you must choose **Basic** in this field. If you run Exchange 2007 and above, DME communicates with IIS directly through web services (EWS), and

the OWA interface is not used (and thus FBA does not apply at all).

Please note that IIS must have anonymous access to the EWS when you are running Exchange 2010. See the Exchange 2007/2010 integration documentation. Also see the integration documentation for information about using native Java NTLM support and and Oakland NTLM. The documentation can be found at the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center - <http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist>.

❖ Mailbox naming scheme

(This field was called **OWA mailbox** in previous versions of DME). In this field you can specify how your Outlook Web Access mailboxes are set up on Exchange 2003. DME supports the use of the following naming schemes to point to the users' OWA mailboxes. In the examples, the John Smith uses his Windows login ID **JS** as an e-mail alias for his regular e-mail address

john.smith@domain.com:

Mailbox alias. Example: <http://exchangeserver/exchange/js/>

Name part of e-mail address. Example:

<http://exchangeserver/exchange/john.smith/>

E-mail address where the full e-mail address is used in the path to the inbox. Example:

<http://exchangeserver/exchange/john.smith@domain.com/>

Note that on Exchange 2007 systems, this value in this field is used for getting the size of e-mail attachments through the WebDAV protocol. If you use Exchange 2007, you should set this field to **E-mail address**. Exchange 2010 does not require the WebDAV protocol.

❖ Virtual OWA directory

If your Exchange 2003 server is using virtual directories in OWA, the virtual domain must be specified in this field. For instance, a hosting company may use virtual directories to host the Exchange mail for many customers, on the form

mail.hosting.com/customer-name. In this case, you would enter **customer-name** in this field to substitute the default **/exchange** path. The connector can now access the user mailboxes on

mail.hosting.com/customer-name/<username>.

Note that on Exchange 2007 systems, the value in this field is used for getting the size of e-mail attachments through the WebDAV protocol. Exchange 2010 does not require the WebDAV protocol.

This field should be left blank in most installations.

❖ **EWS URL (2007/2010)**

This field is most likely only used if you have a hosted environment and a virtual directory pointing to the Exchange standard /EWS web service. This field should be left blank in most installations.

Whatever you enter in this field will replace the /EWS part of the standard Exchange server URL. A standard URL could look like this:

```
http://exch.domain.com:80/EWS/exchange.aspx
```

(derived from Active Directory or from the fields in the **E-mail and PIM** group of fields above). You can for instance enter the name of a company whose Exchange you are hosting in this field:

```
/Excitor/exchange.aspx
```

DME will then change the URL to the following:

```
http://exch.domain.com:80/Excitor/exchange.aspx
```

This applies to Exchange 2007 and 2010.

❖ **Subscription URL (2007/2010)**

If you want to subscribe to Exchange push mail events (see **Setting the scheme** on page 209 in the section about notification), you must enter the URL and port number to which Exchange should send push mail events for the users serviced by the current connector. These events generate notifications for DME users. Enter the URL and port number of the current connector (which acts as a small web server). Note that any firewall between the connector and Exchange must have an open port *from* the Exchange CAS server *to* the connector.

Example: **http://<IP or DNS name of the connector machine>:<port number>**, for instance **http://172.16.10.10:8888**. Make sure the port number on the connector machine is not already in use. There is no default value.

Note that DME does not support the use of the HTTPS protocol for this URL - HTTPS is not necessary, as the data exchanged between Exchange and the connector only contains push information and token values.

When a subscription schedule is created, the URL entered here is sent to the Exchange EWS server, asking to send events when new items (such as e-mails) are received. The reason that the complete URL is sent is that this way it will not be converted to another URL if a NAT table is set up between the connector and the Exchange system.

❖ **Secure (SSL)**

If the Exchange 2003 and 2007 WebDAV service or the Exchange 2007 and 2010 CAS server require a secure SSL (HTTPS)

connection, this field must be **Enabled**. Exchange 2007 and 2010 use SSL by default. For more information, see the Exchange 2007/2010 Integration documentation.

❖ **Trust all servers/certificates**

If you select this field, DME will trust all servers and certificates - always trusting connections from the servers you have set up for this connector. This is the recommended setting in order to prevent errors if for instance the issuer name of the SSL certificate is unknown. If the certificate is expired, a warning will be written to the log, but the connection will be accepted.

E-mail

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Exchange connector to service e-mail users.

❖ **Enable e-mail sync.**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing e-mail and e-mail folders for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept e-mail and e-mail folder synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

❖ **Recipient separator**

Microsoft Exchange permits e-mail addresses such as **lastname, firstname <name@domain.com>**. According to e-mail standards, e-mail addresses containing a comma should be enclosed in double quotes (or similar). Since Exchange does not enforce this standard, addresses such as the above would be misinterpreted by DME. In order to circumvent this, you can use this field to define permitted separators between e-mail recipients. You can choose to allow comma only, semicolon only, or both comma and semicolon.

❖ **Connector temp directory**

The connector will use this directory for storing the cache if pre-caching is enabled on the server. See **Pre-caching sync. data** in **Collaboration** on page 178. If nothing is entered here, DME uses the standard TEMP directory for the connector OS. To avoid that the connector server is filled up by temporary files, DME cleans out temporary attachment files once a day.

❖ **Read attachment sizes (2007 only)**

The Exchange 2007 Web Service (EWS) API offers no way to read out the size of attachments. Therefore DME uses WebDAV to read out attachment sizes - the way it is done in Exchange 2003 - in order for users to be able to see the size of attachments on the DME client. However, if you do not want to do this, or WebDAV is not available, you can disable this feature to save some processing time.

❖ **E-mail disclaimer**

In this field you can write a standard disclaimer message which is appended to every e-mail message sent from the device through DME. The disclaimer is appended *after* any signature that may be automatically appended in the client (either the DME client or a regular e-mail client), and after any other text such as e-mail history.

Contacts

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Exchange connector to service users of Contacts synchronization.

❖ **Enable contact sync.**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing contacts for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept contact synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

❖ **Use device platform specific contact mappings**

If this field is set to **True**, the connector will look for contact and search mapping files that have been customized for specific device models or device platforms. The connector looks for files with special file names. For more information, see the document "Custom mapping of fields in DME", which is available from the Resources website.

Calendar

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Exchange connector to service users of calendar synchronization.

❖ **Enable calendar sync.**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing the calendar for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept calendar synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

Tasks and to-dos

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current connector to service users who synchronize *tasks* (Windows Mobile clients) or *to-dos* (other clients).

❖ **Enable task/to-do sync.**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing the tasks/to-dos for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept task/to-do synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

Functions

In the **Functions** section of the **Connector settings** panel you can enable and disable various functions of the current connector.

Functions

The **Functions** subtab contains the following functions:

❖ **Enable RSS**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for synchronizing RSS feeds for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will accept RSS feed synchronization requests from the DME server for those users.

❖ **Enable SmartLink**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for handling SmartLink requests from DME clients for users that are routed to the connector, meaning that it will forward download requests for SmartLink resources to the DME server for those users. See **SmartLink settings** on page 346 for more information about SmartLink.

Out of Office

The **Out of Office** subtab contains the following functions:

❖ **Enable Out of Office**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for exchanging Out of Office settings between server and client. Out of Office settings set on the collaboration system will be sent to the client, and they can then be updated from the client. For instance, a user can enable Out of Office rules from his or her phone.



Please note this currently only works if the connector is a Notes Session connector, and the Out of Office (OOO) rules are implemented as an Agent in Notes.

Support for Out of Office as a service and on Domino Session connectors will be introduced in a subsequent Service Pack for DME.

Search

In the **Search** section of the **Connector settings** panel you define the scope of the search tasks of the current connector, and how the connector is to integrate with the collaboration system with regard to searching.

The settings available for each supported collaboration system are described separately below.

Domino search on page 305 

Exchange search on page 307 

Domino search

The following subtabs are available when setting up search capabilities on a Domino connector.

Global address book search

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Domino connector to let users search the Global Address Book.

❖ Enable GAB search

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for handling the Global Address Book search requests of the connected users.

❖ Server

In this field you can specify the directory server to use for the searches of the current type. The field must be completed.

❖ Search DN

You can minimize the search to a certain branch of the LDAP Server tree by specifying a DN (Distinguished Name) in this field.

❖ Find results that

In this field you can select when DME should return the result to the client: Either if the search term is found anywhere within the result (option **Contain client terms**) or if the search term is found at the beginning of the result (option **Start with client terms**). The latter option reduces the time it takes the collaboration server to return results to DME, but requires a more precise search on the part of the client.

❖ Max. number of results

In this field you can specify the maximum number of results to be returned by a search (default value: 25).

❖ Search timeout

In this field you can specify the maximum time (in seconds) a search is allowed to run on the collaboration system before timing out (default is 30 seconds).

❖ Follow referrals

One LDAP repository can refer to other LDAP repositories for information. This is especially the case for Active Directory environments. By default, DME allows this, but in some cases it

may not be desirable. If you disable this field, DME will only search for information in the LDAP specified above, and not follow any chain of LDAP referrals.

❖ **Domino wildcard search: Use like operator at**

In this field you can specify the number of characters that must be entered before DME performs a 'LIKE' (fuzzy) search. A LIKE search is able to find contacts even if some search criteria are misspelled. For example, a LIKE search will find contacts with similar names (e.g. Suzanna and Susanna), but will not attempt a LIKE search if the search term is short. Please note that this applies to Domino collaboration systems only.

❖ **Advanced: Custom query**

You may want to filter the results returned from the Global Address Book before they are returned to the user, for instance in order to remove service accounts and similar and only return names with valid e-mail addresses. To do this, enter a text string in this field: For a match to be returned as part of a Global Address Book search, the string entered in this field *must* exist in the LDAP/AD entry of the match. The string entered here is appended to the string in the **Search DN** field.

For instance, you could enter **O=Exchange** in this field to specify that in order to be returned as a match, the entry must have O (Organization) set to "Exchange". The syntax of the query string must follow standard LDAP Query. For examples, see the

Microsoft TechNet website

[http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa996205\(EXCHG.65\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa996205(EXCHG.65).aspx).

Rooms and resource search

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Domino connector to let users search for Rooms and Resources.

❖ **Enable R&R search**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for handling the Rooms and Resources search requests of the connected users.

❖ **Server**

In this field you can specify the directory server to use for the searches of the current type. The field must be completed.

❖ **Room DN**

In this field you can specify the distinguished name or names where rooms are found. Separate the list of DNs with semicolon ; or comma ,.

❖ Resource DN

In this field you can specify the distinguished name or names where resources are found. Separate the list of DNs with semicolon ; or comma ,.

❖ Max. number of results

In this field you can specify the maximum number of results to be returned by a search (default value: 25).

❖ Sorting locale

In this field you can specify the locale by which the list of rooms and resources should be sorted in the client. This especially applies to languages that use non-English characters. The sort order should be specified in the common ISO format: a language code as specified by ISO-639 and a country code as specified by ISO-3166, separated by an underscore. For instance, Danish is specified as `da_DK`; Canadian French as `fr_CA`.

For a list of language codes, look up ISO-639 on Wikipedia (for instance).

For a list of country codes, look up ISO-3166 on Wikipedia (for instance).

❖ Follow referrals

One LDAP repository can refer to other LDAP repositories for information. This is especially the case for Active Directory environments. By default, DME allows this, but in some cases it may not be desirable. If you disable this field, DME will only search for information in the LDAP specified above, and not follow any chain of LDAP referrals.

Free time search

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current connector to let users perform free time searches.

❖ Enable free time search

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for handling the free time search requests of the connected users.

Click **Save** to save the new settings.

Exchange search

The following subtabs are available when setting up search capabilities on an Exchange connector.

Global address book search

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Exchange connector to let users search the Global Address Book.

❖ **Enable GAB search**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for handling the Global Address Book search requests of the connected users.

❖ **Server**

In this field you can specify the directory server to use for the searches of the current type. The field must be completed.

❖ **AD domain**

Enter the AD domain in this field. This must be in *UPN suffix* format, which is usually the same as your DNS domain, for instance `your.domain.com` or something similar to `ad.domain.local`. Do not use the old Windows 2000 format such as `DOMAIN\`.

The login information from the DME client usually only consists of your user name, which is passed to the DME server. In order for the DME server and connector to successfully authenticate against the Active Directory or the Exchange server, it is necessary that the AD domain (UPN suffix) is appended to this user name (for example `your.domain.com`), giving the unique

UserPrincipalName of `username@your.domain.com`. You must enter the AD domain information in this field, even if you only use one domain.

❖ **Search DN**

You can minimize the search to a certain branch of the LDAP Server tree by specifying a DN (Distinguished Name) in this field. In a new installation, this field has a "default value":

```
DC=xxx;DC=yyy
```

For instance, if you want to search to cover the whole organization/domain called **documentation.ad.domain**, the Search DN should be:

```
DC=documentation,DC=ad,DC=domain
```

If you want to restrict the search to a specific Organizational Unit called "Denmark" or the default "Users" container, you can modify the search DN to:

```
OU=Denmark,DC=documentation,DC=ad,DC=domain OR
```

```
CN=Users,DC=documentation,DC=ad,DC=domain
```

You can separate the list of DNs with semicolon ; or comma ,.

❖ **Find results that**

In this field you can select when DME should return the result to the client: Either if the search term is found anywhere within the result (option **Contain client terms**) or if the search term is found at the beginning of the result (option **Start with client**

terms). The latter option reduces the time it takes the collaboration server to return results to DME, but requires a more precise search on the part of the client.

❖ **Max. number of results**

In this field you can specify the maximum number of results to be returned by a search (default value: 25).

❖ **Search timeout**

In this field you can specify the maximum time (in seconds) a search is allowed to run on the collaboration system before timing out (default is 30 seconds).

❖ **Follow referrals**

One LDAP repository can refer to other LDAP repositories for information. This is especially the case for Active Directory environments. By default, DME allows this, but in some cases it may not be desirable. If you disable this field, DME will only search for information in the LDAP specified above, and not follow any chain of LDAP referrals.

❖ **Advanced: Custom query**

You may want to filter the results returned from the Global Address Book before they are returned to the user, for instance in order to remove service accounts and similar and only return names with valid e-mail addresses. To do this, enter a text string in this field: For a match to be returned as part of a Global Address Book search, the string entered in this field *must* exist in the LDAP/AD entry of the match. The string entered here is appended to the string in the **Search DN** field.

For instance, you could enter **O=Exchange** in this field to specify that in order to be returned as a match, the entry must have O (Organization) set to "Exchange". The syntax of the query string must follow standard LDAP Query. For examples, see the

Microsoft TechNet website

[http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa996205\(EXCHG.65\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa996205(EXCHG.65).aspx).

Rooms and resource search

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current Exchange connector to let users search for Rooms and Resources.

Please note that for Exchange 2003, you need to add an Active Directory metadata field to those AD users that are actually rooms and resources. For more information, see the Exchange 2003 Integration guide at the **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center - **<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist>**.

❖ **Enable R&R search**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for handling the Rooms and Resources search requests of the connected users.

❖ **Server**

In this field you can specify the directory server to use for the searches of the current type. The field must be completed.

❖ **AD domain**

Enter the AD domain in this field. This must be in *UPN suffix* format, which is usually the same as your DNS domain, for instance `your.domain.com` or something similar to `ad.domain.local`. Do not use the old Windows 2000 format such as `DOMAIN\`.

The login information from the DME client usually only consists of your user name, which is passed to the DME server. In order for the DME server and connector to successfully authenticate against the Active Directory or the Exchange server, it is necessary that the AD domain (UPN suffix) is appended to this user name (for example `your.domain.com`), giving the unique

UserPrincipalName of `username@your.domain.com`. You must enter the AD domain information in this field, even if you only use one domain.

❖ **Room DN**

In this field you can specify the distinguished name or names where rooms are found. Separate the list of DNs with semicolon ; or comma ,.

❖ **Resource DN**

In this field you can specify the distinguished name or names where resources are found. Separate the list of DNs with semicolon ; or comma ,.

❖ **Max. number of results**

In this field you can specify the maximum number of results to be returned by a search (default value: 25).

❖ **Sorting locale**

In this field you can specify the locale by which the list of rooms and resources should be sorted in the client. This especially applies to languages that use non-English characters. The sort order should be specified in the common ISO format: a language code as specified by ISO-639 and a country code as specified by ISO-3166, separated by an underscore. For instance, Danish is specified as `da_DK`; Canadian French as `fr_CA`.

For a list of language codes, look up ISO-639 on Wikipedia (for instance).

For a list of country codes, look up ISO-3166 on Wikipedia (for instance).

❖ **Follow referrals**

One LDAP repository can refer to other LDAP repositories for information. This is especially the case for Active Directory environments. By default, DME allows this, but in some cases it may not be desirable. If you disable this field, DME will only search for information in the LDAP specified above, and not follow any chain of LDAP referrals.

Free time search

This subtab contains the required settings for enabling the current connector to let users perform free time searches.

❖ **Enable free time search**

If you set this switch to **ON**, the current connector will be used for handling the free time search requests of the connected users.

Click **Save** to save the new settings.

Log

In the **Log** section of the **Connector settings** panel you can see a subsection of the main server log. Only log entries pertaining to the current connector are shown. For more information, see **Log** on page 130.

Appendix A: Device settings

This appendix describes each device setting in the DME server. Some settings can only be changed at the server, and not on the client. Such settings are marked as **Server only** in this documentation.

For each setting, a small table will show which client platforms support the setting. For instance:

Supported by:     (supported by Android, Apple iOS, Symbian, and Windows Mobile).

Possible abbreviations are:

ALL = All platforms,  = Android,  = Apple iOS,  = Symbian,  = Windows Mobile,  = Windows Phone*),  = BlackBerry.

Note that if ALL settings in a group of settings are supported (or not supported) by the available platforms, the list of supporting platforms will not be shown for each setting in the group, but at the top of the page describing the settings.

You can also see if a setting is supported by a certain device by clicking the device in the **Devices** tab and viewing the **Settings** page. If the setting is listed for that device, then it is supported.

Some of the listed settings include an indication of **Recommended value**:. This value is what is recommended for a DME system of up to 500 users with medium load on the collaboration system. In most cases, this value is also the default value.

The settings are arranged in four groups: **E-mail and PIM**, **Preferences**, **Miscellaneous**, and **Cost alerts**. These groups are described in the following.

*) Please note that a DME client for Windows Phone is not yet available.

E-mail and PIM settings

This group of **Default settings** gives access to the following categories of settings, each shown in a separate table:

E-mail settings on page 313

E-mail folder settings on page 317

Calendar settings on page 319

Contacts settings on page 322

To-do settings on page 324

Notes settings on page 325

E-mail settings

❖ E-mail sync.

Supported by:    

If this setting is **On**, scheduled e-mail synchronization is enabled. This setting affects push mail, e-mail pull, manual synchronization, and scheduled sync. **Recommended value: On**. If you select **Off**, e-mails are never synchronized.

❖ Days back

Supported by:    

In this field you can specify how many days back the DME client should synchronize e-mails. By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 99 days, but you can change this. Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase.

❖ Play sound on new e-mail

Supported by:    

If this setting is **On**, the device will play a sound every time a new e-mail arrives in the DME client. On most devices, you can specify which sound to play in the e-mail settings on the client.

Recommended value: On.

❖ Send immediately

Supported by:    

In this field you can choose if new e-mails and meeting invitations composed on the DME client should be synchronized to the server immediately when the user presses **Send**. The field has three options:

❖ No

New e-mails are not sent immediately, but are queued in the device **Outbox** for the next scheduled or manual synchronization.

❖ Send & Receive

When the user presses **Send**, a full e-mail synchronization is initiated.

❖ Send only

When the user presses **Send**, the new e-mail is synchronized to the server, but the server is not queried for new e-mail or

system information. This significantly reduces the load on the server and the time it takes to synchronize.

Recommended value: **Send only**.

❖ **Delete only locally**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, e-mails deleted on the DME client are not deleted from the collaboration system. **Recommended value:** **On**. If this setting is **Off**, e-mails deleted in a DME mailbox folder on the device will also be deleted on the collaboration system.

❖ **E-mail pull**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, client-initiated (pull) synchronization of e-mail is enabled. This corresponds to the **Scheduled sync. settings** on page 338, but is independent of the synchronization schedule set up on the DME server. **Recommended value:** **Off**. If **On**, a Pull synchronization of your e-mail only is defined, based on the following settings:

❖ **Pull interval (min.)**

In this field you can specify how often the pull should be executed. By default, the permitted range is from 10 to 120 minutes, but you can change this. Note that the load on the DME server and the drain on the device batteries will increase, the lower a number you specify.

❖ **Start time (hours:minutes)**

In this field you can specify the time of day at which e-mail pull should start. You can for instance choose to start checking for new mail at 8 in the morning.

❖ **End time (hours:minutes)**

In this field you can specify the time of day at which e-mail pull should stop. You can for instance choose to not check for new mail after your regular work hours. Use together with the field **Start time** and **Run on weekends**.

❖ **Run on weekends**

If this setting is **On**, the client will pull for e-mails in the weekend also, during the interval specified by the **Start time** and **End time** settings.

❖ **E-mail signature**

Supported by: 

In this field you can enter a text which should be used as an e-mail signature on the client. You can create a separate signature for different groups in the system, so that for instance separate

departments have separate signatures. The signature is inserted below the text of e-mails that you write on the client, but above any existing text (if you reply to or forward an e-mail). See also Functions in the DME Administration Reference.

❖ **Alert volume**

Supported by:  

In this field you can specify the volume of the alerts the user hears when a new e-mail arrives, in percent of full volume.

❖ **Alerts start/end**

Supported by:   

In this field you can specify the time of day from which you want the user to begin and stop receiving audible alerts when a new e-mail arrives.

❖ **Vibrating alert**

Supported by:   

If this setting is **On**, the device vibrator will be activated when a new mail is received by DME.

❖ **Font size**

Supported by: 

In this field you can choose the font size used in the DME client. Choose between **Small**, **Normal** (default), and **Large**.

❖ **Call privacy**

Supported by: 

In this field you can specify whether the device should send the caller ID when calling a number directly from an e-mail.

❖ **Phone default:** Use the settings from the device to determine whether to use the network operator's settings, send, or hide the user's number.

❖ **Always ask:** Ask the user whether or not to send the caller ID.

❖ **Send my number:** Send caller ID whenever possible.

Hide my number: Never send caller ID.

❖ **Show received time**

Supported by:  

If this setting is **On**, a column is added to the mailbox folders with the date on which the e-mail was sent or received.

❖ **Quick reply type**

Supported by: 

In this field you can specify the function of the option **Quick reply** in an open e-mail. You can choose among the following options:

1. To sender with history
2. To sender without history
3. To all with history
4. To all without history

When the user selects **Quick reply** in an open e-mail, DME will perform the function specified in this field.

❖ **Mark as read when shown in preview pane**

Supported by: 

On the Apple iPad, the e-mail interface in horizontal position is a 3-pane view - a folders list, a mailbox folder, and a preview pane. If this setting is **On**, showing an e-mail in the Preview pane will mark the e-mail as read. If this setting is **Off**, an e-mail is only marked as read when the user double-taps to open it.

❖ **Download external resources**

Supported by:  

If this setting is **On**, users are permitted to download external images when viewing HTML e-mails. Downloading external images can involve privacy issues, but the user will always have the choice not to download them. Images that are embedded within the e-mail constitute no security or privacy risk, and are always downloaded to the client.

Furthermore, some read-only settings are listed. These settings can only be seen per device, and cannot be changed from the web interface:

❖ **User e-mail, User names**

Supported by:    

This information is used by the client to filter out the user's own name and e-mail address when choosing **Reply to All** in an e-mail. If the client did not have this information, the user would include himself or herself when making a reply to all.

❖ **OOF information**

Supported by:    

This information is retrieved from the collaboration system and sent to the client when the user enters the **Out of Office** screen. From there, the user can enable or disable the OOF message, change the message, and set other start and end dates.

E-mail folder settings

❖ E-mail folder sync.

Supported by: 

As of DME 3.6, the **E-mail folder sync.** setting is *always enabled*, and it has been removed from the **Settings** page.

With e-mail folder synchronization you can synchronize e-mails from any folder in your collaboration system mailbox, instead of only from the Inbox. As for the Inbox, you can limit the number of synchronized e-mails in folders by specifying a maximum age of the e-mails to be synchronized. This is specified as a default number of days for all e-mail folders, but you can allow the number to be changed on a per-folder basis on the clients. Furthermore, you can specify if you want to receive notification of new e-mails in sub-folders - for instance, if a mailbox rule on the collaboration system automatically moves incoming e-mails to sub-folders, you will not receive a notification unless you choose to. See also **Allow individual settings** below.

If this field is set to **Enabled**, scheduled synchronization of folders on your collaboration system is enabled. When enabled, the folder tree structure will be made part of the synchronization of e-mails. Note that the synchronization of the folder tree structure is one-way; the folder structure on the device will always be updated to reflect the collaboration system, as it is not possible to create or delete folders on the device.

If you use Lotus Domino as your collaboration system, please note the following:

1. In Domino, it is possible to have the same document (e-mail) located in multiple folders - it is essentially the same document, and therefore it has the same ID in the collaboration system. In DME, an e-mail is only shown in one location in the mailbox folder tree, even if it has been copied to multiple folders in Domino.
2. S/MIME messages sent from the device will not be deleted from the **Sent** mailbox folder on the client even if it is removed in Lotus Notes. It must be removed manually from the client if desired.
3. In Lotus Notes, you cannot manually move an e-mail to the **Sent** mailbox folder. This is possible in the DME client (even if not recommended).

Furthermore, if you send an e-mail from the device, the e-mail is moved to the **Sent** mailbox folder on the device, even if the collaboration system is for some reason unable to send it after synchronization.

❖ Days back in folder (default value)

In this field you can specify how many days back the DME client should synchronize e-mails in sub-folders, when this is enabled. By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 99 days, but you can change this. Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase. Note also that this number may be overwritten on a per-folder basis on the device, if the field **Allow individual settings** below is selected. **Recommended value:** 1.

❖ **Sync. e-mail in folder (default value)**

If this setting is **On**, synchronization of the e-mails residing in folders is enabled. When this setting is **On**, the actual e-mails in the folders are included in the synchronization. If this setting is **Off**, e-mails in folders are never synchronized, only the folder structure. Note that this setting may be overwritten on a per-folder basis on the device, if the field **Allow individual settings** below is also **On**.

❖ **Scan folder for changes (default value)**

If this setting is **On**, folders are scanned for the arrival of new e-mails on the server. If folder scan is not enabled, users will not receive notification of new e-mails in sub-folders on the collaboration system. It is recommended to let the individual clients determine which folders it is necessary to receive notifications for. See **Allow individual settings** below.

❖ **Maximum folders on device**

In this field you can specify the maximum number of folders to be synchronized to the clients. Symbian devices cannot handle large numbers of folders (more than about 300-500), and they will crash if this number is exceeded. The actual number of possible folders differs from device to device, but is usually somewhat higher than 300.

There is no way to specify that an "unlimited number" of folders is allowed. To work around this, you can enter a large number (for instance 10,000) in this field.

Please note that your collaboration system determines which folders are synchronized to the client if you have more folders than specified in this field. IBM Domino will synchronize as many entire sub-folder "trees" (a "tree" being a root folder and all folders contained in it, at all levels) as possible, in alphabetical order by root folder, until the folder limit is reached. Microsoft Exchange will synchronize folders by age - that is, the oldest folders up until the folder limit are synchronized to the devices.

If you set this field to **0** (zero), the folder structure will not be available for searching for e-mails from the client either.

❖ **Allow individual settings**

If this setting is **On**, the DME users can modify the e-mail folder synchronization settings on a per-folder basis. From the server, you can only allow or disallow the synchronization of e-mail in *all* sub-folders. To set up e-mail folder support in the most efficient way, it is recommended that you *enable* e-mail folder synchronization, *disable* the synchronization of e-mails in folders, and *enable* this field to allow the users to pick which folders they need to keep synchronized.

Please note that if you change this setting from **On** to **Off**, all folders with individual settings on a device will be overwritten with the default settings on the client devices. Note also that if a device user chooses to import folders, the same thing happens - all individual folder settings will be overwritten, and the user must redefine individual settings on a per-folder basis. Furthermore, the client contains a function called **Apply to all folders now**. When that function is selected, the settings for **Days back** and **Sync. e-mail in folder** in the **Settings > Folders** window/tab are propagated to all e-mail folders on the client.

Calendar settings

❖ **Calendar sync.**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, scheduled calendar synchronization is enabled.

Recommended value: **On**.

❖ **Days back**

In this field you can specify how many days back the DME client should synchronize calendar entries. By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 999 days, but you can change this. Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase. **Recommended value:** **7**.

❖ **Days forward**

In this field you can specify how many days ahead the DME client should synchronize calendar entries (the calendar *synchronization window*). By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 999 days, but you can change this. Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase.



Note that the maximum number of days that Microsoft Exchange allows a user to synchronize is 729 days. This synchronization window is calculated from the date furthest

back in time. This means that if the user sets a very high value for **Days back**, for instance 700 days, DME is only able to synchronize calendar entries 29 days ahead in time, regardless of the setting in the field **Days forward**. **Note that** if you specify a span greater than 729 days, no calendar events will be synchronized at all, and no error is logged about this.

❖ **Calendar pull**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, client-initiated (pull) synchronization of calendar items is enabled. This corresponds to the **Scheduled sync. settings** on page 338, but is independent of the synchronization schedule set up on the DME server.

Recommended value: **Off**.

If **On**, a Pull synchronization of your calendar only is defined, based on the following settings:

❖ **Pull interval (min.)**

In this field you can specify how often the pull should be executed. By default, the permitted range is from 10 to 120 minutes, but you can change this. Note that the load on the DME server and the drain on the device batteries will increase, the lower a number you specify.

❖ **Start time (hours:minutes)**

In this field you can specify the time of day at which calendar pull should start. You can for instance choose to start checking for calendar updates at 8 in the morning. Use together with the fields **End time** and **Run on weekends**.

❖ **End time (hours:minutes)**

In this field you can specify the time of day at which calendar pull should stop. You can for instance choose to not check for new calendar updates after your regular work hours. Use together with the fields **Start time** and **Run on weekends**.

❖ **Run on weekends**

If this setting is **On**, the client will pull for calendar updates in the weekend also, except during the interval specified by the **Start time** and **End time** settings.

❖ **Calendar mode**

Supported by: 

In this field you can choose the level of interaction between the device native calendar and the DME calendar. **Open** means full integration. **Mixed*)** means that the meeting times are shown in the native calendar, but you must open DME to see the title,

description and other information. **Secure** means that there is no integration between the native and the DME calendar.

Notes for **Apple iOS** clients:

- ❖ On the client, the choice between **Open** and **Secure** mode is made by the Calendar setting **Copy to local**. If this setting is **On** on the client (**Open** mode), DME creates a local calendar called **DME**, and shows calendar entries from DME in that local calendar. The entries from DME are exported (*one-way sync.*) to the device calendar.

In this mode, appointments in the local **DME** calendar must be created/updated/deleted from within the secure DME calendar in order for the changes to be reflected in the collaboration system.

- ❖ Note that when set on the server, the **Calendar mode** setting is interpreted differently on the iOS platform. The administrator can *allow* **Open** mode, not *enforce* it:

On server, **Calendar mode** is set to:

Secure, not locked

This is interpreted by the client as:

On new installations, **Secure** is set on the client, but the user may change this to **Open**.

If the client is already set to **Open**, it will NOT be switched to **Secure**.

Set to: **Secure, locked**

Interpreted as: The client is set to **Secure**, regardless of previous setting.

Set to: **Open (locked or not locked)**

Interpreted as: On new installations, **Open** is set on the client, but the user may change this to **Secure**.

If the client is already set to **Secure**, it will NOT be switched to **Open**.

For more information, see the Client User Guide for your platform.

*) Please note that **Mixed** mode is only available for clients that are still running a 3.5-level client. **Mixed** mode was removed in 3.6. If selected, a 3.6 client will interpret this as **Secure** mode.

❖ **Alarm sound**

Supported by:  

If this setting is **On**, the device will sound an alarm when the calendar shows a notification for an upcoming event.

❖ **Alarm vibration**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the device will vibrate when the calendar shows a notification for an upcoming event.

❖ **Alarm flashing LED light**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the device will flash the LED light when the calendar shows a notification for an upcoming event.

❖ **Show device events in DME**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, events in the device calendar on iOS devices will also be shown in the secure DME calendar. The events will be shown in a different color from the events that are synchronized by DME. This applies regardless of calendar mode.

Contacts settings

With these settings, you determine the extent to which you want users to synchronize contacts. For an important note about "Suggested Contacts" in Outlook 2007 and 2010, see below.

❖ **Contacts sync.**

Supported by:   

If this setting is **On**, contact synchronization is enabled.

❖ **Device address book**

Supported by:   

In this field you can choose the level of interaction between the native address book on the device and the DME Address Book.

Copy all fields: All information synchronized between the DME Address Book and the collaboration system is reflected in the device address book. Changes, deletions, and additions made in the device address book are copied to the DME Address Book and synchronized back to the collaboration system. This is also called **Open mode**.

Copy name and phone numbers: All contacts synchronized between the DME Address Book and the collaboration system are copied to the device address book. However, only name and phone numbers are shown - e-mail addresses and other information are only kept in the DME Address Book. If the user edits the name or phone number in the device address book, this information will be synchronized to the DME Address Book. However, if any other information is added to the native contacts, this information will be removed again by DME. In other words,

only DME should be used for maintaining contacts. This is also called **Mixed mode**.

Do not use: There is no interaction between the device address book and the DME Address Book. This option should be chosen if you want users to keep private contacts completely separate from corporate contacts, whether for reasons of security or work/life balance. This lets the users keep business contacts in DME in sync with the collaboration system, while letting them synchronize personal contacts with other applications. This is also called **Secure mode**.

Notes for Apple iOS and Windows Phone clients:

- ❖ Mixed mode is not supported by iOS client 3.6.3 and above. If set, mixed mode will be interpreted as **Secure**.
- ❖ On the client, the choice between **Open** and **Secure** mode is made by the Contacts setting **Sync with local**. If this setting is **On** on the client (**Open** mode), DME creates a local contacts group called **DME**, and shows contacts from DME in that local group. The contacts can be maintained either in DME or in the device address book.
- ❖ Note that when set on the server, the **Device address book mode** setting is interpreted differently on the iOS platform. The administrator can *allow* **Open** mode, not *enforce* it:

On server, **Device address book** is set to:

Secure, not locked

This is interpreted by the client as:

On new installations, **Secure** is set on the client, but the user may change this to **Open**.

If the client is already set to **Open**, it will NOT be switched to **Secure**.

On server, **Device address book** is set to:

Secure, locked

Interpreted as: The client is set to **Secure**, regardless of previous setting.

On server, **Device address book** is set to:

Open (locked or not locked)

Interpreted as: On new installations, **Open** is set on the client, but the user may change this to **Secure**.

If the client is already set to **Secure**, it will NOT be switched to **Open**.

For more information, see the Client User Guide for your platform.

Suggested Contacts



Outlook 2007 and 2010 have a concept of **Suggested Contacts**. This is a folder called **Suggested Contacts**, which is a list of everyone you have e-mailed and everyone who has e-mailed to you, and who is not already in your **Contacts** folder.

In order to prevent these "semi-contacts" to be synchronized as DME contacts, the following workaround has been implemented as of DME 3.6 SP2:

In Outlook 2007/2010, there is by default one **Contacts** folder. However, you can freely create contacts folders almost anywhere in the Outlook folder structure, for instance in the root folder or inside a mail folder. But when you click the **Contacts** folder, you always see all contacts folders as if they are placed below (within) the main contacts folder. By right-clicking a contacts folder in Outlook and selecting **Properties**, you can see where the folder is truly located.

This is important, because in order to effectively filter out **Suggested contacts** (and **Deleted contacts** too), DME will not include a contacts folder in the contacts sync., *if it is located in the root folder* - except the main **Contacts** folder, of course. So if a user has created a contacts folder in Outlook 2010 or 2007, and now wonders why the contents are not synced to his or her device, have the user check if the folder is located in the root by checking its **Properties** in Outlook. If it is in the root, have the user move it into a mail folder (this works, but is not recommended) or the main **Contacts** folder (recommended).

To-do settings

For a to-do to be included in the synchronization from the collaboration system to the device, the following criteria must be fulfilled by the to-do on the collaboration system:

1. A due date has not been specified, and it has not been marked as complete (Domino only).
2. No start date or end date is specified, and the task is not marked as complete.
3. Or the to-do is overdue and not marked as complete, regardless of the values in the starting date and due date fields.
4. Regardless of the above, a to-do is included if either the starting date or the due date is within the time span set in To-do settings (the *sync window*).

Examples:

The sync window is set to 10 days in To-do settings, and today is April 15th.

1. A to-do on the collaboration system was created on March 23rd with a due date on April 17th. This to-do is synchronized to the device because the due date is within the 10-day sync window specified in the To-do settings.
2. Another to-do was created on March 3rd, with a due date of March 16th. It has not been marked as completed. This to-do is synchronized to the device. When it is marked as completed, it will no longer appear on the device.

Settings:

❖ To-do sync.

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, synchronization of to-dos (tasks) is enabled. This setting affects push notification, manual synchronization, and scheduled sync.

If you select **Off**, to-dos are never synchronized.

❖ Days back

In this field you can specify how many days back the DME client should synchronize to-do entries. By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 99 days, but you can change this. The days are calculated from the starting or due date of the to-do (if one of the dates is within the specified range). Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase. **Recommended value: 7.**

❖ Days forward

In this field you can specify how many days ahead the DME client should synchronize to-do entries. By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 999 days, but you can change this. The days are calculated from the starting or due date of the to-do (if one of the dates is within the specified range). Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase. **Recommended value: 30.**

Notes settings



Notes (called *Journals* before Domino version 8.5) are a Lotus Domino feature. With DME, you can view, edit, and update your Domino Notebook notes in your DME client.

Please note that notebook synchronization requires a special license. For more information, see **E-mail and PIM** on page 285 in the Connector setup.

❖ **Notes sync.**

Supported by:  



If this setting is **On**, synchronization of Domino notes (journals) is enabled.

❖ **Days back**

In this field you can specify how many days back the DME client should synchronize notebook entries. By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 99 days, but you can change this. Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase.

❖ **Days forward**

In this field you can specify how many days ahead the DME client should synchronize Domino notes (the notebook *synchronization window*). By default, the permitted range is from 0 to 999 days, but you can change this. Note that with higher numbers, the load on the DME server will increase.

Preferences settings

This group of **Default settings** gives access to the following categories of settings, each shown in a separate table:

General settings on page 326

Security settings on page 331

Scheduled sync. settings on page 338

Adaptive Push settings on page 339

Android security settings on page 341

General settings

❖ **Server path**

Supported by: **ALL**

The server path is the URL by which the DME client can reach the DME server. This is the external DME server address, including the port number. `/nam_xm1` must *not* be added to it (this was a

requirement in previous versions of DME). This value must be correct, otherwise your DME clients will not be able to connect to the DME server after the first synchronization. It is highly recommend to lock this setting so users cannot change it. This setting is locked on the devices by default. The server path is usually provisioned to the device along with the client software using OMA DM or SMS push. See also **Send server path** on page 63.

❖ **Phone number**

Supported by: **ALL** (if they have a phone module)

This is the phone number for the device. This value naturally cannot be set in the default or group settings on the server. It is either entered by the user when installing the DME client or later by entering the number in **Settings** on the device, or it is registered by the server during OMA DM or SMS push installation of the DME client and subsequently synchronized to the client.

If no phone number is registered for the device in the client, the client will send an SMS to the server's SMS modem, which responds with the number from which the SMS was sent. This number is then synchronized to the server at the next sysinfo sync. The phone number must be set in order for SMS-based features, including DM actions, to work correctly on the device. Please note that for the device to discover its own phone number, the SMS modem phone number must be registered on the server (**Server > Server configuration > SMS modem**). See **SMS modem** on page 186 for more information.

❖ **Launch on startup**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the DME client will launch immediately after start or reboot of the device. **Recommended value:** **On**.

If **Lock device when logout** in the **Security** group of settings is enabled, this setting must be enabled also (does not apply to the Basic MDM client).

❖ **GPRS timeout**

Supported by: 

By default, the GPRS connection times out after 1 minute for cost reasons, but you can choose to never close the connection.

Recommended value: **After 1 minute** to reduce data costs and save battery lifetime. This setting does not affect network push, which runs on a different connection.

❖ **Log traffic (server only)**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the client logs incoming and outgoing traffic for use in Traffic statistics (see **Analyzer** on page 155). If **On**, make sure this feature does not conflict with local data protections laws.

❖ **Background sync. when roaming**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **Off**, the device will not perform background synchronization when using a roaming network. Background synchronization covers scheduled synchronization, e-mail and PIM pull, and SMS push notification. If **Manual sync. when roaming** is **On**, the user will still be able to synchronize manually.

The roaming status of the device is stored on the server. The first background sync performed while roaming will therefore be carried out normally, but will also inform the server that the device is roaming, effectively cutting the device off from further background synchronization. This means that the server is unable to detect that the device is back in the home network, unless the user performs a manual sync. When using this cost-saving feature, it is important to instruct the users to perform a manual sync when they return to their home network.

❖ **Manual sync. when roaming**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **Off**, the user will not be able to perform manual synchronization when using a roaming network. When roaming, a user trying to perform a manual sync will see a message saying that synchronization is not allowed when roaming.

The device uses information from the SIM card when checking if it is currently roaming. As soon as the phone is no longer roaming, the user is able to synchronize manually again. Performing a manual sync will also inform the server that the device is no longer roaming, which is necessary for re-enabling background sync. See also **Background sync. when roaming**.

❖ **Assist switch to preferred operator (server only)**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the client will help the user switch to an operator among the choices made in the list of mobile operators. This only applies to Windows Mobile clients. If this setting is **Off**, or on other platforms than Windows Mobile, it is up to the user to switch to the preferred operator. See Preferred operators for more information.

❖ **Desktop "Close" key action**

Supported by: 

In this field you can specify the action of the secondary device action button when the Desktop is shown. The following choices are available:

- ❖ **Lock:** This is the default setting. Pressing the secondary action button locks DME and shows the Login screen.
- ❖ **Hide:** If you select this option, pressing the secondary action button will hide (minimize) DME without logging out the user.

❖ **Login "Close" key action**

Supported by: 

In this field you can specify the action of the device action buttons when the Login screen is shown. This setting does not apply to iPhone. The following choices are available:

- ❖ **Exit:** This is the default setting. Pressing the secondary action button exits the DME application.
- ❖ **Hide:** If you select this option, pressing the secondary action button will hide (minimize) DME without logging out the user. Note that by selecting this, both the **Exit** action and the **Login** action are moved to the primary action button, which is then called **Options**.

❖ **E-mail key**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the user can select the DME application as the program to be launched when he or she presses the **Mail** one-touch button  on the Symbian device.

❖ **Homescreen integration**

Supported by: 

With this setting, you can choose to show a notification with the number of new e-mails in DME. The notification pops up on the Nokia homescreen when a new e-mail arrives. When the user clicks the navigation key (or taps the notification area - 5th edition only), DME opens or is brought to the foreground. If the user presses any other key (or taps outside the notification area - 5th edition only), the notification disappears, and the user can continue working with the phone.

You can choose among the following options:

- ❖ **Enabled:** The notification is shown for approx. 30 seconds every time the user goes to the homescreen. This means that the notification will reappear whenever the user navigates to the homescreen from another application; when the phone wakes from screensaver mode; or when the user presses any button after the notification has disappeared by itself (that is, after 30 seconds). The notification will be removed when the user opens DME and reads any of the new e-mails.

- ❖ **Show once:** The notification only appears once - when the user clicks (or taps) something to make the notification disappear, it will not reappear until a new e-mail arrives.
- ❖ **Disable:** The homescreen integration feature is disabled.
- ❖ **1.-3. access point**
Supported by: 
 In this field you can specify the primary, secondary, and tertiary access point used to connect to the DME server. It is recommended to enter the fastest and/or cheapest access point as the primary access point, such as WLAN, and let it fall back to GPRS as a secondary access point. Note that if you fill in these fields, you must be certain that all the Symbian devices that use this property have the access points in question installed.
- ❖ **Run upon startup/resume**
Supported by: 
 With this setting you can specify which action the DME client for iOS (3.5.6 and later) should perform after launch or after resuming from minimized state. To provide the fastest check for server commands after startup of the client, set this to **E-mail sync..** This requires that the notification framework has a schedule for e-mail scans - otherwise the option **System info sync.** is faster. Please note that in version 3.5.6 of the DME client, the value **None** is interpreted as a **System info sync..**
- ❖ **Action to perform on client upon initial import**
Supported by: 
 The first time a feature is enabled for a client device, this action will be performed. For instance, if you enabled calendar sync. on a device where this was previously disabled, then the action selected here will be run for the client's calendar the first time the client connects to DME. Note that the client user will not be asked about this - therefore, you should use the **Wipe** option with caution!
 - ❖ **Wipe:** The first time the client connects to synchronize a resource of a certain type (calendar, contacts, etc.), the client is commanded to *wipe* any existing data on the device. For instance, if you synchronize contacts for the first time, all your existing contacts will be deleted first. The user is not asked about this.
 Use this option with care. You can use the **Wipe** mode if you want to make sure that only company data is stored on the phone.
 - ❖ **Merge:** The first time the client connects to synchronize a resource of a certain type (calendar, contacts, etc.), the client

is commanded to *merge* any existing data on the device. For instance, if you synchronize contacts for the first time, all your existing contacts on the device will be sent to the server as *creates* first. The server will then detect and remove duplicates, and then synchronize the result. The user is not asked about this.

This is the recommended setting.

Note that the device will always wipe or merge the available data store. In the case of Calendar and Contacts, personal items will not be affected if the device uses **Secure mode**.

❖ **Allow HTML content**

Supported by:  

If this setting is **On**, you can view e-mails in full HTML on supported clients (version 4.1 and above). The advantage of HTML is of course that the users receive richer content on their devices. The drawback is added data transfer volume. DME strips tags that may present a risk from the HTML, such as `script` tags, `embed` tags, etc.



Please note that on Domino, this feature only works when running Notes session mode. Furthermore, the feature works best when Domino 8.5.3 Feature Pack 1 or 2 is installed on the DME connector (64 bit). Feature pack 3 interprets HTML differently, and this will yield unexpected results on the device.

It is not possible to create HTML e-mails on the client. Also, replying to or forwarding an HTML e-mail on the client will convert the e-mail back to text format.

Security settings

❖ **Logout timeout (min.)**

Supported by: **ALL**

In this field you can specify the number of minutes after which the DME client automatically logs the user out of the DME client. By default, the permitted range for superusers is from 0 (never) to 600 minutes, but you can change this. **Recommended value: 10.**

Note that on Android, Symbian, and Windows Mobile, the DME logout timer starts when the screen times out. On iOS, the timer starts after any action in DME.

❖ **Action on SIM card change**

Supported by:   

In this field you can choose how the DME client should react when a new SIM card is inserted into the device. A user may need more than one SIM card, for instance if the user travels and uses local prepaid SIM cards, or if the user switches between a private and a company SIM card. However, simply allowing SIM card changes poses a security threat, as a malevolent user might steal a device and insert his own SIM card in order to (potentially) gain access to files and other data on the device. Therefore you can choose among three options in this field:

❖ **None**

If you select this option, the DME client will do nothing when a user changes SIM cards. This is usually not recommended for the above stated reasons.

❖ **Lock device (Note: limited support by Android or Apple iOS devices or Basic MDM clients)**

When the DME client detects the SIM card change, the client automatically switches to **Lock device** mode (Shell protection). The user now has to log in to DME in order to use the device. It is recommended to use the option **Limit on password attempts** to deter malevolent users from trying to guess a password. Just before logging in, DME checks if the current SIM card has been used before. If it has not, the user is prompted to enter the phone number for the new SIM card. This phone number and the SIM card identification number are stored and thus recognized the next time the SIM card is inserted. A maximum of 62 pairs of phone numbers and SIM card IDs can be stored in this way. This option does not apply to the Basic MDM client.

As of DME version 3.6.x, Apple iOS and Android devices have limited support for this feature: they are able to detect a change of SIM cards *if the new SIM card is from a different operator*, and then lock the device.

❖ **Flush data**

If you select this option, the DME client will flush (delete all data from) the device if another SIM card is inserted. The device will be flushed as if you had pushed the **Destroy all device data** command to the device (see **Delete device data** on page 58).

As of DME version 3.6.x, Apple iOS and Android devices have limited support for this feature: they are able to detect a change of SIM cards *if the new SIM card is from a different operator*, and then flush the device.

On Java devices, only devices running Java Platform 7.2 or above support this functionality as described above. Devices running

older versions of the Java Platform can only detect a change of SIM cards if the new SIM card is from a different operator.

This setting was removed from DME for Apple iOS version 4.0.

❖ **Lock Messaging**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the device messaging (SMS/MMS) application can only be opened if you are logged in to the DME client.

❖ **Lock Calendar**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the device calendar can only be opened if you are logged in to the DME client. On Symbian devices, this is the Calendar application. On Windows Mobile, this is the Outlook Pocket PC, which also locks Contacts and To-dos (Tasks).

❖ **Lock Contacts**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the device contacts application can only be opened if you are logged in to the DME client. On Symbian devices, this is the Contacts application. On Windows Mobile, this is the Outlook Pocket PC, which also locks Calendar and To-dos (Tasks).

❖ **Lock To-do**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the device to-do application can only be opened if you are logged in to the DME client. On Symbian devices, this is the To-Do application. On Windows Mobile, this is the Outlook Pocket PC (Tasks), which also locks Calendar and Contacts.

❖ **Lock device on logout**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the device will be locked when you log out of the DME client. This is also known as *shell protection*. *Locked* means that you are only able to receive voice calls, make emergency calls, receive (but not view) text messages, and respond to calendar alarm messages. If this setting is enabled, you must enable the setting **Launch on startup** in the **General** group of settings also. This way, this level of security is maintained even if the device is rebooted. Furthermore, the DME client will automatically restart if it should crash.

❖ **Show username on logout** (server only)

Supported by: **ALL**

If this setting is **On**, the user name remains visible in the **Login** screen after the user has logged out.

❖ **Limit on password attempts (0 = no limit)** (server only)

Supported by: **ALL**

In this field you can specify the permitted number of login attempts to the DME client. "0" is no limit. Note that when the limit is reached, the DME client will flush (*delete all data from*) the device. The device will be flushed as if you had pushed the **Destroy all device data** command to the device (see **Delete device data** on page 58). By default, the permitted range for superusers is from 0 (none) to 10 attempts, but you can change this.

❖ **Disable 'Send' button in attachments view** (server only)

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the user is not permitted to forward attachments on the device by Bluetooth, Infrared etc.

Apple iOS devices: If this option is **Off** (meaning that the **Send** button *is enabled* in the attachments view), a user can export and print attachments from iOS devices.

❖ **Allow attachment download** (server only)

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the user is permitted to download attachments in e-mails, meeting invitations, to-dos, and notes.

❖ **Allow attachment upload** (server only)

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the user is permitted to add attachments from the device in e-mails and other items. The maximum file size is by default **16 MB**, but this limit may be changed in the **Data** on page 183 section of the **Server configuration** page.

❖ **Prevent uninstall of DME Client** (server only)

Supported by: 

This setting controls if the user is able to uninstall the DME client from his or her device.

Disabled: The user can freely remove the DME client from the device.

Enabled - Unless when logged in: The user can only uninstall the client, if the user is able to log in to the DME client and thus prove that he or she is a registered user of the system. Note that this option is not available for DME Basic MDM clients.

Enabled - Always: The user is never able to uninstall the DME client.

❖ **Allow password change** (server only)

Supported by: **ALL**

If this setting is **On**, the user is permitted to use the **Change password** functionality in the client. Note that to use this feature, certain requirements must be fulfilled.

- ❖ LDAPS is required. GCS does not support users changing password using the DME client.
- ❖ **Domino**: Users need write access to the LDAP. See the **Domino Integration Guide** for details.
- ❖ **Exchange**: You need secure access to the AD, using the LDAPS protocol. Furthermore, to allow users to change passwords when the password has expired (and not only during the grace period), you must enter an administrator user name and password on the Exchange connector. See **Authentication** on page 283.

❖ **Days before to show expiration warning** (server only)

Supported by: **ALL**



In this field you can specify the number of days a user should be warned that he must change his network password. On the client, the user can then choose the **Change password** function and change the password remotely, making direct access to the network unnecessary. **Note**: This is only supported on systems based on Active Directory, using LDAP or LDAPS. By default, the permitted range for superusers is from 0 (never) to 30 days, but you can change this.

❖ **Allow global address book search** (server only)

Supported by:   

If this setting is **On**, the user is permitted to perform searches in the global address book.

❖ **Allow fingerprint authentication**

Supported by:  

Your company security rules may require users to enter a long, complex password with a mix of letters and special symbols to gain access to the network and collaboration system. This may be easy to enter on a full PC keyboard, but can be difficult to enter using your phone keypad.

Instead of using the collaboration system password for logging in, it is possible to substitute the password for a fingerprint scan on the device. If this setting is **On**, users are allowed to use fingerprints to log in.

iOS: This requires an iOS device that supports Touch ID.

After 3 faulty scans, the Unlock method is changed back to Password, and the user has to change this in settings afterwards.

Android: Requires an Android 6 device with a fingerprint scanner. Please note that some devices do not support Android 6 fingerprint, and on these devices, the fingerprint scanner can only be used to unlock the device itself. For example: Samsung S5 does not support this, but newer Samsung phones, like S6 and S7, and the Samsung S2 tablet does.

After 5 faulty scans, the fingerprint scanner will be disabled for 30 seconds, and the user will not be able to use the fingerprint scanner in these 30 seconds.

Please note that:

- ❖ The network password is kept in memory, so if the device shuts down the DME client in the background, it is necessary for the user to log in again using username and password.
- ❖ The lock out time for fingerprint is exactly the same as for swipe, meaning that the user has to use password to login when lock out period has expired.

❖ **Allow use of PIN code/swipe**

Supported by: **ALL**

It is also possible to substitute the password for an *unlock pattern* (previously called *swipe code*) of your choice - a pattern drawn with the finger across a set of tiles shown on the screen. This is possible on Android, Apple iOS, Windows Phone, Windows Mobile, and Symbian 3rd Edition devices.

On Symbian S60 and Windows Mobile devices, you can define a *PIN code* instead.

As an administrator, you can set the minimum number of tiles required for the unlock pattern (or the minimum length of the PIN code). See **PIN code/swipe minimum length** below. In order to maintain high security on the device, the following special conditions apply when using the unlock pattern/PIN code instead of the regular password:

- ❖ The unlock pattern/PIN code defined by the user will expire after some time, which you specify (see below).
- ❖ If the user attempts to log in using his or her unlock pattern, but he or she enters the code wrongly *twice*, the user must use his or her regular password for the next attempt to log in. (For PIN codes only one attempt is allowed). The unlock pattern/PIN code is *not* invalidated, however, and can be used again after the user has logged in using the regular password.

Note on security on iOS, Android, and Windows Phone

Using a regular password offers the best protection of your data. Due to the multitasking limitations inherent in the Apple iOS, Android and Windows Phone platforms, DME is typically shut down more frequently than DME on other platforms. If you use the regular password method for logging in, the network password is only kept in memory, and not stored when DME shuts down. Using the swipe feature, your encrypted password will remain in the device storage, *even when DME is shut down*. As the key protecting the encryption of the password can be derived from the relatively small number of possible unlock pattern code combinations, the security level must be regarded as **medium** only when enabling the unlock pattern feature.

If this setting is **On**, the use of PIN codes or unlock patterns as a supplement to the regular password is permitted with the restrictions specified below:

❖ PIN code/swipe minimum length

In this field you can specify the minimum number of tiles that must be touched when defining the unlock pattern, or the minimum length of the PIN code chosen by the user (Symbian/Windows Mobile only). This only applies if **Allow use of PIN code/swipe** is **On**. If the user tries to define a PIN code/unlock pattern shorter than this value, it will be rejected by the client. **Recommended value: 4**.

❖ PIN code/swipe time-out (hours)

In this field you can specify the *validity period* of the unlock pattern or PIN code set by the user. The validity period is specified in hours, and begins when the user logs in to DME using his or her regular password. After this, the user can use his or her PIN code/unlock pattern to log in to DME, until the validity period runs out. Then the user has to use his or her regular network password again in order to reset the validity period. The user does not have to change the PIN code/unlock pattern. The **Login** screen will always make it clear if the regular password is required, or if the user can choose between the regular password and the PIN code/swipe.

If you set this value to **0**, the PIN code/unlock pattern will never expire (not recommended).

The swipe time-out is not supported on Windows Phone.

❖ Allow Copy/Paste

Supported by:  

This option controls the extent to which users are allowed to copy and paste information between applications on their device

while logged in to DME. The Apple and the Android platforms interpret this option differently.

Apple iOS

Turning this option **On** means that data copied *within* DME can be pasted *outside* DME.

Turning this option **Off** means that the clipboard is cleared whenever DME is in the background.

Android

Turning this option **On** means that data can be copied when DME is in *viewing mode*, for instance when reading an e-mail.

Turning this option **Off** means that data can only be copied when DME is in *edit mode*, for instance when creating or forwarding an e-mail.

In both cases, DME for Android attempts to clear the clipboard when going to the background. However, some clipboard apps on Android do allow to see the history of clipboard actions, including what data was stored.

❖ **Require trusted certificate** (server only)

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, DME clients will only connect to the server if it has a certificate from a trusted certificate provider.

If this setting is **Off**, the client will either accept all certificates (including self-signed certificates), or ask the user to accept the certificates.

See also **SSL certificates** on page 408.

Scheduled sync. settings

❖ **Scheduled sync.**

Supported by:   

If this setting is **On**, the DME client will initiate synchronization of the enabled resources (e-mail, calendar, etc.) according to the schedule specified below.

If this setting is **Off**, the synchronization of resources relies on client-initiated sync (pull, where applicable), manual synchronization, or push notification from the mail system. If **On**, the scheduled synchronization is based on the following settings:

❖ **Interval (min.)**

In this field you can specify how often scheduled sync. should be executed. By default, the permitted range is from 0 (never) to 99999 minutes, but you can change this. Note that the load

on the DME server and the drain on the device batteries will increase, the lower a number you specify. **Recommended value:** 180 minutes.

❖ **Start time (hours:minutes)**

In this field you can specify the time of day at which the scheduled sync should start. You can for instance choose to start scheduled sync at 8 in the morning. Use together with the fields **End time** and **Run on weekends**.

❖ **End time (hours:minutes)**

In this field you can specify the time of day at which the scheduled sync should stop. You can for instance choose to not sync after your regular work hours. Use together with the fields **Start time** and **Run on weekends**.

❖ **Run on weekends**

If this setting is **On**, the client will perform a scheduled sync in the weekend also, during the interval specified by the **Start time** and **End time** settings.

Adaptive Push settings

❖ **Push system information**

Supported by: **ALL**

❖ **Push e-mail**

etc.

Supported by:  (if the device supports the resource in question)

With the **Push x** settings you can determine if you want the devices to be notified of changes in the different resources **x**. These settings will by default be **On**. However, for some client platforms you might want to turn off for instance **Push contact** or **Push calendar**. This typically applies to iOS devices, where background synchronization is not possible, and where notifications about calendar or contact changes might be disruptive. All resources will be synchronized when the user synchronizes e-mails anyway.

❖ **Network push**

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, network push is enabled. This means that notifications and server commands are sent over the GPRS network if available. For more information, see **Appendix F:**

AdaptivePush™ on page 388. If not enabled, or if the GPRS network is unavailable, notifications are sent by SMS.

Android: With version 4.1 of the DME server, support for Google cloud Messaging (GCM) was introduced. This is supported as of DME client 4.1 for Android running on Android 2.2 and above. However, network push support remains for older devices. For more information, see **Third party push notification** below.

Apple: Network push support has been removed from the DME client for iOS as of version 3.5.6 of the client. See **Third party push notification** below.

❖ **Network push path**

In this field you can specify the network path used for network push. Network push requires a separate connection to the server. Be aware that the path and port must be given access through the corporate firewall. For more information, see **Appendix F: AdaptivePush™** on page 388.

❖ **Third party push notification**

Supported by:  

If this setting is **On**, third party push notification is enabled. This means different things for the Android and the Apple platform devices:

Android: Here, **Third party push notification** means *Google Cloud Messaging (GCM)*. This is required if you want users of Android devices to be able to receive notifications through the Google Cloud Messaging (GCM) service, which is recommended. For more information about further requirements, see **Notifications on Android devices** on page 224.

Apple: Here, **Third party push notification** means *Apple Push Notification (APN)* is enabled. This is required if you want users of iOS devices to be able to receive notifications through the Apple Push Notification Service (APNS), which is recommended. For more information about further requirements, see **Notifications on iOS devices** on page 221.

❖ **Network push when roaming**

Supported by:    

As a cost-saving feature, you can disable the network (IP) connection when the device is roaming. You can do this by turning this setting **Off**. If **Notify when roaming** (below) is enabled, the server will resort to SMS push (if permitted by the setting **Enable SMS fallback** below) or third-party push. If **Notify when roaming** is disabled also, the device will receive no notifications at all.

The current roaming status of the device can be seen in the device **Information** page (see **Information** on page 86). To update the roaming status, the user can perform a manual synchronization when he or she returns to his or her home network.

❖ **Notify when roaming**

Supported by: 

As a cost-saving feature, you can disable push notification when the device is roaming. The client will not receive any notifications by network push, SMS, or third-party push.

If this setting is **On**, DME will send notifications about new e-mail and other items, even when the device is roaming. If **Network push when roaming** (above) is **Off**, the notifications will not be pushed by network push, but only by Apple Push (iOS), GCM (Android), and SMS (if permitted by the setting **Enable SMS fallback** below).

❖ **Max. notifications if no response from a device**

Supported by: **ALL**

In this field you can specify the number times the server will send a notification to a device that does not respond by synchronizing. If a device is off for a long time, for instance if the device holder is on a 2-week vacation without his device, the server will stop sending notifications to the device after the specified number of notifications. This saves SMS and traffic costs. The number of notifications is reset every time the device has contact with the server.

❖ **Enable SMS fallback**

Supported by: **ALL**

If this setting is **On**, the server will fall back to notification by SMS push if network push is unavailable (making this Adaptive Push™). The same applies in the rather unlikely event that third-party push becomes unavailable. If this setting is **Off**, the affected clients will not receive notification by SMS.

Android security settings

With the settings in the **Device security** section you can set up a security profile for your Android devices. If you set any of these settings to anything other than the default values, DME will require Device Administrator privileges on the device. This way you are able to enforce device administration policies on the device according to the standards set by Google on their **Google Developer website** <http://developer.android.com/guide/topics/admin/device-admin.html#policies>.

Supported by: 

❖ **Corporate device**

If this setting is **On**, the device is designated a *corporate device*. This means that the administrator is entitled to perform any operations on it, as it is corporate property. If the device is the employee's personal device (Bring Your Own Device - BYOD), the employee has control over personal items on the device. If the device is a personal device, and the administrator sends a Destroy all Data command to the device, only DME data will be destroyed. See also **Delete device data** on page 58.

❖ **Password enabled**

If this field is set to **Unspecified**, the device user is free to set or not set a password. Note that this is not the DME password, but the password used for enabling the screen.

If the field is set to something other than **Unspecified**, the user is required to set a password of one of the following types:

- ❖ **Biometric**: The user must use a biometric "password" if the device supports this. This can be fingerprint, iris scan etc.
- ❖ **Something**: The user must enter some kind of password, but the policy does not care what it is.
- ❖ **Numeric**: The user must enter a password containing at least numeric characters.
- ❖ **Alphabetic**: The user must enter a password containing at least alphabetic (or other symbol) characters.
- ❖ **Alphanumeric**: The user must enter a password containing at least *both* numeric *and* alphabetic (or other symbol) characters.
- ❖ **Complex**: The user must enter a password containing at least a letter, a numerical digit and a special symbol.

❖ **Min. password length**

Set the required number of characters for the password. For example, you can require PIN or passwords to have at least six characters.

❖ **Min. number of letters required in password**

The minimum number of letters required in the password.

❖ **Min. lowercase letters required in password**

The minimum number of lowercase letters required in the password.

❖ **Min. non-letter characters required in password**

The minimum number of non-letter characters required in the password.

- ❖ **Min. digits required in password**
The minimum number of numerical digits required in the password.
- ❖ **Min. symbols required in password**
The minimum number of symbols required in the password.
- ❖ **Min. uppercase letters required in password**
The minimum number of uppercase letters required in the password.
- ❖ **Password expiration timeout**
When the password will expire, counted from when a new password is set. The value can be **Never**, **1 month**, **3 months**, **6 months**, or **1 year**.
- ❖ **Password history restriction**
This policy prevents users from reusing the last *n* number of unique passwords. This policy is typically used together with **Password expiration timeout**, which forces users to update their passwords after a specified amount of time has elapsed. The value can be **1**, **3**, or **5**.
- ❖ **Max. allowed failed password attempts**
Specifies how many times a user can enter the wrong password before the device wipes its data. The value can be between **0** and **9** attempts, where **0**=Never wipe data.
- ❖ **Max. inactivity time lock (minutes)**
Sets the length of time since the user last touched the screen or pressed a button before the device locks the screen. When this happens, users need to enter their PIN or passwords again before they can use their devices and access data. The value can be between **1** and **60** minutes.
- ❖ **Require storage encryption**
If this setting is **On**, the storage area will be encrypted, if the device supports it.
- ❖ **Disable camera**
If this setting is **On**, the device camera will be disabled.

Miscellaneous settings

This group of **Default settings** gives access to the following categories of settings, each shown in a separate table:

Desktop settings on page 344

Shortcuts settings on page 345

File sync. settings on page 346

RSS settings on page 346

SmartLink settings on page 346

DME viewer and editor settings

AppBox settings on page 347

Desktop settings

Supported by: 

❖ Log in to

In this field you can specify which screen you want the user to see after logging in to the DME client. You can choose from the following options:

- ❖ **Desktop:** DME starts in the Desktop view after logging in.
- ❖ **Inbox:** DME opens the Inbox after logging in.
- ❖ **Calendar:** () DME opens the Calendar after logging in.
- ❖ **To-do:** () DME remembers which of the below views was active when you last logged out of DME, and starts here when you log in again.

This setting was removed from DME for Apple iOS version 4.0.

Note that the setting may display options that do not apply to the latest clients. They are for backward compatibility only.

❖ Background

In this field you can specify the color of the Desktop background. You can choose between the following two options:

- ❖ **Dark:** The Desktop is shown with a dark background.
- ❖ **Light:** The Desktop is shown with a light background.

The Desktop background is not affected by the user's choice of theme on the phone.

This setting was removed from DME for Apple iOS version 4.0.

❖ Startup sound

If this setting is **On**, DME will play a happy jingle when the user launches the client.

This setting was removed from DME for Apple iOS version 4.0.

Shortcuts settings

In the fields **Shortcut 0** to **Shortcut 9**, you can change the shortcuts defined for the device.

Supported by: 

A shortcut is selected on the device by pressing ***<num>**. The currently defined shortcuts can be viewed on the device by pressing ******. For each of the fields, you can select a shortcut to one of the following options:

Shortcut option	Action
None	Removes any existing shortcut definition. The shortcut will do nothing.
Sync. e-mail	Synchronize e-mail.
New e-mail	Create a new e-mail.
Open inbox	Open the Inbox .
View folders	Open the Folders screen to change to another e-mail folder.
Open calendar	Open the internal DME calendar.
Open contacts	Open the Contacts application.
Global Address Book	Search the Global Address Book to find a contact.
Search e-mails	Search for e-mails on the collaboration system.
Mark read	Mark selected e-mail or e-mails as read.
Mark unread	Mark selected e-mail or e-mails as unread.
Move to folder	Move selected e-mail or e-mails to an e-mail folder of your choice.
New meeting	Create a new meeting invitation.
Sync. calendar	Synchronize the calendar according to settings.
Sync. contacts	Synchronize your contacts.
Sync. to-do	Synchronize to-dos according to settings.
Sync. files	Synchronize files according to settings.
Sync. all	Synchronize everything according to settings.

File sync. settings

❖ File sync.

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, file synchronization is enabled. This requires that file synchronization is enabled as an add-on in the server license file. **Recommended value:** **On** if possible. This setting is valid for push notification, manual synchronization, and scheduled sync.

RSS settings

RSS is a family of web feed formats used to publish frequently updated works - such as blog entries and news headlines - in a standardized format. RSS *clients* can subscribe to these feeds, and download the published headlines along with a summary or description. The summary will usually contain a link to the entire *article*. See **RSS feeds** on page 236.

Supported by: 

❖ RSS sync.

If this setting is **On**, RSS synchronization is enabled on devices that support RSS feeds and to which a license is applied.

❖ Max. RSS entries

In this field you can choose the number of RSS entries that should be downloaded to the client, counting from the latest feed entry. This number applies to each feed to which the user subscribes. You can select **50**, **100**, or an **Unlimited** amount of entries.

SmartLink settings

❖ SmartLink

Supported by: 

If this setting is **On**, the SmartLink functionality is enabled on the server. SmartLinks are special URLs in the body text of e-mails, which are handled in a special way by the client and by the server. Typically, SmartLinks will point to Word documents, PDF files, or other binary files that are only available on the corporate intranet. When the URL link (SmartLink) is clicked in the client, the client will download the file, much like an attachment, and open it using the default application – for instance Pocket Word or QuickOffice – instead of attempting to open the resource in a browser.

❖ SmartLink sites

In this field, you can define such SmartLinks. The links are defined as *match strings*, meaning that links that contain part or all of the text in a defined match string will be recognized as a SmartLink by the client. Note that to be recognized as a link at all, the link must begin with a text that can be identified as a link by the client, for instance `http:`, `https:`, or `www..`

You can specify multiple folders by separating the paths with the pipe character: |

Examples of SmartLink match strings

<code>https://intranet.company.com/</code>	All documents in this domain can be downloaded to the client.
<code>http://documents.company.com/doc.aspx?docid=</code>	Documents that are part of a corporate CMS can be downloaded. The document ID pinpoints the correct document.

Some SmartLinks require entries in a configuration file on the server. Please refer to the document **SmartLink configuration** at the **DME Resource Center**

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/find-documents>.

AppBox settings

❖ Enable AppBox

Supported by:  

If this setting is **On**, DME AppBox will be enabled for DME clients that support this*. The AppBox is a corporate App Store which enables companies to provide their users with apps built using HTML5 technology. The apps are opened in a secure DME browser, and all data used by the apps is stored within the secure DME container. It is not possible to leak data outside the container, including cookies, cached data etc.

Furthermore, web links in e-mails etc. are also routed through the DME secure browser. This means that if the AppBox is configured correctly, users can open internal links (for intranets, SharePoint sites etc.) directly from DME without having to use a VPN connection or similar.

*) DME AppBox is supported by:

- ❖ Apple iOS devices running DME client 4.0 or above.
- ❖ Android devices running Android 4.1 and DME client 4.1.2 or above.

- ❖ Android devices running Android 4.2 and DME client 4.1.5 or above.

❖ **AppBox server path (G/On path)**

Supported by:  

In order for AppBox and the DME secure browser to work within the DME client, the installation of an AppBox server (a G/On server) is required.

After installing the G/On server, the G/On installer generates a connection string, which is stored in a file in the following location on the G/On server (where [GON_Version] is the current version of G/On, for instance 5.6.0-7 or 5.6.1):

```
C:\Program
Files\Giritech\gon_[GON_Version]\config\deployed\gon_c
onnect_info.dat
```

Open this file, and copy the contents of the file. Then paste it into this field, and click **Save**. DME is now ready to route AppBox applications to iOS devices and handle secure browser traffic.

For more information, see the G/On Server installation guide at the **DME Resource Center**

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com>.

VoIP settings

❖ **VoIP Apps**

Supported by:  

VoIP gives users the option to make calls via a 3rd party Voice over IP app. When users are making calls from within DME, they are presented with a choice of using either the phone or the VoIP app. Different VoIP apps can be set for Android and iOS.

- ❖ The **URI** schema is used to launch the app. It is different for each VoIP app.

As an example, using the Japanese *050 plus for Biz* app, launching the app requires this URI:

```
com050voipbiz://keypad?tel=
```

To make it automatically call the phone number called from DME, use this notation:

```
com050voipbiz://keypad?tel=%(phoneNumber)
```

- ❖ **Description** is a name that will be presented to the users.
- ❖ **App link** is a link to the app on iTunes Store and Google Play, respectively. This is so users can download the app, in case they don't already have it on their device.

If you have users in multiple countries, make sure to use an app that is available for them. In case different apps are required, you can make groups for particular countries.

Requires clients version 4.4 or later.

Appendix B: External MDM integration

If you want to benefit from the strong Mobile Device Management and Mobile Application Management (MDM/MAM) capabilities of an external provider, DME gives you an option to integrate with SOTI MobiControl. SOTI has been in the MDM/MAM business since 1995, and has grown to become a market leader.

The effect of the DME integration with external MDM can briefly be described in the following way:

- ❖ When a device is enrolled with MobiControl, it is given a unique device ID - the *MobiControl ID*.
- ❖ When DME is installed on the device through MobiControl, and the first connection to DME is made, the MobiControl ID is passed along to DME and stored. DME will then check the MobiControl server to verify that the device is known to MobiControl.

If the device is not known in MobiControl, access to DME is blocked.

If the device is known in MobiControl, a new device is created in DME with a *DME device ID*.

- ❖ Every time the device connects to DME, DME checks the device status in MobiControl.

If the device is locked, deleted or otherwise unavailable, access to DME is blocked.

- ❖ When a device connects to DME with a valid MobiControl ID, DME checks the DME device ID of the device in question.

If the DME device ID is already in use for another device, the device is denied access.

Note: The check for duplicate DME device IDs has one side effect: If a user performs a complete factory reset of a device, the DME client will generate a new device ID when installed. This means that it will appear as a duplicate in the DME admin console (because it has the same MobiControl ID, but a different DME device ID), and will be denied access. The resolution to this is that the DME administrator removes the original device from the DME administration interface.

Also, it should be noted that for the duplicate check to be most effective, as many devices as possible under external MDM control should also be used with DME.

Apart from accessing MobiControl every time a device connects, DME scans the MobiControl server every day for information about devices that have not connected for the last 24 hours. If those device no longer exist in MobiControl or are not active, DME releases the DME license for those devices.

This Appendix describes what happens when the DME Administrator turns the **Enable external MDM** switch **On** (see **MDM** on page 251), and how to create installation packages for DME clients.

Integrating DME and MobiControl

Follow the basic steps below to integrate DME and MobiControl:

1. If you haven't installed DME, do so now. See **DME Resource Center** see DME Resource Center - <http://resources.solitonsystems.com/docs/checklist> for information about this.
2. If you haven't installed SOTI MobiControl, do so now. See documentation from SOTI.
The DME server must be able to reach the MobiControl server over HTTP. The certificate installed on the MobiControl server must be a CA-accredited certificate (for instance from Verisign). The default self-signed certificate will not be enough to verify the server in DME.
3. Enable External MDM in DME, and enter the path to SOTI MobiControl - see **MDM** on page 251.
4. Create **Add Devices** rules (to enroll devices) and **Application Catalog** rules (for DME installation) for Android and iOS - see **DME installation through external MDM** on page 355.
5. When users enroll their device with MobiControl, the device gets a unique ID.
6. When users install DME and attempt to connect to DME for the first time, the unique device ID from MobiControl is transferred to DME.
7. DME will verify that the device exists and is not locked in MobiControl, and then create (or update) it as a device in DME.
Note that the MobiControl ID is used *in addition to* the device ID that DME generates for the device. This way, if you are upgrading

from an existing DME installation (where you have not used MDM), the devices created through MobiControl will not duplicate existing devices.

From now on, DME will check the MobiControl server that a device is still under MobiControl control every time the device connects. If the device is somehow un-enrolled from MobiControl, the device will be denied access to DME as well.

Existing DME MDM enrollment

A special integration process is required if you have been using DME for a while, and you have already enrolled Apple devices in DME.

When you enable external MDM, DME will require that all devices are MDM enrolled with MobiControl. To enroll the existing devices with MobiControl instead of DME, you need to do the following for each device registered in DME:

- ❖ Remove any DME certificates from all devices using the standard iOS procedure (**Settings** > **General** > **Profile** > **Remove DME profiles**)
- ❖ Remove the DME client from all devices

The DME client must be installed through the MobiControl installation process described later in this Appendix.

When a MobiControl-enrolled device connects to DME, DME will recognize the device by the DME device ID, and grant access.

Workflows

Assuming that DME and MobiControl have been successfully integrated, the workflows related to device management can be described as follows.

➤ **MDM: Add new user in MobiControl and DME**

When a new user (for instance a new employee) needs to be enrolled in MobiControl and DME, you first need to know which type of device the new user has/gets. Then supply instructions to download the MobiControl app and enter an Enrollment ID. See **Add device in MobiControl** on page 353.

This enrolls the device in MobiControl. The user then has to get DME from the App Catalog. See **DME installation message template** on page 360. For information about creating the **App Catalog** rule, see **DME installation through external MDM** on page 355.

➤ **MDM: Add existing user in MobiControl to DME**

1. First make sure the user has access to the DME app from his or her Application Catalog. Then tell the user to:
2. Open the **SOTI App Catalog** on his or her device.
3. Tap the DME app.
4. Then follow the guideline for his or her platform (see **DME installation through external MDM** on page 355).

➤ **MDM: When a user leaves the company**

To remove SOTI MobiControl and DME from a user's device, simply un-install the apps. On Android, you need to open **Settings > Security > Select device administrators** (the path to this setting varies depending on device), and deactivate **DME Device Administration** in order to be able to remove the DME client.

➤ **MDM: When a user gets new device**

If a user gets a new device, simply let the user enroll the device with MobiControl as for new users, and then install DME from the **App Catalog**.

➤ **MDM: When a user gets device from other user**

By default, the setting **Allow devices to switch users** is **On** (see **MDM** on page 251). When it is, you can pass a device to another user, and the new user will be able to log in to DME. DME will delete the previous user's data and allow a new user to log in.

If the setting is **Off**, the DME Administrator must delete the device from DME, and the user must un-install the DME client and re-install it from the MobiControl **App Catalog**.

Add device in MobiControl

Before installing DME on a device, it must first be added as a device in MobiControl. To do this, you must create or apply an **Add Device** rule. See the MobiControl documentation for specifics - the steps below emphasize what is important for DME to work correctly later.

1. In the MobiControl administration interface, open the **Rules** tab at the bottom of the window.
2. Click the platform for which you want to create a rule - **iOS**, **Android**, **Android+**, or **Windows Phone**.
3. Right-click the **Add Devices** folder, and choose **Create Add Devices Rule**.

Give the rule a name, and click **Next**.

4. Choose the target folders of the Add Devices rule. See the MobiControl documentation.
5. Click **Next**.
6. In the **User Authentication Options**, choose **Utilize User Directory credentials to verify device enrollment**.

This is important, as it forces MobiControl to register the device user's username with the device. DME needs that later for automatic configuration. For Windows Phone devices, this is required.

Choose your LDAP or AD server, and search for a group in the Search box.
7. Select the group or groups, and click **Next**.
8. You can now choose to add a message to the users in connection with the initial enrollment, and require them to read it (at least they must indicate that they have read it). To do this, check the field **Enable Terms and Conditions**, click **Manage**, and upload a file with your text (not Windows Phone).
9. Click **Next**.
10. Design the name of the device in MobiControl, and click **Next**.
11. Click **Finish** to save the new rule.

Create rules for each platform by repeating the above steps.

When a rule is saved, MobiControl generates an **Enrollment ID** and an **Enrollment URL**, which are visible when you click the newly created rule (not Windows Phone). Then instruct your users to enroll in one of three ways:

First method (not Windows Phone):

1. Instruct your users to go to Apple App Store or Google Play Store, respectively, to download the MobiControl app.
2. After installation, they need to enter the Enrollment ID which you have provided for them.
3. The MobiControl app will then connect to the MobiControl server, prompt to install the required MDM certificates, etc.

Second method (not Windows Phone):

1. Provide the Enrollment URL to the users, and let them open the URL in the browser.
2. The website will guide them through the process of installing the MobiControl app and the required certificates, and provide a valid Enrollment ID (which may or may not be required).

Third method (Windows Phone only):

1. Ask the users to open **Settings > Company apps** on their device.

2. Tap **Add account**.
3. Enter your work e-mail address and password, and tap **Sign in**.
4. When more fields show up, enter your AD user name and password, domain name, and path to MobiControl server, and tap **Done**.
5. After a while, your device has been enrolled with MobiControl. The device is then managed by MobiControl, and DME can be installed from the MobiControl **App Catalog** (not Windows Phone - see next section).

MobiControl enrollment is described in more detail in the User Guides for the respective platforms.

DME installation through external MDM

You now need to install DME on the MobiControl-managed devices. For Windows Phone, the operating system does not yet support MDM operations, and the only way to install DME on such devices is through Windows Market. When DME is installed, enrolled devices are able to connect to DME.

For Android, Android+, and iOS, the installation of DME is done through an **Application Catalog Rule**.

Application Catalog rules

In this description of how to create installation rules for DME, we assume that you have a basic knowledge of managing SOTI MobiControl. You can find help for MobiControl issues in the **MobiControl online help**

<http://www.soti.net/mc/help/v11/en/default.htm>.

This table outlines the options available for installing DME on different platforms.

Platform	Method
Android (any)	Application Catalog Get DME from Google Play Configuration through Configuration URI
iOS 6.x	Application Catalog Get DME from Apple App Store Configuration through Configuration URI
iOS 7.x	Application Catalog Get DME from Apple App Store Silent configuration through Configuration Command
Windows Phone	Get DME from Windows Marketplace

To create an application catalog rule, do the following in the MobiControl administration interface. Platform-specific differences in the description below are indicated by the icons  (for Android and Android+) and  (for Apple iOS). Windows Phone is not discussed here at all - see **Add device in MobiControl** on page 353 for more information.

1. Open the **Rules** tab at the bottom of the window.
2. Click the platform for which you want to create a rule - **iOS**, **Android**, or **Android+**.
3. Right-click the **Application Catalog** folder, and choose **Create Application Catalog Rule**.
Give the rule a name, and click **Next**.
4. Click **Add**.
 -  For **Android** devices:
 1. Choose **Google Play Store Applications**.
 2. In the Search box, type **DME**, and select the **DME** app.
 3. Click **Advanced**.
 4. In **Application Type**, select **Mandatory**.
 5. In the field **Configuration URI**, enter the configuration URI for DME. See **Configuration URI** on page 357.
 -  For **iOS** devices:
 6. Choose **App Store Applications**.
 7. In the Search box, type **DME 4**, and select the **DME 4** app.
 8. Click **Advanced**.
 9. In **Application Type**, select **Mandatory**, and click **OK**.
 10. Click **Application Configuration**.

11. In the field **Configuration URI**, enter the configuration URI for DME. See **Configuration URI** on page 357. This applies to iOS 6.x devices.
 12. In the field **Configuration Command**, enter the command for configuring DME. See **Configuration Command** on page 359. If this field is completed, it will be used by iOS 7.x devices. Otherwise they will use the **Configuration URI** also.
5. Click **OK** twice, and then click **Next**.
 6. Choose the target folders of the Application Catalog rule. See the MobiControl documentation.
 7. Click **Next**.
 8. Click **Advanced** if you want to specify a date for activation and deactivation of the rule.
 9. Click **Finish**.
- Repeat this for each platform - iOS, Android, and Android+.

Configuration URI

By entering a configuration URI, you enable the following workflow for the user who is installing DME:

1. Open **App Catalog** on the device
2. Install DME by clicking the **Install** button
3. After installation, go back to the **App Catalog**
4. Tap the DME icon
5. Tap the green **Configure** button

This will send the user's configuration URI to the MobiControl server, and configure the DME client for first use by setting the DME server path, port, HTTPS setting, and user name.

The configuration URI is created in an Application Catalog rule. To work correctly, it must have a form similar to the example below:

```
dmeexcitor://dme.company.com:5011/?secure=1&id=%DEVICEIDENTIFIER%&user=%ENROLLEDUSER_USERNAME%
```

The example is split into parts below, and each part is explained.

Part	Explanation
<code>dmeexcitor://</code>	This is the literal protocol identifier. This makes the DME client pick up the configuration URI.
<code>dme.company.com:5011/</code>	This is the server path of your DME installation, including port number.
<code>?secure</code>	1 for secure (https) connection, 0 for http.
<code>&id</code>	This is the number by which the device is identified in MobiControl. Use the variable <code>%DEVICEIDENTIFIER%</code>
<code>&user</code>	This is the user name with which the device was enrolled in MobiControl in the first place through the Add Devices rule. Use the variable <code>%ENROLLEDUSER_USERNAME%</code> Note, however, that for MobiControl to know the device's user name, the device must have been enrolled using the option Utilize User Directory credentials to verify device enrollment in the Authentication part of the Add Devices rule. If the device have been enrolled using the email address instead, use the variable <code>%ENROLLEDUSER_EMAIL%</code>

Caution: Please note that if any MobiControl variable cannot be resolved, then the entire URI operation will fail. For instance, if the `%PHONENUMBER%` cannot be found in MobiControl, the configuration operation will fail. Due to the fact that some phone vendors do not permit a third party to read the phone number from the device, the `%PHONENUMBER%` variable is especially uncertain, and should probably not be used in the configuration URI at all.

When a device is configured using this rule, all information required to log in to DME is supplied (apart from the user's password).

Two more variables from MobiControl are available in the configuration URI:

- ❖ `%ENROLLEDUSER_DOMAIN%`
- ❖ `%PHONENUMBER%`

Configuration Command

Entering a configuration command rather than a configuration URI makes it even easier for the user who is installing DME, as the user does not need to return to the App Catalog and tap the green **Configure** button. All configuration is done automatically. The use of configuration commands for DME is currently only supported on devices running iOS 7 or newer.

The configuration command is created in an **Application Catalog** rule. The command is written as an XML dictionary (configuration) file.

The following fields are needed:

Field (case sensitive)	Required	Description
dmeHostname	Yes	Domain name of DME Server
dmePort	Yes	Default connection port
dmeSecure	Yes	1 for secure (https) connection, 0 for http
dmeUser	Yes	DME Username. Use %ENROLLEDUSER_USERNAME%
dmeExternalId	Yes	The external MDM ID. Use %DEVICEIDENTIFIER%
dmePhone	No	Device phone number. Use %PHONENUMBER% Note: The external MDM might not know the device's phone number

The value of these fields should be inserted where the [text in brackets] are shown in the example below:

```
<dict>
  <key>dmeHostname</key>
  <string>[Domain name of DME server]</string>

  <key>dmePort</key>
  <string>[Default connection port]</string>

  <key>dmeSecure</key>
  <string>[https (1) or http (0)]</string>
```



```
<key>dmeUser</key>
<string>%ENROLLEDUSER_USERNAME%</string>

<key>dmeExternalId</key>
<string>%DEVICEIDENTIFIER%</string>

<key>dmePhone</key>
<string>%PHONENUMBER%</string>

</dict>
```

Note that for MobiControl to know the device's Username (%ENROLLEDUSER_USERNAME%), the device must have been enrolled using the option **Utilize User Directory credentials to verify device enrollment** in the **Authentication** part of the **Add Devices** rule.

Unlike the configuration URI, a MobiControl variable that cannot be resolved will *not* cause the entire configuration command will fail. If a variable cannot be resolved, the variable name will simply be inserted - for instance, if the %PHONENUMBER% variable cannot be resolved to an actual phone number, DME will display the text **%PHONENUMBER%** in the DME client where the phone number should go.

DME installation message template

The following can be used as a template of the message that should be distributed to new DME users in a MobiControl installation. The information should vary according to the operating system of each user's device. It could go something like this:

Dear colleague,

As you may have heard, we have chosen DME as our provider of secure e-mail, calendar, and HTML5 apps. Everything that enters DME is locked away in a secure container, and only your user name and password can open it.

To install DME, do the following:

1. Open the **App Catalog** on your device.
You will notice that DME is listed as a **Mandatory** application.
2. Tap the **Free** (iOS) or **Install** (Android) button next to the DME icon.
3. Wait for DME to install.

If you are using an Apple device running iOS 7.0 or later, DME will be configured automatically, and your job is done!

If you are using an Android device or an Apple device running iOS 6.x, do the following to complete the configuration of DME:

4. Go back to the **App Catalog**. **<- For Android and iOS 6.x only**
5. Tap the **DME icon** (iOS) or the **Installed** button (Android).
6. Tap the green **Configure** button.

DME opens, and is configured automatically.

Test that DME was configured correctly by entering your network password in the **Password** field of the DME login screen. If you are able to log in, everything is working!

Appendix C: File synchronization

With DME file synchronization you can synchronize files with devices in much the same way as with e-mail and calendar information.

This functionality can be used to distribute files or folders to a specified set of recipient devices - typically a group of devices (see Groups). Depending on how the synchronization is set up, the devices can be granted or denied access to synchronizing updated files back to the server. Files can also be synchronized one-way from the server for execution on the device (see **Synchronization method** on page 367).

Files can be synchronized with devices at three levels:

1. With *all devices*: Click **Devices** > **Default settings** > **Files**
2. With a *group of devices*: Click **Devices** > **Group list** > click a group heading > **Files**
3. With one *specific device*: Click **Devices** > click a device > **Files**

The method by which files are synchronized is the same in all three cases.

The combination of the location of the files to be synchronized and the method by which they are synchronized is called a *file sync rule*. Defining a rule involves two or three steps, which are described in the following:

1. Uploading files for synchronization, including permissions (optional).
2. Specifying which files should be synchronized.
3. Specifying a destination on the device.

➤ **Defining a new synchronization rule - overall process**

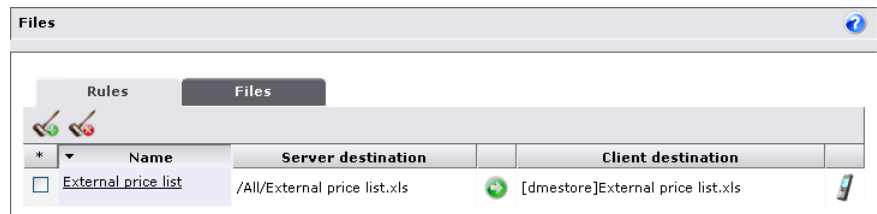
1. Determine the target group - which device or devices should synchronize the files you specify: All devices (default settings), a group of devices, or an individual device?
2. Click the appropriate function to edit the settings of the target group.
3. Click the **Files** section of the setup panel.

The **Files** section of the setup panel for your target group consists of a table with two tabs: **Rules** and **Files**. See the following sections for more specific instructions.

Please note that file synchronization is not supported on Apple iOS devices.

Rules

The **Rules** tab (default view) lists any file sync rules defined for the current target group (default , group , or device ).



	Name	Server destination	Client destination
☐	External price list	/All/External price list.xls	[dmestore]External price list.xls

The columns show the following information:

❖ **Name**

This is the name of the file sync rule. Depending on the level at which you are editing the file sync rule, you may click the name to edit the rule - see the field **Inheritance** below.

❖ **Server destination**

This is the location of the file or folder to be synchronized.

❖ **Method**

The icon in this column shows the file sync method applied to the current rule: **One-way**, **Two-way**, or **Execute**.

❖ **Client destination**

This is the name of the file or folder on the device. A folder name has a slash or backslash at the end.

❖ **Inheritance**

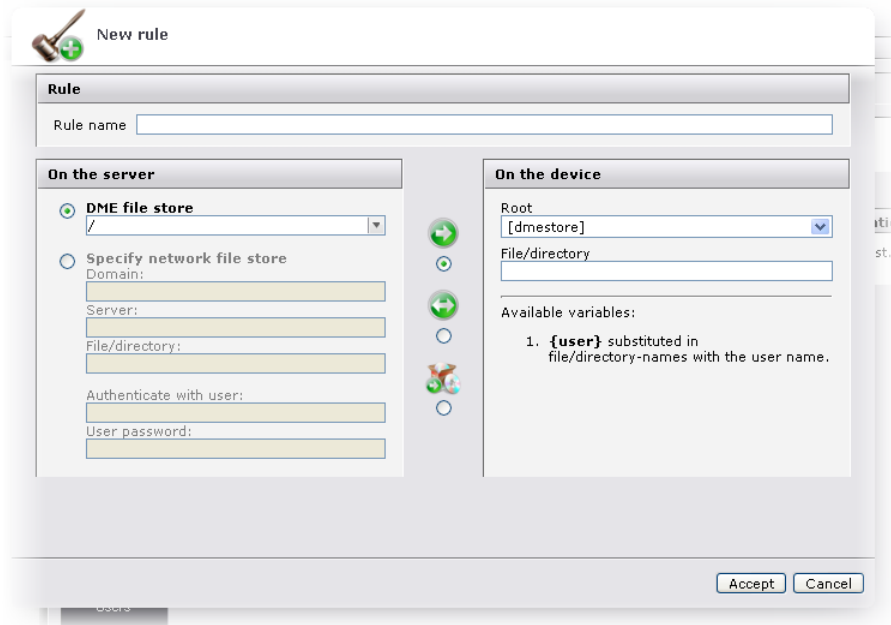
This icon shows if the current target group inherited this rule from default settings or a group, or if it only applies to this device. If file sync rules are inherited from a higher level (that is, default settings inherited to a group, or default or group settings inherited to an individual device), they are shown here as well, but you cannot edit them at this level.

This tab contains two actions.

New file sync rule



Click this icon to create a new file sync rule. The following pop-up window is shown.



Note that this window is the same as the window in which you edit an existing rule.

The window is divided into four sections.

Rule

In this section, enter a name for the new file sync rule, or edit the name of an existing rule. If you do not name a rule, it will simply be called **New rule**. The name is for your identification only, and it will not be seen on the device.

It is recommended that you enter a descriptive name so you can quickly see the nature of the rule. A name such as **Company policies for all employees (Word)** or **Pictures for Intranet** is a good choice.

On the server

In this section, you specify which file or folder should be synchronized in the current rule. There are two ways of making files available for synchronization:

- ❖ Upload files to the DME server, one at a time. The space reserved for files on the DME server is called the *DME file store*.
- ❖ Point to a file or a folder in a shared network location. This is called a *network file store*.

Files that have been uploaded to the DME file store are shown in the **DME file store** drop-down list. You can pick one file or folder from the list. For information about uploading files, see **Files** on page 371.

To define a synchronization rule which points to a network location for synchronization, click the **Specify network file store** option button. The user of the device to which the rule applies is subject to the usual network authentication. Examples of use:

- ❖ A user can access his or her private folder on the network and keep the contents synchronized with his or her device.
- ❖ A group of users can have a shared folder on the network and keep it updated with new files from their devices - for instance photos taken in connection with insurance cases.
- ❖ The latest brochures, specifications, etc. related to your company's products can be placed in a network folder accessible to all users.

When you click the **Specify network file store** option button, you can specify a network path in the following fields:

- ❖ **Domain**

If the user is to be validated against another domain than the user's default domain (as found in the LDAP directory), specify it here.

- ❖ **Server**

This is the name of the server hosting the network share.

- ❖ **File/directory**

Specify a file or directory on the specified server. The variable **{user}** in the path will be substituted with the actual user name (the LDAP shortname). You can specify a single file or a folder. The path entered in the corresponding field **File/directory** in the dialog section **On the device** (see **On the device** on page 369) must match your choice. If you specify a folder, you must append a slash (/) or backslash (\) to the path, both here and in the corresponding field in the section **On the device**. If you only want to synchronize a specific file, add the name of the file here.

- ❖ **Authenticate with user** and

- ❖ **User password**

If you do not specify any user in this field, the user name and password are taken from the device that tries to sync the files. If this is not sufficient, you can create a user with access to the

specified network location, and enter the user name and password of this user in these fields.

Example 1:

On the server

☐ DME file store

☒ **Specify network file store**

Domain:

Server:

File/directory:

Authenticate with user:

User password:

Example 1 specifies a fixed path to a folder on the server **Fileserver**. If the user holding the device performing the synchronization can be validated against the default domain, and if he has access to the **mobilefiles** directory, all files in the folder **mobilefiles** will be synchronized with the files in the corresponding folder in the specified device file store.

Example 2:

On the server

☐ DME file store

☒ **Specify network file store**

Domain:

Server:

File/directory:

Authenticate with user:

User password:

In Example 2, to synchronize the files, the user holding the device performing the synchronization must be validated with his password against the **HQ** domain. Any files in the folder **mobilefiles** in the user's folder on the server **Fileserver** will be synchronized with the files in the corresponding folder in the specified device file store.

Synchronization method

For each synchronization rule you can specify a method by which the file or folder should be synchronized between the server and the device. You can choose among three different ways to synchronize files:

❖ One-way sync



With this method, the files to which the current rule applies are synchronized to the device. The files will not be updated on the server, even if they are changed on the device. Be aware that if a file is changed either on the server or on the device, the version on the server will be synchronized to the client again, overwriting any changes on the device.

❖ Two-way sync



With this method, the files to which the current rule applies are synchronized to the device at the first sync. At subsequent synchronizations, each file on the server will be compared with its counterpart on the device. If any change has been made to a file, the newest file will overwrite the older, regardless of where the file is found. This corresponds to the regular synchronization of calendar items.

Note that if a file is added manually to the device file store, the file will be synchronized to the server and become part of the current file sync rule.

❖ Execute on client



This method corresponds to the one-way sync method above. However, after synchronizing, the file is opened on the device by the application associated with the file type in question, or the operating system if it is an executable file.

Implications of sync actions

The following schematic describes how different operations affect synchronized files on the server and on the client.

For example: In the case of a one-way sync rule, deleting a file on the server means that it will be deleted on the client at the next sync.

One-way sync				
Action	S	C	Result, server	Result, client
Create file in folder	✓		(file created)	File created at next sync
Delete file	✓		(file deleted)	File deleted at next sync
Rename file	✓		(file renamed)	File created with new name at next sync (original file remains) 1)
Update file	✓		(file updated)	File replaced from server
Create file in folder		✓	No effect	(file created)
Delete file		✓	No effect	File recreated at next sync
Rename file		✓	No effect	File recreated with original name at next sync
Update file		✓	No effect	File replaced by original copy from server

Two-way sync				
Action	S	C	Result, server	Result, client
Create file in folder	✓		(file created)	File created at next sync
Delete file	✓		(file deleted)	File deleted at next sync
Rename file	✓		(file renamed)	File created with new name at next sync (original file deleted) 1)
Update file	✓		(file updated)	File replaced from server
Create file in folder		✓	File created at next sync	(file created)
Delete file		✓	File deleted at next sync	File recreated at next sync
Rename file		✓	File created with new name at next sync (original file deleted) 2)	File recreated with original name at next sync
Update file		✓	File replaced from client	File replaced by original copy from server

Notes:

1. If a file is renamed in the DME file storage, it is handled as if the old file was deleted, and a new one was created.
If the client filename is changed in the rule, the file will also be renamed accordingly at the next sync.
2. This is handled as if the old file is deleted, and a new one created, thus deleting the old file from the server.

On the device

In this section, you specify where the files involved in the current file sync rule are stored on the client. The file store specification consists of a base path and a relative path and/or a filename.

Please note that file synchronization is not supported on Apple iOS devices.

1. In the field **Root**, specify one of five *aliases*, which point to different locations on the device.
 - ❖ **[dmestore]**: This path is specific to the device platform in question:
 - Android*: /data/data/dk.excitor.dme/files/
 - Symbian*: C:\Data\Others\DME\PUBLIC\
 - Windows Mobile*: My Device\Program Files\Dme\Data\files\
 - ❖ **[internal]**: On the device, this will be translated to the name of the internal flash memory.
 - Android*: /data/
 - Symbian*: C:\Data\
 - Windows Mobile*: My Device\
 - ❖ **[external]**: On the device, this will translated to the root of the external flash memory, such as a memory storage card.
 - Android*: /sdcard/
 - ❖ **[internalroot]**: On the device, this will be translated to the name of the internal flash memory. On Symbian devices, this is the root of the system drive (C:); on other platforms, it corresponds to **[internal]**.
 - ❖ **[externalroot]**: Same as **[external]**.
2. In the field **File/directory**, append a folder or filename, which is *relative to* the base path. Note that if you are synchronizing a single file, you can specify any filename as the device file store file name. The file will be renamed in the synchronization process.
3. Finally, append a slash (/) or backslash (\) to the path if you are synchronizing a folder. Do not append a slash or backslash if you synchronize a single file.

If a folder does not exist on the device, it is created at the first synchronization.

Examples of paths to the device file store:

- ❖ **[internal]syncdox**

The files on the server are kept in sync with files in the folder **syncdox** in the root of the internal flash memory drive.

❖ **[external]syncdox\currentprices.xls**

The spreadsheet file **currentprices.xls** in the folder **syncdox** in the root of the external memory card drive is kept in sync with (or updated by) a file in the DME file store or a network file store.

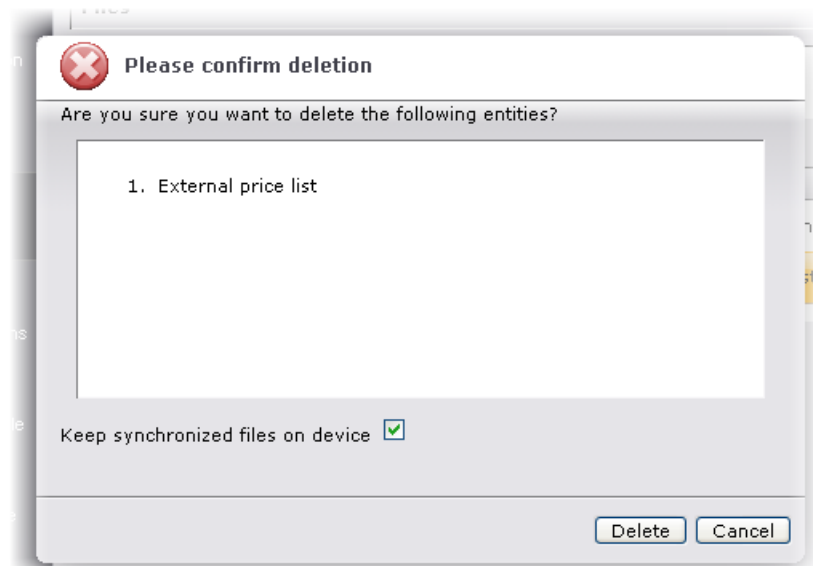
❖ **[dmestore]currentprices.xls**

The spreadsheet file **currentprices.xls** in the folder specified for the device platform in question is kept in sync with (or updated by) a file in the DME file store or a network file store.

Delete file sync rule



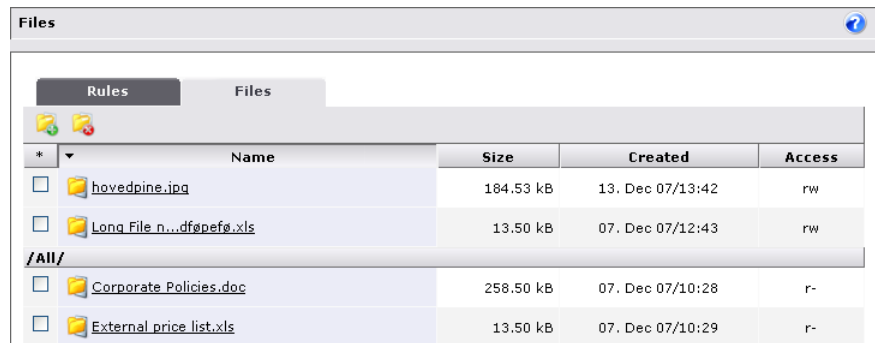
Click this icon to delete the selected file sync rule(s). The following pop-up window is shown.



Note the checkbox **Keep synchronized files on device**, which is selected by default. If this field is not selected, *all synchronized files* comprised by the rule will be deleted from all affected devices when you delete the rule. This can have adverse effects, for instance if you have synchronized a folder to the **[internal]** root folder without specifying further directories. If this field was not selected, all files in the **[internal]** directory would be deleted.

Files

The **Files** tab lists all files that have been made available for selection in file sync rules in the DME file store.



	Name	Size	Created	Access
☐	 hovepine.jpg	184.53 kB	13. Dec 07/13:42	rw
☐	 Long File n...dfpfe.xls	13.50 kB	07. Dec 07/12:43	rw
/All/				
☐	 Corporate Policies.doc	258.50 kB	07. Dec 07/10:28	r-
☐	 External price list.xls	13.50 kB	07. Dec 07/10:29	r-

The columns show the following information:

❖ **Name**

This is the name of the uploaded file. Click the name to edit the properties of the uploaded file. The files are automatically grouped by the folders in which they are placed on the DME file store. If you click the file icon, you download the file.

❖ **Size**

This is the size of the file in Kb.

❖ **Created**

The date and time the file was uploaded.

❖ **Access**

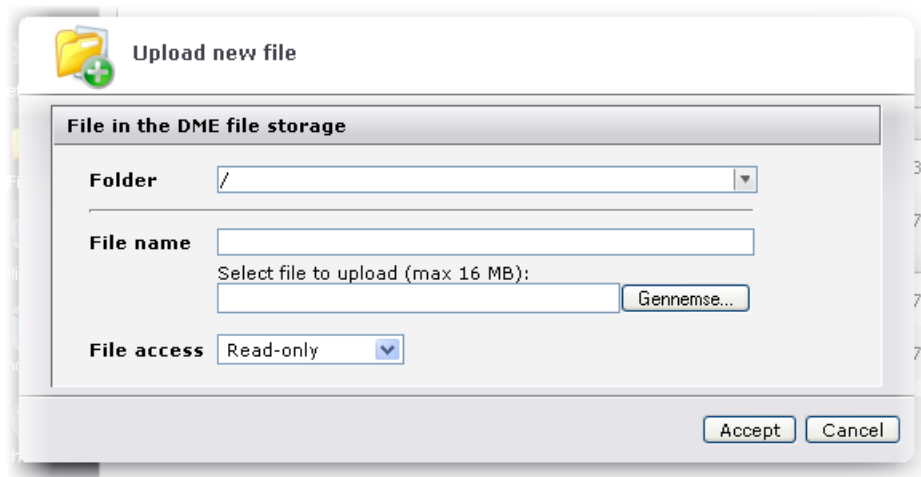
This shows if the file is uploaded with read-only or read-write access.

This tab contains two actions.

New file



Click this icon to create a new file upload to the DME file store.



Note that this window is the same as the window in which you edit an existing file upload.

❖ **Folder**

In this field, type the name of a new folder in the DME folder, or select an existing folder from the drop-down list. If you type the name of a new folder, it will be created on the server.

❖ **File name**

In this field, type the name you want the file to have on the server. This is not necessarily the same name as the uploaded file.

Click **Browse...** to locate the file which you want to make available for synchronization.

❖ **File access**

In this drop-down list, choose to give read-only or read-write access to the uploaded file. Note that if a file is made read-only, it will not be updated from a device in a two-way synchronization.

On the contrary, files updated on the devices will be overwritten by the file from the server at the next sync.

Click **Accept** to upload the file to the DME file store.

Maximum file size

The maximum file size permitted in a file sync rule is by default **16 MB**. However, you can change this limit in the **Data** section of the **Server configuration** page - see **Data** on page 183.

Delete file



Click this icon to delete the selected file or files. Note that when you delete files that are associated with file sync rules, you should delete the associated rules also in order to avoid synchronization errors.

Appendix D: Traffic logging

The DME server always collects and stores information about how the devices use DME.

In addition, some device platforms collect information about voice calls, messaging, and GPRS usage, and if you enable traffic logging on the clients, this information will be sent to the DME server. The information can be used for traffic analysis, either by using the built-in reports in the DME Administration interface or by using custom BIRT reports (see **Analyzer reports** on page 164). The results of the statistical analysis give an overview of expected costs of device usage, perhaps as a basis for negotiating new rates with your operator or for optimizing your use of network operators.

For more information about the presentation of the traffic logging data in the DME server, see **Statistics** on page 155 and **Analyzer reports** on page 164.

Please note that the collection of statistics relies on a number of factors, including the ability of devices of different makes and models to collect and report the numbers correctly to the DME server. The DME server builds the statistics base on the received data, and DME cannot guarantee the correctness or completeness of this information.

The following types of usage information may be collected:

- ❖ Voice traffic
- ❖ GPRS (data) traffic
- ❖ Messaging (SMS and MMS) traffic

Each traffic type is described in the following.

Enabling traffic logging

Like most other settings, traffic logging can be enabled or disabled per device, per group, or generally.

To enable traffic logging, go to the **Settings** panel of a device or group, or choose **Default settings** in the page menu in the **Devices** tab (see **Default settings** on page 233).

In the **General** section, make sure that the option **Traffic logging** is **Enabled**, and click **Save**.

The devices collect the information regardless of this setting. The setting only controls whether the device is to send the information to the server. If *enabled*, the information is sent to the server at every system information synchronization, and is then deleted from the device. If *disabled*, the device automatically deletes the oldest traffic log entry as it adds the latest traffic log entry, after a device-specific, fixed upper limit to log content size has been reached. The process is automatic, and the device user cannot alter this setting.

Specific notes about client platforms:

- ❖ Windows Mobile devices require that the DME client is running to log data. To ensure this, the settings **Launch on startup** and **Lock device on logout** should be enforced by the server.
- ❖ Series 60 and UIQ devices log the data in a background process, even if the DME client is closed.
- ❖ Java devices are only able to log DME data usage (synchronizing etc.).
- ❖ iPhone devices are only able to log DME data usage (synchronizing etc.).

Voice traffic

Windows Mobile, Symbian, and UIQ 3.0 devices are able to collect information about voice usage. When a device user initiates or receives a call, the following information is recorded on the device:

- ❖ The device ID
- ❖ The current device user
- ❖ Whether the call was roaming
- ❖ Mobile country code (MCC) - the country of your location
- ❖ Mobile network code (MNC). Together with the MCC, the MNC uniquely identifies the mobile phone operator/carrier that handled the call at your end
- ❖ Name of operator as retrieved from the relay station. Note that since the operator name can be spelled differently depending on which relay station you pick it up from, you may want to edit the name in the database in order to be able to group properly by operator. Contact your DME partner about this.
- ❖ The phone number dialed or received
- ❖ The direction of the call - incoming or outgoing
- ❖ The starting date and time of the call, including time zone information
- ❖ The duration of the call

This information is used for building the statistics database on the server, if the logging functionality is enabled (see **Enabling traffic logging** on page 374).

GPRS traffic

Windows Mobile, Symbian, and UIQ 3.0 devices are able to collect information about GPRS usage. The device automatically logs the use of GPRS traffic. GPRS connections include WAP access and Internet communication such as DME synchronization and World Wide Web access, but exclude SMS and MMS traffic.

When a device user uses GPRS, the following information is recorded on the device:

- ❖ The device ID
- ❖ The current device user
- ❖ Whether the GPRS connection was roaming
- ❖ Mobile country code (MCC) - the country of your location
- ❖ Mobile network code (MNC). Together with the MCC, the MNC uniquely identifies the mobile phone operator/carrier that handled the GPRS connection at your end
- ❖ Name of operator as retrieved from the relay station. Note that since the operator name can be spelled differently depending on

which relay station you pick it up from, you may want to edit the name in the database in order to be able to group properly by operator. Contact your DME partner about this.

- ❖ The starting date and time of the GPRS connection, including time zone information
- ❖ The duration of the GPRS connection
- ❖ The number of bytes sent
- ❖ The number of bytes received

This information is used for building the statistics database on the server, if the logging functionality is enabled (see **Enabling traffic logging** on page 374).

Messaging traffic

Windows Mobile, Symbian, and UIQ 3.0 devices are able to collect information about messaging usage. The device automatically logs the use of messaging traffic. Messaging includes SMS (Short Message Service) messages and MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service) messages. Currently, there is no technical way to distinguish between the two types of messages.

The following information is recorded on the device:

- ❖ The device ID
- ❖ The current device user
- ❖ Whether the device was roaming
- ❖ Mobile country code (MCC) - the country of your location
- ❖ Mobile network code (MNC). Together with the MCC, the MNC uniquely identifies the mobile phone operator/carrier that handled the message at your end
- ❖ Name of operator as retrieved from the relay station. Note that since the operator name can be spelled differently depending on which relay station you pick it up from, you may want to edit the name in the database in order to be able to group properly by operator. Contact your DME partner about this.
- ❖ The number of messages (SMS and MMS)
- ❖ The date and time of the message, including time zone information
- ❖ The direction of the message - incoming or outgoing
- ❖ The phone number of the recipient or sender of the message
- ❖ The number of parts in the message - long messages are automatically divided into parts, and each part is chargeable
In case of MMS messages, the following is also recorded:
- ❖ The duration of the GPRS connection required to send or receive the MMS
- ❖ The number of bytes sent
- ❖ The number of bytes received

This information is used for building the statistics database on the server, if the logging functionality is enabled (see **Enabling traffic logging** on page 374).

MCC, MNC and operator names

Lists of mobile country codes (MCC) and mobile network codes (MNC) are stored in tables in the DME server database. This is done as part of the DME server installation.

A list of operator names is also stored in a table in the DME server database. However, this list is built dynamically by gleaning the information from the data sent in by the devices. As part of the traffic logging, the device sends in the friendly operator name of the MNC. The first device to send in the operator name of a MNC wins - meaning that the name of that particular MNC will not be changed by other devices.

The device gets this operator name from the network relay station. However, the relay stations can contain errors, such as spelling mistakes or outdated operator names. For instance, a relay station may report the name of **MCC 238 - MNC 01** as **TDK-MOBIL**, but the operator now calls itself **TDC**.

If the list of MCC and MNC is flawed, or if the operator name is wrong, you can change the information in the DME server database. For more information, contact your DME partner.

Appendix E: myDME

myDME is every DME user's personal space on the DME server. It provides an overview of each user's devices, and provides a place where every user can store his or her personal S/MIME certificate.

To log in to **myDME**, open a browser, and enter the URL of the DME server. You can find the path to the DME server in the client - open **Settings > General**, and copy the path from the field **Server path**.

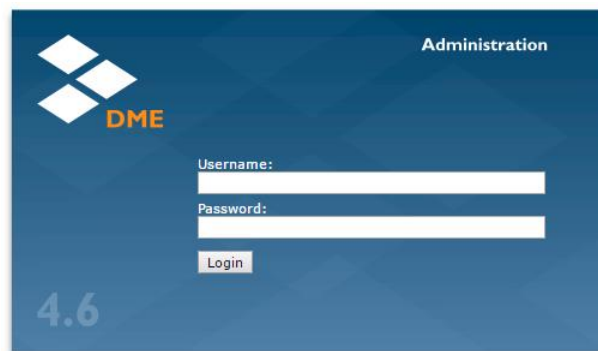
The path looks similar to this:

```
https://dme.your-domain.com:5011
```

If you are an administrator, but want access to **myDME**, you must add `/mydme/mydevices` to the path, like this:

```
https://dme.your-domain.com:5011/mydme/mydevices
```

You are presented with a login screen:



Enter your usual network credentials - the same as the ones you use when logging in to DME on the device. When you click **Login**, DME will check if you are an **Administrator** or a **User**. If you are a user, you are redirected to **myDME**.

This page shows a list of the devices that are connected with your user name. This could for instance be a Symbian phone and an iPad tablet. For each device, a number of features are available - these features are described in the following sections.

Furthermore, clicking **S/MIME certificates** in the page menu enables you to upload and manage your personal S/MIME certificates. They are used when sending and receiving encrypted e-mails. See **Brief introduction to S/MIME** on page 382 and subsequent sections.

Device overview

The primary screen on **myDME** is your device overview. Here you can see statistics for all devices you hold, if they have been connected to DME.

Your screen might look like this:



For each device, this screen shows a picture of your device, along with its model name, phone number, device ID (IMEI or Apple UDID), and the version of the DME client installed on the device.

The page menu (the menu along the left side of the screen) lets you perform various operations with your device. The most important of these functions is the **Delete device data** function, that lets you perform a device wipe in case you lose your device. You can also force a synchronization of the device.

The following device commands are available:

- ❖ **Delete device data**

See **Delete device data** on page 58.

- ❖ **Force synchronization**

See **Force synchronization** on page 61.

Furthermore, you can use this page to manage your S/MIME certificate. See the following sections.

Certificates

The **S/MIME certificates** function in the **Certificates** part of the page menu lets you manage your S/MIME certificate. This is required if you use signed e-mails.

As a user, all you need to know is that you must:

1. Upload your private certificate to the DME server using the **Import certificate** action. See **User** on page 247.
DME will store the certificate safely.
2. Enter the password for your private certificate on the device:
Settings > Security > Private key password.

The following sections outline the basics of S/MIME, and provide more details about how DME manages S/MIME certificates.

Brief introduction to S/MIME

Secure Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) provides a secure method of sending e-mail and is incorporated into many popular e-mail applications. S/MIME provides confidentiality and authentication by using the RSA asymmetric key system, digital signatures, and X.509 digital certificates. S/MIME complies with the Public Key Cryptography Standard (PKCS) #7 format and has been proposed as a standard to the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

With S/MIME, the sender of an e-mail can provide a guarantee to the recipient that the e-mail is in fact sent from the sender, and that the content of the e-mail has not been tampered with on the way to the recipient. S/MIME relies on a system of public/private keys and trust authorities.

To be able to send a signed e-mail (that is, provide a digital signature to the e-mail, ensuring that the e-mail was in fact sent from the person in question), you need to take contact with a trust authority, such as Verisign, Thawte, or a national trust authority (such as TDC in Denmark). The trust authority establishes your identity and issues a private key and an X.509 certificate to you. These keys are sent to you in a password-protected PKCS12 file. The X.509 certificate may contain various information about you, but certainly contains the e-mail address to which the keys are bound. Your public key is included in the X.509 certificate. It has now been established that the trust authority vouches for your identity.

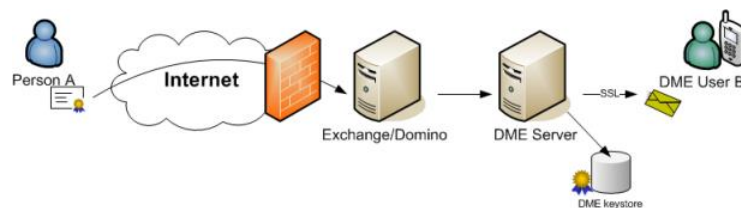
When you send an e-mail to another person, you can now sign the message. When the recipient receives the signed e-mail, he/she needs to be in possession of your public key to verify the signature (some messaging applications automatically attach your public key when you send a signed message). Using your public key, the messaging application will check if the certificate is trusted by an authority that it also trusts, and the application will then often prompt to store the certificate.

Now that the recipient has your public key, he/she can receive signed e-mail from you and send encrypted mail to you.

To send *encrypted* e-mail, you need the public key of the person you want to send to. You can obtain the public key of the recipient by asking him or her to send you a signed e-mail.

Receiving signed e-mail

The process of receiving signed e-mails can be illustrated as follows.



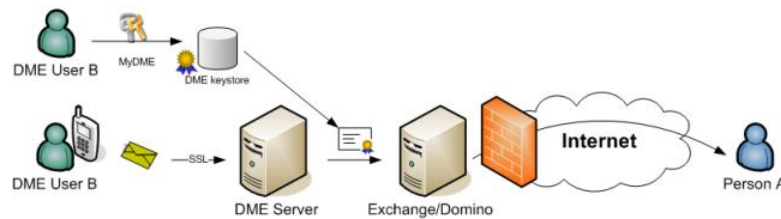
- ❖ Person **A**, who is external to the DME system, uses his private key to sign an e-mail, which he sends to user **B**. His e-mail application automatically attaches his public key.
- ❖ The signed e-mail is sent through the Internet to the corporate collaboration system of DME user **B**.
- ❖ DME sends a notification to user **B**'s device that a new e-mail has arrived.
- ❖ When user **B** synchronizes his DME client, the DME server will check if the public key of **A** exists on the server. If not, the key is extracted from the e-mail and stored in the DME server database.
- ❖ DME sends the e-mail to **B** through the usual secure SSL connection, with an indication that the e-mail has been signed by **A**.

Users of the DME system can now use the public key of **A** to send encrypted e-mail to **A**. See **Sending encrypted e-mail** on page 385.

Note that if user **B** chooses the **Reply** function in a signed e-mail in the client, the reply will by default be signed also. See **Sending signed e-mail** on page 384.

Sending signed e-mail

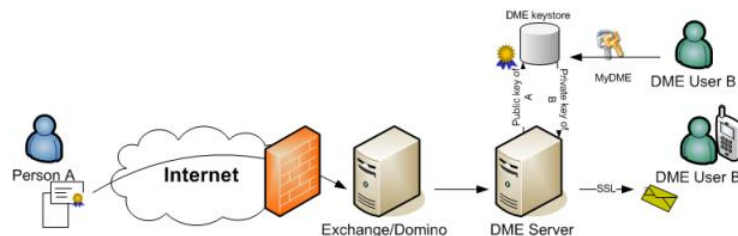
The process of sending signed e-mails can be illustrated as follows.



- ❖ In order to be able to send signed e-mails from his device, user **B** uses **myDME** to upload his personal certificate containing his public and private keys. This only has to be done once.
- ❖ User **B** then sends an e-mail to person **A** from his device, marked as *signed*, and synchronizes his device.
- ❖ Before delivering the e-mail to the collaboration system, DME verifies that user **B** has a valid personal certificate stored on the server.
- ❖ If this is the case, the e-mail is passed to the collaboration system to be signed and sent to **A**. If not, the e-mail is returned to **B** with an error message specifying the problem.

Receiving encrypted e-mail

The process of receiving encrypted e-mails can be illustrated as follows.



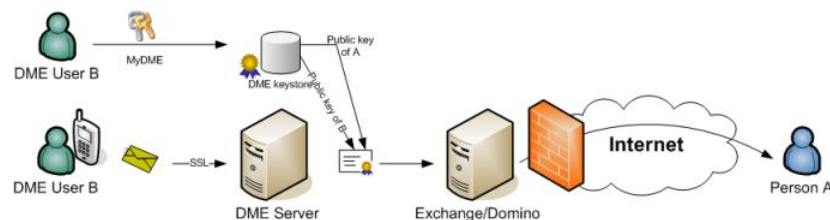
- ❖ Person **A**, who has the public key of **B** installed in his e-mail application, sends an encrypted e-mail with an attachment to user **B**.
- ❖ The encrypted e-mail is sent through the Internet to the corporate collaboration system of DME user **B**.
- ❖ DME sends a notification to user **B**'s device that a new e-mail has arrived.
- ❖ When user **B** synchronizes his DME client, the DME server will check if the private key of user **B** has been installed on the server (using **myDME** or otherwise). If not, **B** receives a message that the encrypted message could not be decrypted.
- ❖ If the private key exists, the message is decrypted on the DME server, and the message (without attachments) is transferred to **B** using the secure SSL connection. **B** can download the attachment

separately (this would not be possible if the message had to be decrypted on the client).

Sending encrypted e-mail

If person **A** has sent a signed e-mail to a DME user at any point in time and in that way submitted his public key to the DME server, every DME user is able to send an encrypted e-mail to **A** using the e-mail address registered in **A**'s public certificate. Furthermore, the DME user must have a public key stored on the DME server. This is required for the user to be able to store an encrypted e-mail in his own Sent box.

The process of sending encrypted e-mails can be illustrated as follows.



- ❖ User **B** uses **myDME** to upload his personal certificate, if he has not already done so.
- ❖ User **B** sends an e-mail to person **A** from his device, marked as *encrypted*, and synchronizes his device.
- ❖ Before delivering the e-mail to the collaboration system, DME verifies both person **A** and user **B** have a valid public certificate stored on the server.
- ❖ If both these conditions are fulfilled, the e-mail is encrypted and passed to the collaboration system. If not, the e-mail is returned to **B** with an error message specifying the problem.

Signed and encrypted e-mail

A DME user can also receive and send e-mail which is both signed and encrypted.

To *receive* signed and encrypted e-mail, the DME user's personal certificate containing his public and private keys must be stored on the DME server through **myDME**.

To *send* signed and encrypted e-mail, the recipient's public key must furthermore be located on the DME server.

S/MIME and DME

Imagine the setup described above in a DME setting. For a user to read a signed and/or encrypted e-mail on a mobile device, the user would need to download and install certificates on the device. Furthermore, to send an signed e-mail, the user's private key would need to be installed on the mobile device. This is impractical for a number of reasons:

1. Security: If your mobile device is lost, your private key is in danger of being stolen. If that happens, another user could in theory digitally pose as you ("identity theft").
2. Security: Not all users in a mail system knows about certificates, S/MIME and all that, and may tend to just accept any prompt to install certificates.
3. Security: Spam and virus filters are unable to scan S/MIME e-mails.
4. Administration: Why should all users have the trouble of managing certificates on their mobile devices?

Instead of users storing certificates on their mobile devices, DME stores all certificates on the server. There are a number of advantages to this:

1. Certificates are not stored on the devices, and therefore they cannot be lost.
2. The administrator gets to decide which trust authorities to include in the trusted list.
3. Spam and virus filters can be applied to e-mails after decryption on the server.
4. If an *external person* (that is, a person identified by an e-mail address which is not part of the DME system) exists on the DME system, every user in the DME system can send encrypted messages to that external person. The public certificate from the external person is automatically accepted by the server.
5. The certificate part of a signed message sent to several DME users is stored on the DME server, and only the e-mail as such is passed on to the users - saving traffic costs. The last part of the e-mail's journey to the reader is subject to the heavy encryption and security schemes of DME anyway.
6. The attachments of encrypted messages sent to a DME user are stored encrypted on the server, and only the e-mail as such is passed on to the user - saving traffic costs and storage and processing power on the devices. The user can choose to download the decrypted attachments separately.

When DME administers the keys, the users' personal certificates holding their public and private keys must be uploaded to DME in order for the users to be able to send signed and encrypted messages. This is where **myDME** comes in. With **myDME**, users upload their own personal certificates with additional password protection. This additional password protection means that an administrator cannot access the private keys, even though he has physical access to the server on which the keys are stored.

In order to be able to send signed messages from or decrypt received messages on the device, the user needs to enter the password for the private key, which he entered when uploading the personal certificate. This password is entered in the security settings page of the client.

Appendix F:

AdaptivePush™

AdaptivePush™ is a technology which enables mobile devices to receive notification of e-mail, calendar entries, contacts etc. as they occur in the collaboration system by network push (or: *IP push*) using the GPRS network, falling back to using SMS push in case the GPRS network is unavailable.

In large organizations, the cost of SMS push can be considerable. Therefore it makes good sense to make use of the GPRS network to connect the mobile device with the collaboration system. The price for one SMS is usually fixed; on the GPRS network, you pay according to the volume of traffic. According to most calculations, using the GPRS network pays off if you receive just a single e-mail a day.

Furthermore, sending commands over the GPRS network is much faster than sending via SMS.

Devices that are connected to the DME server using network push are shown with the following icon in the **Devices** tab:



Please note that special considerations apply for iOS and Android devices. See **Notifications on iOS devices** on page 221 and **Notifications on Android devices** on page 224 for more information.

The technology behind AdaptivePush™

AdaptivePush™ works in the following way.

1. On the server, AdaptivePush™ is enabled for a client device.
2. The client receives the new setting at next synchronization.
3. In response to the new setting, the client initiates an HTTP connection to the server. This connection must be over a separate port from the port used for synchronization (which is **5011** by default). The default port used for network push is **5021** (**6011** in DME 2.0).

4. When initiating the connection, the client receives any commands that are ready for the client - such as e-mail sync commands, settings, or other commands, over the GPRS network.
5. The client does not break the connection, but keeps it open. However, the connection may be broken due to network problems, flight mode situations, or if the device is shut off.
6. The server tests whether the connection is still open according to a schedule of sign-of-life signals. First, a signal (an HTTP packet) is sent after one minute. Then, three packets are sent at intervals of 3 minutes. Then, five packets at intervals of 5 minutes. This scheme of ever-increasing intervals continues until a sign-of-life signal is sent every 30 minutes. The packet which is sent from the server contains information about when the server will contact the client again.
7. If the server does not contact the client after the specified period of time, the client tries to reconnect to the server every minute for 10 minutes before giving up.
8. When the client is turned back on or the network connection is restored, the HTTP connection with the server is also restored. Until then, the server pushes new e-mail commands and other commands by means of SMS messages (or, in the case of iPhone, possibly using APNS).

If, for some reason, the network push functionality is turned off on the server, the server tells the client to shut down the connection, and resorts to SMS push again.

To set up the server to enable network push, enable the setting **Network push active**, and configure the **Network push path** in **Settings** (see **General settings** on page 326).

For each resource in the notification framework, you can set up whether to use network push only or adaptive push (that is, with fallback to notification by SMS). See **Notification** on page 206.

Troubleshooting network push

Please read this section if you find that the network push connection over the network push port is not stable. As previously described, the interval between network push keep-alive signals should gradually build up to about 30 minutes. If this process is interrupted, it will begin over again and again, which can cause various problems on the device:

- ❖ Excessive battery drain
- ❖ General instability
- ❖ Out-of-memory situations
- ❖ Eventually device reboot

The problems appear differently on different devices.

Two things especially can cause problems:

1. The firewall/proxy through which the network push connection is routed to the DME server is unable to keep connections for long period of times. This can be a default configuration in the firewall/proxy or NAT settings.

This is the most likely root to the problem. The firewall or network administrator is able to monitor the connections to the network push port on DME, and see where the connection is cut off after a time with no activity. If it is a global configuration, this could also affect any VPN connections that time out if they do not have a "server ping" setting to keep the connection alive.

Solution: Configure the firewall to only cut the connection if the connection is idle for a period of time that exceeds the maximum keep-alive time. This keep-alive time is set in the **Connection** section of the **Client** setup panel of the **Server configuration** page. For more information, see **Client** on page 172.

2. The mobile network is not set up to allow long connections, and automatically disconnects after a fixed number of seconds/minutes - this is a mobile operator setting.

If there is a lot of traffic on the local mobile network, or if you have a misconfigured GSM antenna or network, then the network is unable to service all clients. The network then disconnects any clients that are not actively using the data connection. The network will not close a data sync connection, but it may close the network push connection.

Solution: To resolve this, you need to discuss a network upgrade with your mobile operator.

Appendix G: The Basic MDM client

Supported by: 

This appendix describes the *DME Basic Mobile Device Management client* – in the following called the Basic MDM client.

In many organizations, the users of mobile devices can be divided into three groups:

- ❖ Some users need to have a continually updated copy of their corporate e-mail and calendar in their pocket. Such users need the full DME client on their devices - the number of features available can be controlled through the license file.
- ❖ Other users do not require advanced DME features on their mobile devices. However, the DME administrator wants to be able to manage the devices and monitor how they are used. Such users need the Basic MDM client on their devices.
- ❖ Yet other users have another system for e-mail synchronization installed on their devices. The system administrators want to be able to manage the devices and monitor data consumption etc. Such users also need the Basic MDM client on their devices.

The Basic MDM client is an economical way to add more mobile assets to the portfolio of devices that can be managed by DME. Apart from keeping track of your assets, you can track voice and data usage, block applications on the devices, transfer files to the devices (option), wipe the device in case of theft or loss, and provision software to the client. Furthermore, it is easy to upgrade to the full DME client for e-mail and PIM synchronization features.

Basic MDM client features

The Basic MDM client supports a core set of DME features. The user interface contains a splash screen/About box and the following menu items:

- ❖ **Synchronize** (triggering synchronization of all available types: system information, files, and traffic log)
- ❖ **Settings** (see below)
- ❖ **Tools**
 - ❖ **Import** (triggering synchronization of all available types: system information, files, and traffic log)
 - ❖ **Log** (showing log of communication with server)
- ❖ **About** (showing version information)
- ❖ **Close** (hide the client)

The following is a brief description of the features of the Basic MDM client.

Settings synchronization

The Basic MDM client synchronizes settings with the DME server at every scheduled sync. The following settings can be set for the Basic MDM client.

- ❖ **User name**

The user's ability to change the user name depends on the setting **Device allowed to switch user** on the server. See **Anonymous users** on page 395.

- ❖ **Phone number**

The Basic MDM client is able to retrieve the phone number of the device by sending an SMS to the server's SMS modem, which responds with the number from which the SMS was sent. The phone number is necessary for SMS-based features, including DM actions, to work correctly on the device.

Please refer to **Appendix A - General settings** for a description for the following settings (see **General settings** on page 326):

- ❖ **Server path** (can be changed on device if permitted)
- ❖ **Launch on startup** (can be changed on device if permitted)
- ❖ **GPRS timeout** (can be changed on device if permitted)
- ❖ **Network push active** (can be changed on device if permitted)
- ❖ **Network push path** (can be changed on device if permitted)
- ❖ **Log traffic**
- ❖ **Background sync. when roaming**
- ❖ **Network push when roaming**

Apart from these settings, certain device specific settings may exist on the client (such as access points sequence on Symbian devices).

Please refer to **Appendix A -Security settings** for a description for the following settings (see **Security settings** on page 331):

- ❖ **Action on SIM card change** (can be changed on device if permitted)
- ❖ **Prevent uninstall of DME client**
- ❖ **Require trusted certificate**

Furthermore, all settings in the **File sync.** and **Scheduled sync.** sections are synchronized with the server, and they can be changed on the client (see **File sync. settings** on page 346 and **Scheduled sync. settings** on page 338).

Cost control

Note: This feature was removed in DME 4.1 SPI.

Statistics in the form of voice/data traffic and consumption are transferred to the server at every synchronization. These statistics can be used in combination with the Analyzer tool in any number of ways - you can for instance monitor for extraordinary usage patterns, use the data as input to budgets, or use the data when negotiating contracts with mobile operators. See **Appendix D: Traffic logging** on page 374 for more information.

Furthermore, you can specify various cost-reducing parameters to the use of the device when a user is roaming. See the **Roaming** section in the user guide for any DME 3.0 client (except iPhone).

Security

The Basic MDM client should always auto-start when the device is turned on. Only when the client is active can the DME administrator block applications, wipe the device in case of loss or theft, and specify an action in case of a SIM card change.

Asset management

The Basic MDM client will send in information about itself, just like regular DME clients do - information about the make and model of the device, firmware, etc. See **Information** on page 86 for more on this topic.

Furthermore, you can use the **Asset** panel section to register further information about the device throughout its lifetime (see **Asset** on page 96 for more information).

File synchronization

If the file synchronization add-on is enabled for the device, files can be synchronized between the device and the DME server file store.

To synchronize files between the device and a server that requires user-specific authentication, use the **Authenticate with user** option in the file sync rule. Due to the fact that the Basic MDM client user is anonymous, the client user cannot authenticate directly against a file server. For more information, see **Appendix C: File synchronization** on page 362.

Managing Basic MDM clients

Managing Basic MDM clients is much the same as for full DME clients, with one notable difference: the devices are not bound to real, identifiable users. Full clients are bound to an LDAP user in order to synchronize with the right mailbox. MDM clients, however, are only bound to the device, and can freely be moved between users.

The following sections describe how the MDM client is integrated into DME.

Deploying Basic MDM

The Basic MDM client can be provisioned to the devices in the same way as for regular DME clients, complete with the required root certificate and access points. The installation process is completely silent.

Due to the fact that there is no user authentication when using the Basic MDM client, it is recommended to set both the **Create device on first connect** setting and the **Client signature** setting to **True**. This will ensure that only clients that are known to the DME system can make a connection. For more information, see **Authentication** on page 174.



On Symbian devices, where a DME client is not installed already, the installation process evaluates any existing internet access points (IAPs) on the device, and chooses three access points which are entered in the **General settings** page on the device. For more information, see **Access points** on page 440. The user can change the selections later.

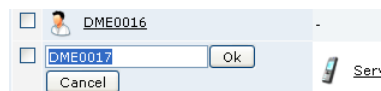
Anonymous users

The first time a device connects to the DME server, a "user name" is assigned to the device. DME creates user names sequentially - "DME0001", "DME0002", etc. For Windows Mobile users, the information in the device's **Owner information** field will be used as user name, if available.

In the **Devices** tab, the Basic MDM "users" are shown as wearing

white shirts: 

If the setting **Device allowed to switch user** is enabled on the server (see **Authentication** on page 174), the user name of the device can be changed by the user of the device, and the new name will then be synchronized to the server. If the setting is disabled, only the DME administrator can change the user name. He or she can do this by clicking the user icon and changing the name (if a device is assigned to the user):



Clicking **OK** changes the user name. The user name is updated on the client at the next sync. For more information about changing users, see **Switching users** on page 79.

Appendix H: Provisioning on legacy platforms

Over the years, several client platforms have been phased out:

- ❖ Symbian
- ❖ Windows Mobile
- ❖ Java
- ❖ BlackBerry

Even though those platforms are not officially supported, the DME server still includes features that support legacy devices - including provisioning features. In order to simplify the description of the **Provisioning** tab, all features that do not relate to the currently supported platforms (Android, Apple iOS, and Windows Phone) have been moved to this Appendix. This happened with the documentation for DME server 4.2 SP2.

From the **Provisioning** tab, you can manage the *deployment*, or roll-out, of software, access points, configurations, and profiles to your devices - both devices that are already managed in the DME system and devices that you want to start to manage.

Please note: If you are integrating with an external MDM system, then the entire **Provisioning** tab will be hidden in the DME Admin interface, and nothing in this chapter will be relevant to you. All provisioning is done from the external MDM system. For more information, see **Appendix B: External MDM integration** on page 350.

DME supports different types of provisioning:

- ❖ Provisioning by SMS or WAP push.
- ❖ Provisioning using the OMA DM protocol.
- ❖ Provisioning using Mark for Installation.
- ❖ Self-service provisioning.

The type of provisioning that you choose will depend on the capabilities of the device model and device platform that you want to deploy to, and your company policies. In the following sections, a list of supported device platforms will be listed for each type of resource that you want to deploy and for each provisioning method.

The overall process of provisioning – or *deploying* – software to a device is as follows:

1. Upload the software package to the DME server. See **Upload software** on page 413.
2. Select one or more software packages, and select the **Install software** icon. See **Installing software** on page 402.
3. Monitor the installation status. See **Status** on page 431 and **Provisioning status** on page 446.

The page menu in the **Provisioning** tab contains functions to provision the different types of items. From the page menu, you can also access functions to push information to devices. Those functions (under the **Send to device** heading in the page menu) are described under the **Devices** tab - see **Send to device** on page 63.

DME supports a wide array of device platforms and device models. Different device platforms, and even different device models using the same platform, may require different deployment methods. As a consequence of this, DME supports a number of different ways of deploying DME and other software, access points, and profiles to devices. This section provides an overview of these methods, and lists the appropriate methods for each supported device platform.

For all methods, the following infrastructure must be in place prior to deployment:

1. The DME Server must be installed, configured, and working.
2. Licenses for the appropriate number of managed devices must be installed on the DME Server.
3. An Internet connection must be properly configured on the devices. This step can also be automated as part of the installation. Please see Access points and bookmarks.
4. DME includes support for client signing. If this is enabled, a client must be signed, and the signature must be verified by the server for the client to establish a connection with the server. For more information about the effect of these security features on deployment, see **Add client signing key** on page 70.

For a detailed description of how to deploy DME on different device platforms, see Software deployment overview by platform.

Client deployment recommendations

The following table shows a brief overview of the recommended method of installation to each legacy platform.

Platform	Recommended installation method (and alternative)
BlackBerry	BES (SMS)
Java	OMA DM (SMS, WAP)
Symbian	OMA DM (SMS, WAP)
Symbian UIQ	SMS (WAP)
Windows Mobile	SMS (WAP)

For more information about each platform, see the subsequent sections.

Deploying to BlackBerry devices

Deployment using OMA DM:

Not supported by BlackBerry devices.

Deployment using SMS/WAP push:

Only SMS push is supported. When the client is provisioned to the device, the DME server stamps the server path and the device phone number into the .jad file which is downloaded to the device. WAP push is not recommended.

Certificates:

Soliton Systems recommends using an SSL certificate from a commercial certificate authority, such as VeriSign. BlackBerry devices are usually not allowed to connect to untrusted sites over the MDS-CS. If you choose to use the self-signed certificate, please refer to the Research In Motion documentation or your BlackBerry partner for information about adding the self-signed certificate to the MDS-CS server or adding a direct internet connection for the BlackBerry devices.

Other modes of deployment:

- ❖ BES installation: You can install DME using a BlackBerry Enterprise Server (BES) using the DME COD and ALX files. When done this way, the installation of the DME client is completely transparent to the users because device permissions can be set by the BES. See the documentation supplied by Research In Motion Limited for more information.
- ❖ Ad-hoc installation (see **Ad-hoc installation** on page 450).

Deploying to Java devices

Deployment using OMA DM:

Bootstrapping Java devices is supported, and Java devices should be able to pick the correct DME client for installation.

Installation and upgrade of the DME client is supported. However, it cannot be silent, and will not work on a HTTPS connection. The user receives a link by SMS. After entering the PIN code, the user must execute the software download link, and proceed with a regular installation.

Installation of *non-DME* software is supported, but with the same limitations as above.

Deployment using SMS/WAP push:

Both SMS and WAP push are supported. Note, however, that using WAP push for Nokia Series 40 is not recommended, as it can be difficult for the user to locate the received WAP push message. (Note that DME for Nokia Series 40 has been discontinued. Last versions are 3.5 build 1/2.0 build 16.)

When the client is provisioned to the device, the DME server stamps the server path and the device phone number into the .JAD file which is downloaded to the device. A separate server path by SMS is therefore not required (sending the server path by SMS is an option when using WAP push).

Other modes of deployment:

The DME client and other software can be deployed in other ways:

- ❖ Ad-hoc installation (see **Ad-hoc installation** on page 450).

Deploying to Symbian devices

Deployment using OMA DM:

Bootstrapping Symbian devices is supported, and Symbian devices should be able to pick the correct DME client for installation.

Silent installation and upgrade of the DME client is supported. Note that the root certificate used for signing the DME server's SSL certificate must be present on the device. The root certificates of major commercial providers of SSL certificates, such as VeriSign, Thawte, Entrust.net are normally present on all devices. When using a self-signed SSL certificate, the appropriate root certificate must be installed on the device before bootstrapping can occur.

Note also that in order to be able to upgrade the client using OMA DM, the security setting **Prevent uninstall of DME Client** must be **Disabled** for the device. This is done on the server. This is due to the fact that the client is uninstalled before the upgrade, and the client is unable to tell if it is the user or the DM process that is performing the uninstall. We are working on a resolution to this.

Installation of *non-DME* software is supported.

Deployment using SMS/WAP push:

Both SMS and WAP push are supported. However, when using a WAP push, the device tends to select a WAP access point for downloading the client. This will in some cases fail. When using SMS push, the device uses whichever access point that is already configured for the browser.

Other modes of deployment:

The DME client and other software can be deployed in other ways:

- ❖ Ad-hoc installation (see **Ad-hoc installation** on page 450).
- ❖ Auto-installation from memory card (see **Symbian auto-installation** on page 450).

Deploying to UIQ devices

Deployment using OMA DM:

Not supported.

Deployment using SMS/WAP push:

Both SMS and WAP push are supported.

Other modes of deployment:

The DME client and other software can be deployed in other ways:

- ❖ Ad-hoc installation (see **Ad-hoc installation** on page 450).

Please note that DME support for the Symbian UIQ platform has been discontinued.

Deploying to Windows Mobile devices

Deployment using OMA DM:

Installation using OMA DM is generally supported on WM 6.x devices. With WM Smartphone devices, we recommend WM 6.5. WM 5 devices may also work, but they have not been tested extensively.

Note that the phone manufacturer or distributor may apply policies on the phone that make OMA DM installation impossible. In such cases, the policies must be removed (if possible) before an OMA DM installation can be attempted. To do this, you can use a tool that Soliton Systems makes available from the DME Partner site: `ProvisioningHelper.cab`. Copy the file to the device, and run it. This changes some policies on the device, and afterwards you should be able to bootstrap the device. The tool must be run every time you need to bootstrap the device.

It is recommended to test the device types you intend to deploy DME on thoroughly before rolling out DME. Microsoft has created a tool called **MDM Connect Now Tool**, which logs the activities in the DM tree while a DM installation is in progress. This can help you locate any errors, for instance if a connection is not trusted, etc. You can also send the log to DME Support for investigation. The tool is available from the **Microsoft website**

<http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=61691925-07c8-4d29-bf11-9df43aediae94&displaylang=en>.

When you have verified that OMA DM works on the device, the following applies:

Bootstrapping WM devices is supported, and these devices are able to pick the correct DME client for installation. Note that if you are using a VeriSign certificate, you may find that WM 5 and 6 devices cannot be bootstrapped. In this case, see the *Setup notes* section of the release notes for **DME Server 3.5 SP02** at the **DME release notes site** **<http://resources.excitor.com/docs/release-notes>**.

Silent installation and upgrade of the DME client is supported. A special DME client called `xx.silent.cab` is used for this purpose.

Installation of *non-DME* software is supported. This requires that the software is signed, and that the corresponding root CA certificate is installed on the client. If the software is signed by a major CA such as VeriSign, this is normally the case.

Deployment using SMS/WAP push:

SMS push is supported. Some WM 6.1 devices (and newer) also support WAP push, but manufacturer differences apply.

Note also that Smartphones can only download `.cab` files (not `.exe` or `.zip`).

Other modes of deployment:

The DME client and other software can be deployed in other ways:

- ❖ Ad-hoc installation (see **Ad-hoc installation** on page 450).
- ❖ For WM Pocket PC devices, you can distribute the client on a memory card, including custom device settings. For more information, see WM configuration tool.

Installing software

The process of installing software on mobile devices is different from platform to platform, and there may even be differences within the same platform. In order to be able to support a large number of different devices types, DME offers different ways to deploy software to devices.

These methods are:

- ❖ Push installation (  )
- ❖ OMA DM installation ()
- ❖ Mark for installation (  )
- ❖ Other methods of deployment, including self-service (   )

These methods are described in the following sections. For an overview of the installation methods offered per device platform, see [Software deployment overview by platform](#).

For step-by-step instructions pertaining to the installation processes, see **Software** on page 411.

Push installation

Push installation means that the server sends a message to the device(s) by SMS or WAP, instructing the user to click a unique link to the software. Clicking the link (within a set amount of time) causes a specific DME client to be downloaded to the device, and the installation is initiated. The link is only valid for the amount of time specified in the field **Software push, ticket lifetime** in the **Client** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Client** on page 172).

After a series of prompts, the DME client is installed on the device.

Whether you should choose WAP or SMS push depends on the device. A WAP push just requires one click to get the DME client download started, but is not supported by all devices (notably many WM devices). Also, Symbian devices tend to attempt to use a WAP access point for downloading the client after a WAP push (which will not succeed). On the other hand, Java devices do not support SMS push. The recommendation, then, is to use WAP for Java devices only, and SMS push for all other devices that support push installation.

Compared with installation by OMA DM, there are some drawbacks to using the push method:

1. It is possible to send the wrong client to the user. By human error, you may for instance send a PocketPC client to a Smartphone device. The OMA DM bootstrap ensures that DME installs the correct client on the device.

2. You have to know the device type and OS before being able to push an appropriate client to a new device. Again, the bootstrap secures this.
3. The user must accept a number of prompts. Even though DME seeks to minimize the number of prompts required, each platform has different requirements when installing applications. The built-in DM engine, on the other hand, usually has sufficient rights to install the DME application without prompts.
4. You can only see that the installation has succeeded when the user actually makes a connection with DME. With the OMA DM installation method, DME keeps track of the entire installation process, which can be monitored in the **Status** panel in the **Software** page of the **Provisioning** tab (see **Status** on page 431).

DME Push installation **applies to:**

- ❖ **Symbian devices**
- ❖ **Symbian UIQ devices**
- ❖ **Windows Mobile devices**
- ❖ **Java devices**
- ❖ **BlackBerry devices**
- ❖ **Android devices**

OMA DM installation

DME uses the Device Management (DM) protocol defined by the Open Mobile Alliance (OMA) to acquire a deep knowledge of each device and to make silent installs and upgrades if possible.

With OMA DM, you can send a command to one or more devices to start the built-in DM engine in the device. The DM engine will supply information to DME about the make, model and other details about the device (*bootstrapping*). Based on this information, DME will select a DME client and install it silently on the device.

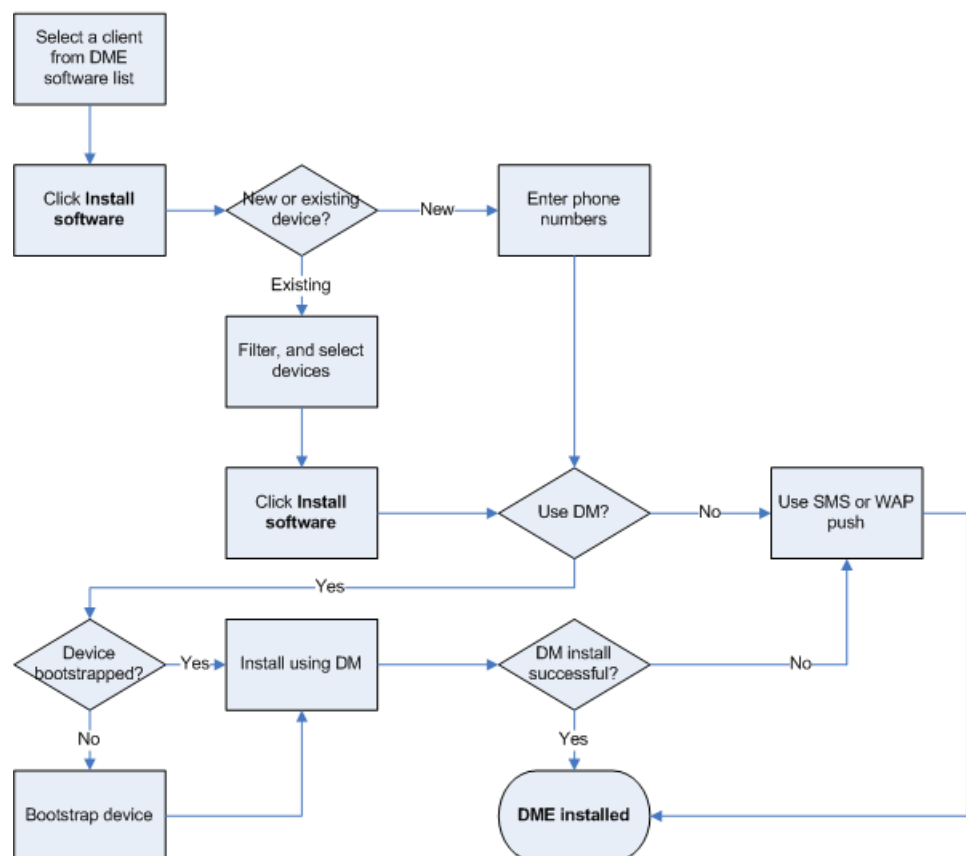
If the device is unknown to DME - that is, it has never been bootstrapped - the user must enter a PIN code (**12345**) to accept the instruction from DME to launch the bootstrapping process.

Not all devices support the use of OMA DM. DME will fall back to SMS-based installation or Mark for Installation as known from previous versions of DME in case the OMA DM method fails.

For OMA DM to work, *SSL certificates* must be in place to allow secure communication between DME and the client. The device management (DM) client built into the devices requires a known root certificate in order to process OMA provisioning commands from the DME server. Therefore, if you want to provision the DME software to the devices using OMA DM, you need to either use a commercial CA from VeriSign or others (recommended), or to send the root certificate to your devices using the **Send SSL certificate** function prior to installing any software using OMA DM. See **SSL certificates** on page 408.

The general process of installing a DME client can be seen below. The different steps are described in the subsequent sections.

Installing a DME client



This overall process applies to the installation of other software than the DME client as well.

OMA DM installation **applies to:**

- ❖ **Symbian devices**
- ❖ **Windows Mobile devices**
- ❖ **Java devices**

Please note

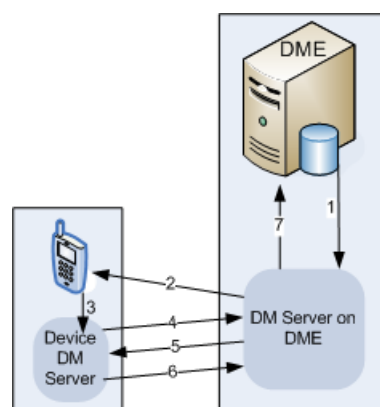
The level at which the different devices comply with the OMA standard is not uniform across device platforms, device OS versions, or even brands. One Nokia or HTC device may support OMA, whereas another model of the same brand does not. It is therefore sometimes a question of trial and error when distributing DME to many different device models. As described in the flowchart above, DME falls back to an alternative mode of installation if DM fails.

Bootstrapping devices

In order for DME to be able to use OMA DM functions, such as installing DME on a device, the device must be *bootstrapped*.

This is a process where DME sends an OMA DM bootstrap configuration to a device. The user must save and accept the configuration by entering the PIN code defined in the configuration sent by the server.

The device will initialize a connection to the DME DM server, which will investigate the device for DME DM functions. This can be illustrated in the following way, where the numbers in the illustration refer to the items below:



- I. The DME administrator chooses to bootstrap a device in the DME web interface, and DME passes the order to the DM server on the DME server machine.

2. The DM server sends an OMA DM bootstrap configuration to the device. The configuration contains the path to the DM server and a password.
3. The user accepts the configuration, and enters the PIN code defined in the field **OMA PIN** in the **SMS modem** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **SMS modem** on page 186). This transfers control to the built-in DM server on the device.
4. The device DM server connects to the DME DM server using the credentials given in item 2, and checks if there are any tasks to do. This tells the DME DM server that the initial bootstrap has been successful.
5. The DME DM server sends a list of tasks to the device.
6. The device DM server returns the results of the tasks to the device. Based on the results, the DME DM server can compile a list of actions that are possible to perform on the device, and how the device needs to perform the actions. This way, the DME DM server for instance knows exactly how to perform a silent upgrade of DME on the device, and if it is possible.
7. The DME DM server reports back to DME, and the DME web interface is updated to reflect the new knowledge about the bootstrapped device.

The bootstrap process will be performed in the following cases:

- ❖ When you attempt to install DME or any other software or access points using OMA DM on new devices.
- ❖ When you attempt to install DME or any other software or access points using OMA DM on existing devices which have not been bootstrapped before.
- ❖ When you choose to bootstrap one or more devices from the **Devices** tab. When you do this, you can choose to install the DME client at the same time (see **Bootstrap device** on page 67).

You can monitor the bootstrapping process in the **Status** panel section of the **Software** page (see **Status** on page 431).

For information about bootstrapping (enrolling) Apple iOS devices, see Enrolling devices.

DM on different platforms

The OMA DM protocol is supported in different ways on different platforms, and this is reflected in the way DME supports Device Management on the various platforms.

❖ **Symbian S60**

Bootstrap	Supported.
DME silent install	Supported. Some devices require the existence of an HTTPS certificate.
Install non-DME software	Supported.

❖ **Symbian UIQ**

Not supported.

❖ **Windows Mobile**

Bootstrap	Supported.
DME silent install	Supported on devices running WM 6.x. Use the DME client designed for DM installation, called xx.Silent.CAB .
Install non-DME software	Supported. Requires that the software is signed, and that a certificate is installed on the client.

❖ **Java**

Bootstrap	Supported.
DME silent install	DME installation is supported, but it cannot be silent, and will not work on a HTTPS connection. The user receives a link by SMS. After entering the PIN code, the user must execute the software download link, and proceed with a regular installation.
Install non-DME software	Supported, with the same limitations as above.

❖ **iOS**

Apple iOS devices do not support OMA DM. However, DME supports the Apple MDM APNS system. For more information, see Apple iOS MDM options.

❖ **Android**

Does not apply.

❖ **BlackBerry**

BlackBerry does not support DM.

Mark for installation

The **Mark for installation** method of deployment applies to DME client upgrades only. The upgrade only involves one question to the end user, and is very suitable for devices that do not support OMA DM.

This is a mechanism by which you tell one or more existing devices that a DME client upgrade is waiting for it. After specifying which devices are to be upgraded using **Mark for install**, the user will be prompted to download and install the upgrade the first time the client connects to the server.

For more information about how to use this method, see **Installing DME on existing devices** on page 425.

This upgrade method can be used for devices of all platforms except iOS.

The **Mark for installation** upgrade method **applies to:**

- ❖ **Symbian devices**
- ❖ **Symbian UIQ devices**
- ❖ **Windows Mobile devices**
- ❖ **Java devices**
- ❖ **BlackBerry devices**
- ❖ **Android devices**

SSL certificates

As the connection between the DME server and the devices is run through a secure (SSL) connection, an *SSL certificate* must be installed on the server and on each device, affirming that the data received through the SSL connection is in fact coming from the right server. The certificate is also required for bootstrapping devices.

When the DME server is installed, you can choose to deploy a SSL certificate. This is called a *self-signed* certificate. Or, you can choose to purchase a certificate from a trusted certificate authority (CA), such as VeriSign or Thawte, and deploy that on the server. Soliton Systems recommends using a certificate from a trusted CA, as some issues may arise when deploying the client to devices, if the device does not trust the self-signed certificate. Such issues are outlined below.

OMA DM

The following applies when installing DME clients **using OMA DM:**

- ❖ Non-commercial, self-signed certificates are not native to any mobile devices. The device management (DM) client built into the devices requires a known root certificate in order to process

OMA provisioning commands from the DME server. Therefore, if you want to provision the DME software to the devices using OMA DM, you need to either use a commercial CA from VeriSign or others (recommended), or to send the root certificate to your devices using the **Send SSL certificate** function prior to installing any software using OMA DM. See **Send SSL certificate** on page 65 for more information.

OMA DM deployment does not apply to Apple iOS devices, and the **Send SSL certificate** function cannot be used with Apple iOS devices, as they cannot receive WAP push.

The following applies when installing DME clients *using the self-signed certificate* and **using SMS push**:

- ❖ *Symbian (including UIQ) devices*: Installing the DME client will automatically install the root certificate without user interaction. If you are not using the root certificate, or if the certificate you use cannot be verified, the Symbian device will behave as a Java device (see below).
- ❖ *Java devices*: These devices do not allow the automatic installation of root certificates, so the user will need to trust the connection every time he or she connects to the DME server (or every time DME is launched, depending on device model). For a solution to this issue, send the certificate to the devices using the **Send SSL certificate** function as mentioned in the paragraph about OMA DM above.
- ❖ *Windows Mobile devices*: When the DME client makes the first connection to the server, the user will be asked if he or she wants to accept the untrusted connection to the server. The device will remember the user's choice.

Apple iOS devices

DME for iPhone and other iOS devices (iPod touch, iPad) cannot be installed using SMS push or OMA DM, but is installed through Apple App Store. When the user launches the client for the first time, and enters the server path, the **DME client 3.5.4** and later silently accepts the self-signed certificate (and certificates from any trusted CA).

Android devices

It is not possible to install root certificates on Android devices. It might be possible in the future if Google decides to implement it, but until that happens, the DME servers must use SSL certificates signed by a major certificate vendor such as Thawte or VeriSign, which have their root certificates pre-installed on Android devices. This means that no self-signed certificates are valid for connecting with the DME server.

This means that you need to install a certificate from a major certificate vendor on your DME server in order to connect using the DME client for Android. Note that different device vendors pre-install different root certificates, so you should contact your device vendor to make sure that the device you intend to purchase supports the certificate installed on your DME server.

If you already own a device, you can use the **Test connection** button in the Android client (**Settings > General > Server path**) to test the secure connection to the DME server. If no error is shown, the Android device is able to establish a secure connection to DME using the certificate installed. If DME displays an error, the device will not be able to connect to the DME server.

To assist you in trying out different certificates from your Android device browser, we have assembled a small collection of URLs for secure sites, using different certificates. See below.

<https://www.thawte.com>
<https://www.verisign.com/>
<https://www.buypass.no/>
<https://www.digicert.com/>
<https://secure.entrust.com/>
<https://www.geotrust.com/>
<https://www.globalsign.com/>
<https://www.verizon.net/>
<https://www.wellsfargo.com/>
<https://www.godaddy.com/>

This list is not complete.

We have provided a tool that can help you test this. On some older devices, it can be necessary to use this tool rather than the built-in **Test connection** function. Go to the **DME Resource Center** <http://resources.solitonsystems.com/dl/support-files>, and go down the page to find the **Android utility to test server certificate**.

Summary

For all platforms, Soliton Systems recommends using a 3rd party, trusted SSL certificate in order to ensure a smooth roll-out of DME to all supported platforms.

Other modes of deployment

There may be reasons not to use either OMA DM or Push install:

1. Some platforms do not support either method. This applies to **Apple** and (in part) to **Android** devices. For more information, see the platform-specific deployment sections later in this guide.

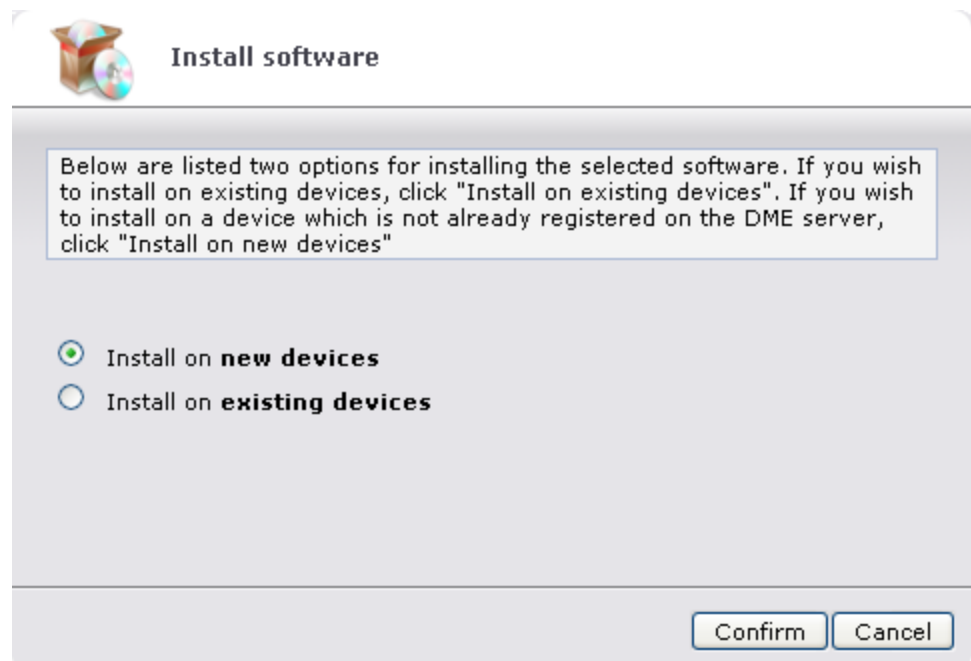
2. In circumstances that call for a less structured installation (such as during a test phase or when installing during a support incident), you can use ad-hoc installation. See **Ad-hoc installation** on page 450.
3. For Symbian devices, you can distribute DME on a memory card, which will auto-install DME. See **Symbian auto-installation** on page 450 for more information.
4. For Windows Mobile PocketPC devices, you can distribute DME on a memory card, along with custom configuration. For more information, see WM configuration tool.
5. You can let the users request a DME client through a self-service system. For more information, see **Self-provisioning** on page 453 or **Web-based self-provisioning** on page 456.

Software

The **Software** item in the page menu is the default view in the **Provisioning** tab. It is divided into a number of software setup *panel sections*. Each panel section is described in the following.

New devices vs. existing devices

Every time you install software to devices using the DME web interface, a message such as this:



asks you to choose if you want to install on new devices or existing devices. This distinction is especially important if you are using OMA DM for installing the DME client on the devices:

New devices are devices that are not known to the DME system at all - that is, they have never been connected using OMA DM or the DME protocol to the DME server. They are identified by their phone number. In principle, you do not know which phone model is at the receiving end of the installation prompt. Therefore, if you are installing the DME client using OMA DM, it is a good choice to do so by *bootstrapping* the device from the **Devices** tab and including the DME client, instead of picking a DME client first and then ordering an installation. This way, the DM bootstrap mechanism is allowed to select the default DME client for the platform in question. See *Bootstrap devices* for more information.

Existing devices are devices that are known to the DME system. Some version of the DME client has already been installed, and they have reported their characteristics and properties to the DME server. When installing the DME client using OMA DM, DME shows you a list of devices in the system to which the selected DME client applies (for instance Symbian S60 devices if you chose to install the S60 client). You can then choose the specific devices to which you want to install the client.

DME clients

 The **DME clients** panel section is used as a repository for software that you want to make available to clients.

The panel section shows a list of the software which has been uploaded to the DME server.

When you upload *DME client software* to the server, you are asked to select the name of the device type on which the software in question can be installed. The software is divided into groups based on this information - for instance **Android**, **Symbian series 60 - 3rd edition**, or **Windows Mobile Pocket PC**.

If you point to the name of the software, the description of the software package (if specified) will be shown as a tooltip. The list in the **DME clients** subtab consists of the following information:

❖ Software

This column shows the name of the software package. The software was named at the time of upload to the server. Clicking the software name lets you edit the software properties - see **Upload software** on page 413 for more information. You can also click the  icon to download the software to your own disk.

❖ **Version**

This column shows the version number assigned to the file when it was uploaded to the server.

❖ **SMS code**

This column shows the SMS code that gives a user access to downloading the software in question. For more information, see **Self-provisioning** on page 453.

❖ **Filename**

This is the name of the actual file uploaded to the server.

❖ **File size**

This is the size of the file uploaded to the server in kilobytes.

❖ **Upload date**

This is the date on which the file in question was uploaded to the server.

A star  next to the software name indicates that this is the default (favorite) installation package for the client type in question - meaning that this version will be installed on a device when it is bootstrapped with an instruction to also install the default DME client for a device of the type in question. It is also used for auto-upgrading clients. See **Make default version** on page 417 for more information.

A magnifying glass icon  indicates that this is a test version of a software package. See **Make test version** on page 420 for more information.

The following sections describe the available provisioning actions. Most of these actions apply both to **DME clients** and **Other software** (see **Other software** on page 431).

Upload software



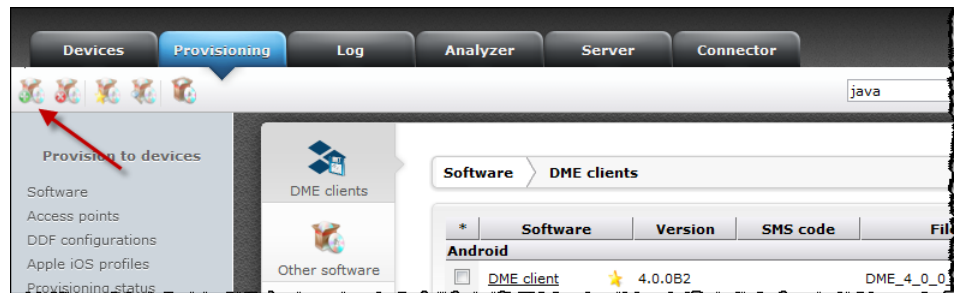
When you click the **Upload software** action, you can upload new software to the server - either a DME client or other software.

Uploading new software is a two-step process:

1. Choose and upload the file from your computer.
2. Supply some information about the software.

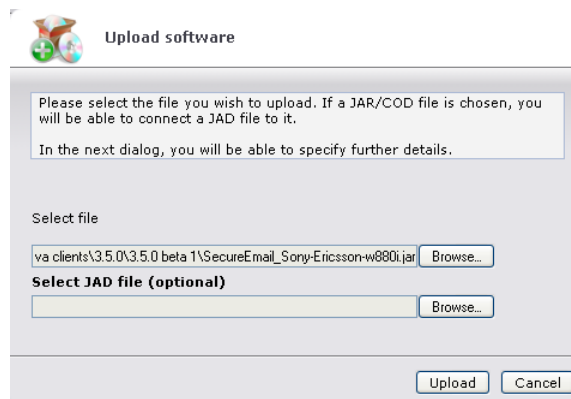
➤ **Uploading new software**

1. Click the **Upload software** button.



2. Browse for, and select the software or file.

Note that DME client software for *Java* and for *BlackBerry* devices is made up of two parts: a **.JAR** (Java) or **.cod** (BlackBerry) file, and a **.JAD** file. When browsing for the software, select the **JAR/COD** file first. You are then given the option to include a similarly named **.JAD** file as illustrated below.



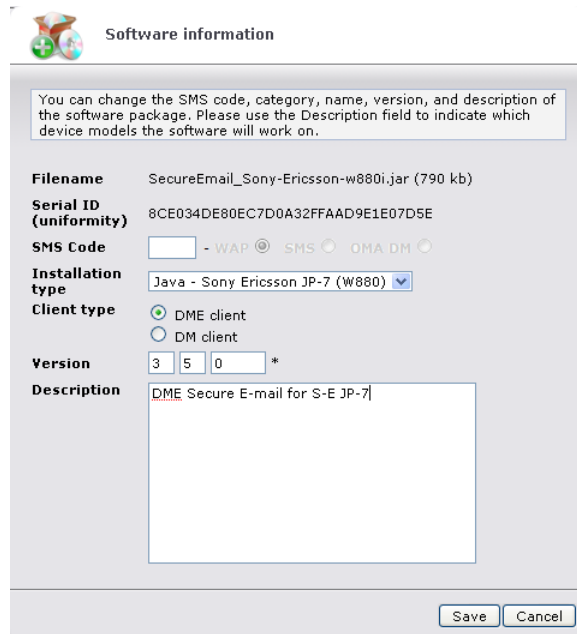
Note that DME also supplies a **.ALX** file for the BlackBerry client. This file is used in connection with installation through a BES server, and should not be uploaded to the DME server.

In-house apps for iOS devices consist of the program file (a **.IPA** file) and a picture file for the app icon. This picture should be a 512x512 pixel **.PNG** file. Note that in order for the users to be able to install iOS software, their devices must be enrolled with the DME server, and a provisioning profile allowing the installation of the in-house app must have been installed first. See **MDM on Apple iOS** and **Apple MDM** on page 99.

3. Click **Upload** to place the software on the DME server.

The DME server automatically selects a location for the software on the server file system.

After the file has been uploaded, the following window is shown (if you chose to upload the file from the **DME clients** panel section):



The window is titled "Software information" and contains the following fields:

- Filename:** SecureEmail_Sony-Ericsson-w880i.jar (790 kb)
- Serial ID (uniformity):** 8CE034DE80EC7D0A32FFAAD9E1E07D5E
- SMS Code:** [] - WAP ☒ SMS ☐ OMA DM ☐
- Installation type:** Java - Sony Ericsson JP-7 (W880) [v]
- Client type:** ☒ DME client ☐ DM client
- Version:** 3 5 0 *
- Description:** DME Secure E-mail for S-E JP-7

Buttons: Save, Cancel

The window contains the following fields:

❖ **Filename**

This is the filename of the file you selected. Please note that if you subsequently edit the software properties, a small icon appears after the filename: . By clicking this icon, you can download the software to your own disk.

❖ **Serial ID**

The serial number is automatically entered by DME. It ensures that you do not upload the same file several times under different names.

❖ **SMS code**

You can specify an SMS code to enable users to send an SMS with a request for the software to be download to the device. After entering a code into the field, you can choose if the software download initiated by the server as a result of a self-provisioning SMS from a user should be pushed by SMS, pushed by WAP, or provisioned using OMA DM (bootstrappable devices only - see **OMA DM installation** on page 403). For more information, see **Self-provisioning** on page 453.

❖ **Installation type/Category**

If you chose to upload the file from the **DME clients** panel section, you can select from a list of currently available clients. In the software list, the uploaded software will be entered under the heading you choose in this field. This list is maintained by Soliton

Systems, and reflects the device platforms currently supported by a DME client.

If you chose to upload the file from the **Other software** panel section, you can divide your software into self-defined categories. The list of categories is dynamically extended with any new category you add in the field. In the software list, the software is grouped into the defined categories.

❖ **Client type/Name**

If you chose to upload the file from the **DME clients** panel section, you can choose between **DME client** (the regular, full DME client) and **DM client** (the Basic MDM (device management-only) client - see **Appendix G: The Basic MDM client** on page 391). The software is placed in the appropriate subcategory in the software list.

If you chose to upload the file from the **Other software** panel section, you can freely enter a name for the uploaded software in this field.

❖ **Identifier**

If you have uploaded software for Apple iOS devices, you must specify an app identifier in this field that matches the identifier registered by the provisioning profile for this app - something like `com.companyname.appname`. Otherwise the device cannot verify (and run) the app.

❖ **Version**

For DME clients, it is important to specify the correct version of the software, because the DME server uses these version numbers to compare and update the device(s).

❖ **Description**

In this field you should specify the device types on which the application in question can run. The information in this field is shown as a tooltip in the software list.

When you have completed the form, click **Save** to upload the software with the specified information. You are returned to the panel section from which you selected this action.

➤ **Editing software properties**

1. To edit the properties of a software package, click the name of the software in the software list.

You can now edit the information you supplied when you uploaded the software.

2. To download the software to your own disk, click the small icon which appears after the filename: .
3. Click **Save** to save the edited software properties.

You are returned to the software list.

Delete software



Click the **Delete software** action to delete the currently selected software package(s) from the list. You are asked to confirm your action. The software is also removed from the DME server.

Make default version



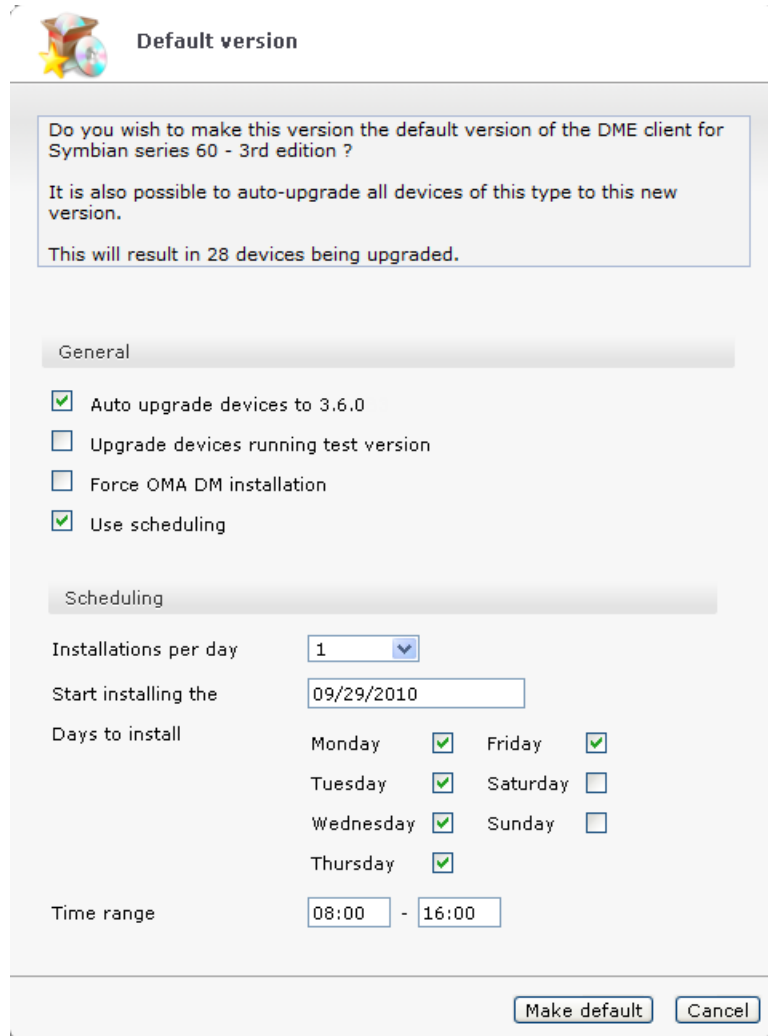
(**DME clients** panel section only.) All clients uploaded to the **DME clients** panel section are divided into groups corresponding to the device platforms supported by DME (**Android**, **Symbian Series 60**, **Windows Mobile Pocket PC**, and so on). In each of these groups of DME clients, one client should be made the *default client*. The status as default client is significant in the following respects:

- ❖ The default client is the client that will be installed by default when a bootstrap + client installation request is made (typically the most recent version of the DME client for the platform in question). See **Bootstrap device** on page 67 and **Installing software** on page 402.
- ❖ You can use the default status as an option when choosing devices on which to install a DME client. See **Device filter** on page 428.
- ❖ You can make DME upgrade existing devices automatically according to your specifications. See **Automatic upgrades** on page 418.

Select a client in a group, and click the **Make default version** icon to make that client the default client. The default client is marked with a star icon: ★.

Automatic upgrades

In the **DME clients** panel section, you can mark a DME client as *default version* - see **Make default version** on page 417. When you do this, you are given options to automatically upgrade a selection of your managed devices.



Default version

Do you wish to make this version the default version of the DME client for Symbian series 60 - 3rd edition ?

It is also possible to auto-upgrade all devices of this type to this new version.

This will result in 28 devices being upgraded.

General

☒ Auto upgrade devices to 3.6.0

☐ Upgrade devices running test version

☐ Force OMA DM installation

☒ Use scheduling

Scheduling

Installations per day: 1

Start installing the: 09/29/2010

Days to install:

Monday	☒	Friday	☒
Tuesday	☒	Saturday	☐
Wednesday	☒	Sunday	☐
Thursday	☒		

Time range: 08:00 - 16:00

Make default **Cancel**

The **Default version** window shows how many devices will be upgraded if you choose to auto-upgrade. Furthermore, the following options are shown:

General

❖ **Auto-upgrade devices to [selected DME client version]**

If you select this field, DME will initiate an installation on devices that run other versions than the selected default version - except devices that run a DME client marked as test version.

Furthermore, the other fields in the window are made available for selection.

❖ **Upgrade devices running test version**

If you select this field, the auto-upgrade will include devices that run a DME client marked as test version. The number of affected devices will be updated accordingly in the header text of this window.

❖ **Force OMA DM installation**

If you select this field, DME will attempt an OMA DM installation, even on devices that have not been bootstrapped. This means that DME will attempt to bootstrap the device before installing the new client. See **Bootstrapping devices** on page 405. If the OMA DM installation fails, DME will fall back to using SMS push instead.

Scheduling

❖ **Use scheduling**

If you select this field, you are able to *schedule* the installation. Installing a new DME client to many devices at the same time can result in a heavy load on the DME server. For this reason, you can spread out the installation over several days, and only at certain times, in order to reduce the load on the server.

❖ **Installations per day**

In this drop-down list, you can choose the number of installations the DME server should initiate per day. Default is **100**, but you can choose from **1** to **10000**, or you can choose **Unlimited**. With the unlimited option, the installation job is sent to all clients at the same time, but you can choose when that time should be in the other fields in the **Scheduling** group of fields.

❖ **Start installing on**

In this field you can the date of the first installation attempt. Default is today's date. Click the field to open a date picker.

❖ **Days to install**

In this group of fields, you can specify the days in the week on which DME should initiate installations on devices. Default is every week day.

❖ **Time range**

In these fields you can specify the time interval within which DME should initiate installations on devices. Click each field to open a time picker:



Drag the sliders to select the hour and minutes for a start time and an ending time, respectively, and click **Done**.

When you click **Install** using scheduling, DME will spread out the total number of installations over the specified time range, on the selected days. For instance, if you permit 10 installations a day, and you want to install on 30 devices, DME will initiate 10 installations on the next three selected days starting from the date in the **Start installing on** field, spread evenly over the selected time range.

Click **Make default** to make the selected version the default version and possibly auto-upgrade existing devices, or click **Cancel** to exit the window.

Make test version



(**DME clients** panel section only.) You can designate one or more software packages in each group of clients in the **DME clients** panel section to be *test clients*. When you for instance upload a new version of a DME client to the DME server, you may want to test it on selected devices before making it generally available. To do this, select one or more clients in the list, and click the **Make test version** action. A Test icon  is applied to the software in question. You can use the test status as an option when choosing devices on which to install a DME client - see **Device filter** on page 428.

A test client cannot also be a default client.

Install software



Click the **Install software** action when you want to install software on one or more new or existing devices. You must select the software package to install before selecting this action. For more information, see **Installing software** on page 402 and the sections on installing software on new or existing devices: **Installing software on new devices** on page 420 and **Installing DME on existing devices** on page 425.

Installing software on new devices

This description covers the installation of both the DME/Basic MDM client and other software on new devices.

It is possible to create devices in DME manually without installing DME (for asset management purposes), but that is not recommended practice and is not described here. See **New device** on page 55 for more information.

➤ **Installing software on one or more new devices**

The recommended way to install DME software on new devices is to use the **Bootstrap devices** function from the **Devices** tab. The reason for this is that this allows DME to choose the correct client for the new (and as such unknown) device. See **Bootstrap device** on page 67 for more information. The following method applies when you know which client to install on the new device or when you know that the device type does not support OMA bootstrapping.

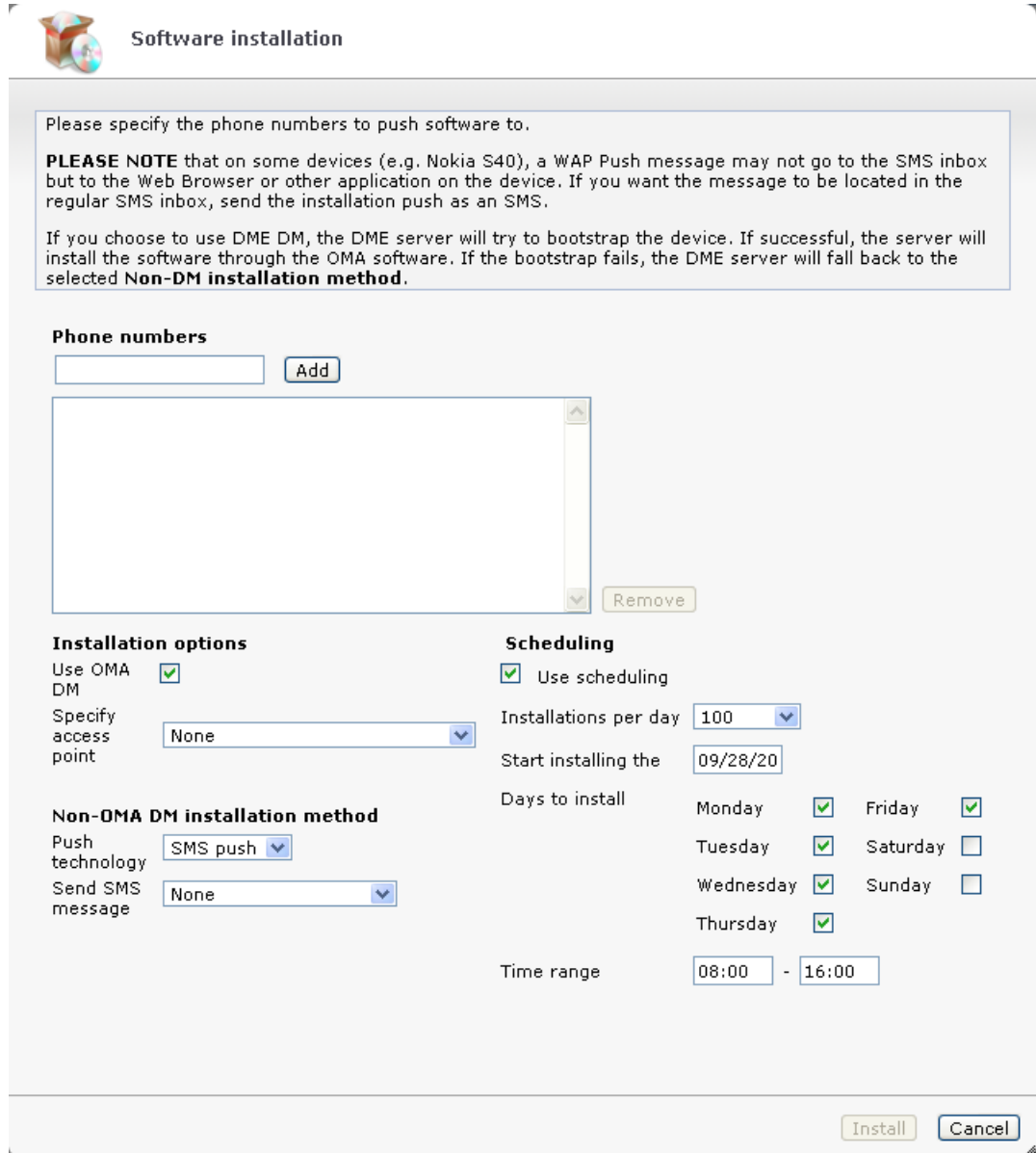
1. Select a DME client in the **DME clients** subtab of the **Software list** panel section in the **Provisioning** tab.

or

Select a software package in the **Other software** subtab of the **Software list** panel section in the **Provisioning** tab.

2. Click the **Install software** icon .
3. Select **Install on new devices**, and click **Confirm**.

The following **Software installation** window is shown:



Software installation

Please specify the phone numbers to push software to.

PLEASE NOTE that on some devices (e.g. Nokia S40), a WAP Push message may not go to the SMS inbox but to the Web Browser or other application on the device. If you want the message to be located in the regular SMS inbox, send the installation push as an SMS.

If you choose to use DME DM, the DME server will try to bootstrap the device. If successful, the server will install the software through the OMA software. If the bootstrap fails, the DME server will fall back to the selected **Non-DM installation method**.

Phone numbers

Installation options

Use OMA ☒ **DM**

Specify access point

Non-OMA DM installation method

Push technology

Send SMS message

Scheduling

☒ Use scheduling

Installations per day

Start installing the

Days to install

Monday ☒	Friday ☒
Tuesday ☒	Saturday ☐
Wednesday ☒	Sunday ☐
Thursday ☒	

Time range -

4. Complete the fields in the window (see below), and click **Install**.
5. Click **OK** to confirm your choice.

DME will now attempt to install the selected software according to your choices in this window. You can monitor the status of the software installation in the **Install status** panel section.

The **Software installation** window contains the following fields:

❖ Phone numbers

Add recipient devices by entering a phone number in the **Phone numbers** field and clicking **Add**. To remove a phone number

from the list, click the number, and click **Remove**. You can Ctrl+click to select multiple numbers in the list.

Installation options

❖ Use DM

If you select this field, DME will use the OMA DM engine when installing the DME client or other software on the device. If the device has not already been bootstrapped, this will be done first. See **Bootstrapping devices** on page 405. If you do not select this field, or the bootstrapping or the DM installation fails, DME will fall back to the push installation method specified below.

Note that this field is not shown unless the option is relevant to the type of client you are installing - it is only shown for Symbian and Windows Mobile clients.

For non-DME software, the option is shown unless the selected software is an in-house iOS app. Such apps are always installed using SMS push. The SMS contains a link to the app and an auto-generated manifest file, which the iOS devices uses for installing the app.

❖ Specify access point

This drop-down list shows the Internet access points defined in the **Access points list** page. The access point you pick will be installed on the device after the bootstrap (if bootstrapping is required), or else after the installation of the software. For more information, see **Bootstrapping devices** on page 405 and **Access points** on page 440. The selected access point will be used by the OMA DM server on the phone if you choose to install by OMA DM.

Non-DM installation method

❖ Push technology

If the DM bootstrap or installation fails, or if the **Use OMA DM** field is not selected, DME will install the selected software by the push technology selected in this drop-down list. This means that the device will receive a message with a unique link to the software. By clicking that link, the user downloads the software in question. The link is only valid for the amount of time specified in the field **Software push, ticket lifetime** in the **Client** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Client** on page 172).

In this drop-down list, you can choose between **SMS push** and **WAP push**. **SMS push** is generally recommended, since it does not require a server path, and the users generally find it easier to work with SMS messages than WAP messages.

Note that if you do choose **WAP push**, you must also specify a server path in the field **Send server path**, which is only shown if WAP push is selected.

❖ **Send SMS message**

You can send an information SMS to the users with a default message, or you can write your own message. The message should be slightly different depending on the installation method. It should say that a link will be sent to the device by SMS or WAP (if OMA DM is not used), and that it is OK to click the link to download the software.

- ❖ If you choose **Default SMS message**, the window is expanded to include an **SMS message** field, showing the default message that will be sent to the users. You can edit the default message by selecting the field **Create new default message**. This opens the **SMS message** field for editing. When you click **Install**, the edited message is saved as a new default message.
- ❖ If you choose **Write your own**, you can send a custom message, but you cannot save it as a new default message.

❖ **Send server path**

This field is only visible if you are installing a DME client, and only if **WAP push** is selected as push technology. If you select this field, DME will send the server path for the DME server to the device. The server path is needed for the client to locate the DME server on the Internet.

If you use **WAP push**, you should select this field, as the server path cannot be contained in the download link itself when using WAP. In case of **SMS push** and DM installation, the server path is automatically sent along with the DME client software.

Scheduling

❖ **Use scheduling**

If you select this field, you are able to *schedule* the installation. Installing a new DME client to many devices at the same time can result in a heavy load on the DME server. For this reason, you can spread out the installation over several days, and only at certain times, in order to reduce the load on the server.

❖ **Installations per day**

In this drop-down list, you can choose the number of installations the DME server should initiate per day. Default is **100**, but you can choose from **1** to **10000**, or you can choose **Unlimited**. With the unlimited option, the installation job is sent to all clients at the same time, but you can choose when that time should be in the other fields in the **Scheduling** group of fields.

❖ **Start installing on**

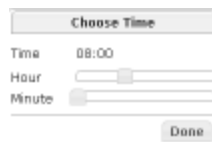
In this field you can the date of the first installation attempt. Default is today's date. Click the field to open a date picker.

❖ **Days to install**

In this group of fields, you can specify the days in the week on which DME should initiate installations on devices. Default is every week day.

❖ **Time range**

In these fields you can specify the time interval within which DME should initiate installations on devices. Click each field to open a time picker:



The image shows a 'Choose Time' dialog box. It has a title bar 'Choose Time'. Below the title bar, there are three rows: 'Time' with a value of '08:00', 'Hour' with a slider, and 'Minute' with a slider. At the bottom right, there is a 'Done' button.

Drag the sliders to select the hour and minutes for a start time and an ending time, respectively, and click **Done**.

When you click **Install** using scheduling, DME will spread out the total number of installations over the specified time range, on the selected days. For instance, if you permit 10 installations a day, and you want to install on 30 devices, DME will initiate 10 installations on the next three selected days starting from the date in the **Start installing on** field, spread evenly over the selected time range.

Installing DME on existing devices

If you want to upgrade or install the DME client on devices that are already registered in the DME system, follow the guidelines below. Note that the installation of non-DME software listed in the **Other software** subtab is described separately.

➤ **Installing DME on one or more existing devices**

1. Select a DME client in the **DME clients** subtab of the **Software list** panel in the **Provisioning** tab.

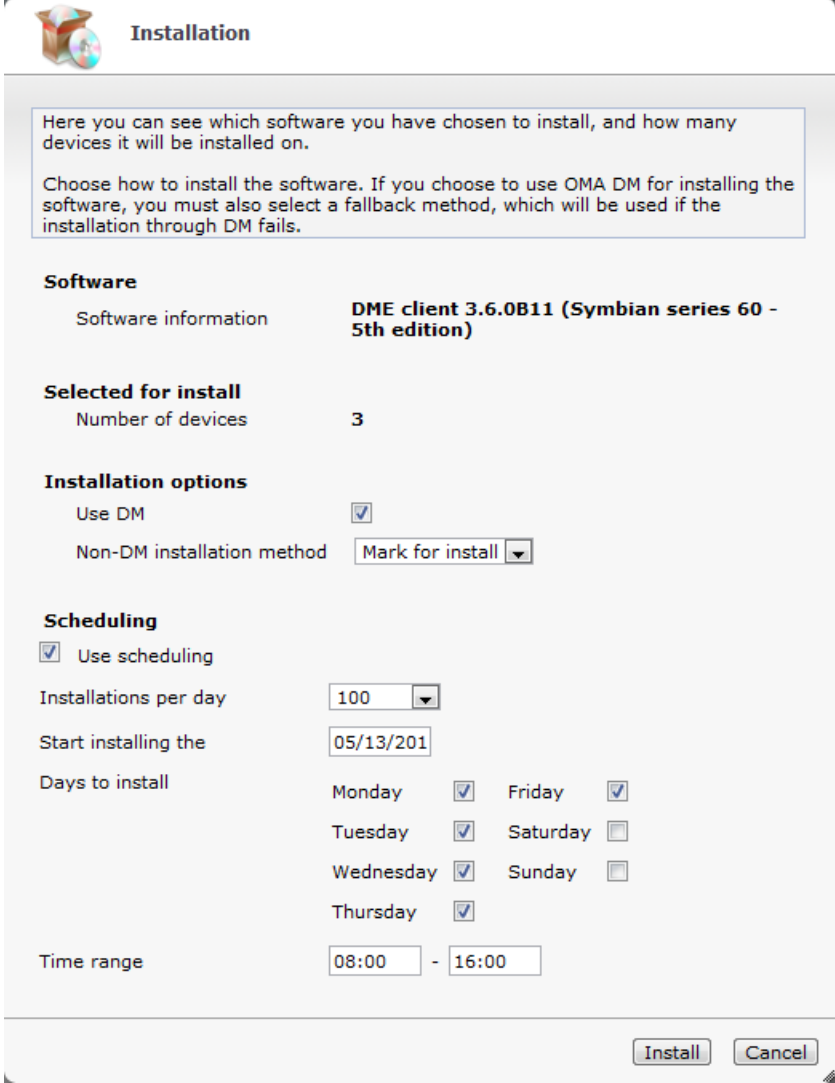
2. Click the **Install software** icon .

3. Select **Install on existing devices**, and click **Confirm**.

A window is shown in which you can search for and select the devices on which to install the selected software (see **Device filter** on page 428 for more information).

4. Choose the devices on which you want to install the client, and click the **Install software** icon .

DME shows a window similar to the following (see description below):



The screenshot shows the 'Installation' window in DME. It has a title bar with a CD icon and the word 'Installation'. Inside, there's a text box explaining that users can see chosen software and device counts, and choose installation methods (OMA DM or fallback). Below this are several sections: 'Software' showing 'DME client 3.6.0B11 (Symbian series 60 - 5th edition)'; 'Selected for install' showing '3' devices; 'Installation options' with 'Use DM' checked and a 'Mark for install' dropdown; 'Scheduling' with 'Use scheduling' checked, '100' installations per day, a start date of '05/13/201', and a grid of days (Monday-Friday checked, Saturday-Sunday unchecked); and a 'Time range' of '08:00 - 16:00'. At the bottom right are 'Install' and 'Cancel' buttons.

5. Click **Install** to install the selected client on the selected devices. Depending on your choices in this window, DME will either bootstrap the device and then install DME, or the DME client will be sent via SMS or WAP push, or the devices will be marked for installation. The **Installation status** window is shown so you can monitor the status of the software installation - see Installation status.

The **Installation** window shows information about the client you are about to install and the number of devices you have selected.

Furthermore, you can specify options in the following fields:

Installation options

❖ Use DM

If you select this field, DME will use the OMA DM engine when installing the DME client or other software on the device. If the

device has not already been bootstrapped, this will be done first. See **Bootstrapping devices** on page 405. If you do not select this field, or the bootstrapping or the DM installation fails, DME will fall back to the push installation method specified below.

Note that this field is not shown unless the option is relevant to the type of client you are installing - it is only shown for Symbian and Windows Mobile clients.

For non-DME software, the option is shown unless the selected software is an in-house iOS app. Such apps are always installed using SMS push. The SMS contains a link to the app and an auto-generated manifest file, which the iOS devices uses for installing the app.

❖ **Non-DM installation method**

If the DM bootstrap or installation fails, or if the **Use DM** field is not selected, DME will install the selected software by *push* or *pull* technology.

Push means that the device will receive a message with a unique link to the software. By clicking that link, the user downloads the software in question. The link is only valid for the amount of time specified in the field **Software push, ticket lifetime** in the **Client** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Client** on page 172). In this field, you can choose between **SMS push** and **WAP push**. **SMS push** is generally recommended, since it does not require a server path, and the users generally find it easier to work with SMS messages than WAP messages.

Pull means that the device will be notified of the software download the next time it synchronizes with the server. The user will then be prompted to download and install the software. Choose **Mark for installation** to achieve this. In the **Installation status** window you can monitor when the marked devices receive their new clients.

Note that **.CAB** files cannot be distributed in this way to Windows Mobile Smartphones; instead, use the corresponding **.EXE** file. See the "Client Deployment Guide" for more information.

Scheduling

❖ **Use scheduling**

If you select this field, you are able to *schedule* the installation. Installing a new DME client to many devices at the same time can result in a heavy load on the DME server. For this reason, you can spread out the installation over several days, and only at certain times, in order to reduce the load on the server.

❖ **Installations per day**

In this drop-down list, you can choose the number of installations the DME server should initiate per day. Default is **100**, but you can choose from **1** to **10000**, or you can choose **Unlimited**. With the unlimited option, the installation job is sent to all clients at the same time, but you can choose when that time should be in the other fields in the **Scheduling** group of fields.

❖ **Start installing on**

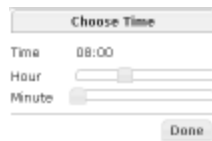
In this field you can the date of the first installation attempt. Default is today's date. Click the field to open a date picker.

❖ **Days to install**

In this group of fields, you can specify the days in the week on which DME should initiate installations on devices. Default is every week day.

❖ **Time range**

In these fields you can specify the time interval within which DME should initiate installations on devices. Click each field to open a time picker:

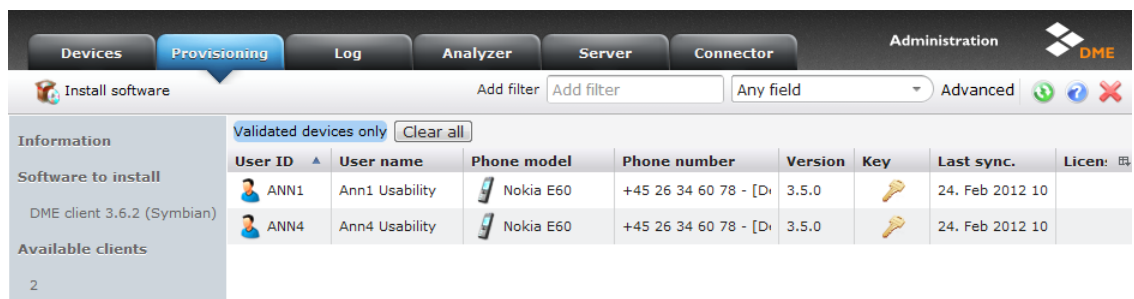


Drag the sliders to select the hour and minutes for a start time and an ending time, respectively, and click **Done**.

When you click **Install** using scheduling, DME will spread out the total number of installations over the specified time range, on the selected days. For instance, if you permit 10 installations a day, and you want to install on 30 devices, DME will initiate 10 installations on the next three selected days starting from the date in the **Start installing on** field, spread evenly over the selected time range.

Device filter

When choosing which devices to install DME on, a window similar to the following is shown:



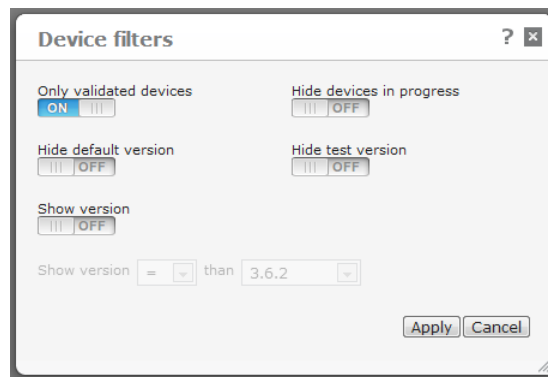
The screenshot shows the 'Provisioning' tab in the DME software. It displays a table of 'Validated devices only' with the following columns: User ID, User name, Phone model, Phone number, Version, Key, Last sync., and Licen:.

User ID	User name	Phone model	Phone number	Version	Key	Last sync.	Licen:
ANN1	Ann1 Usability	Nokia E60	+45 26 34 60 78 - [D]	3.5.0	🔑	24. Feb 2012 10	
ANN4	Ann4 Usability	Nokia E60	+45 26 34 60 78 - [D]	3.5.0	🔑	24. Feb 2012 10	

On the left side, there is a sidebar with 'Information' (Software to install: DME client 3.6.2 (Symbian)), 'Available clients' (2), and 'Install software'.

If you chose to install software from the **DME clients** panel section, the device list is by default filtered by the device type and version of the DME software, as specified when it was uploaded to the server. In the illustration above, a Symbian 3.6.2 client was selected. Hence, the list shows all Symbian devices using a version less than the client you want to install. Those devices are called *validated devices*.

You can change the filter criteria by specifying them in the filter boxes at the top. They work in the a similar way to what is described in **Filter bar - new style** on page 36, but the **Advanced** filters are different. Note that you cannot choose advanced filters when installing **Other software**.



The **Device filters** box contains the following fields:

❖ **Only validated devices**

If this setting is **On**, DME shows only devices where the device model is known to be able to run the currently selected client. This means that they must be listed in the window **Device types** with the currently selected client specified as **DME version type**. See **Device types** on page 437 for more information.

If you do not select this field, DME shows all devices, regardless of device type, if they match the other filtering criteria. Furthermore, the fields **Hide default version** and **Hide test version** are disabled, as "default" and "test" versions cannot be guaranteed to have the same DME version type as the selected software.

❖ **Hide default version**

If this setting is **On**, DME hides all devices where the default version of the selected client software is already installed

(indicated with a star ★). This is useful if you want to install the default client version on devices that are not already running the default version.

❖ **Hide test version**

If this setting is **On**, DME hides all devices where the test version of the selected client software is installed (indicated with a magnifying glass 🔍). This is useful if you want to install the

default client version on all devices of a certain type, except those that are currently testing a different client version.

❖ **Hide devices in progress**

If this setting is **On**, DME hides those devices in the list where an installation is already in progress. You typically do not want to make a new installation on a client that is already busy with a DME DM task, or which is marked for installation. If you need to cancel a task in progress, you can do so in one of the installation status panel section (see Installation status tab actions).

❖ **Show version**

If this setting is **On**, you can choose to only see devices on which a certain range of DME versions is installed. Use the drop-down list boxes to choose an operator (greater than, less than, equal to, or different from) and a version number. This can for instance be useful if you want to upgrade all devices running a client version earlier than the current version.

In addition to the filtering options, you can use the standard filter bar to limit the number of devices in the list. (Note that the filter in the filter bar does not work for all columns.)

The list of devices shows the same information as the device list in the **Devices** tab.

Furthermore, some devices can be marked with a star  (indicating that it is running the default version of the client for its platform), or a magnifying glass  (indicating that it is running a test version of the client for its platform).

The **Information** box contains the following fields:

❖ **Software to install**

This is the name of the DME client which you chose to install in the **DME client** list. The name consists of the device type (platform) the client is intended for, the name of the software (always **DME Client**), and the client version.

or

This is the name and category of the software you chose to install in the **Other software** list.

❖ **Available devices**

This is the number of devices in the DME system on which the selected software may be installed, according to your selections in the filter boxes.

When you have selected the devices on which you want to install the selected DME client or other software, click the **Install software**

icon  to continue the installation process.

Other software

 The software uploaded to the **Other software** panel section is grouped by categories that you specify yourself while uploading the software.

For more information about how to upload software to the server, see **Upload software** on page 413.

If you point to the name of the software, the description of the software package (if specified) will be shown as a tooltip. The list in the **Other software** panel section consists of the following information:

- ❖ **Software**

This column shows the name of the software package. The software was named at the time of upload to the server. Clicking the software name lets you edit the software properties - see **Upload software** on page 413 for more information. You can also click the  icon to download the software to your own disk.

- ❖ **Version**

This column shows the version number assigned to the file when it was uploaded to the server.

- ❖ **SMS code**

This column shows the SMS code that gives a user access to downloading the software in question. For more information, see **Self-provisioning** on page 453.

- ❖ **Filename**

This is the name of the actual file uploaded to the server.

- ❖ **File size**

This is the size of the file uploaded to the server in kilobytes.

- ❖ **Upload date**

This is the date on which the file in question was uploaded to the server.

Status

 Every time an installation is initiated from the software list (either **DME clients** or **Other software**), an entry is made in this panel section. Each entry is called an *installation job*, and may consist of installations on one or many devices.

For information about the actions that are available in this window, see the **Provisioning status** window (see **Provisioning status** on page 446).

The installation jobs listed are expandable. For each job, you can click a  button to view details about the current job, and  to hide the details again.

Software

Status

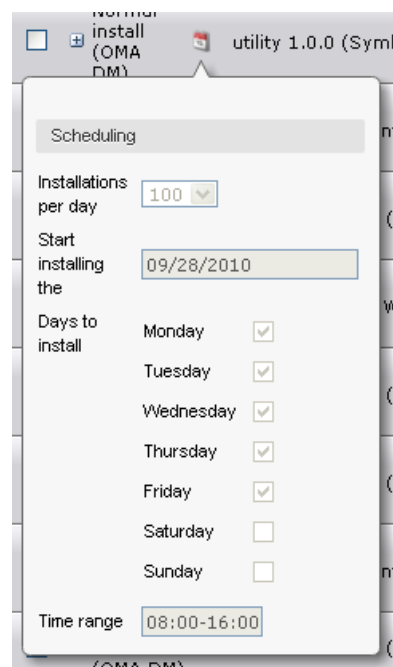
*	Install type	Software	Started	Progress		
	Normal install (OMA DM)	DME client 3.5.7 (Symbian)	14. Jun 12/13:13	100% of 1 devices		
Installing (0 devices)						
Installed (1 devices) 1 rows: 25Go						
*	Device	User	Phone number	Install type (fallback)	Status	Date
	Nokia E75	SUPPORT	23724300	DM install (SMS push)	Installed & verified	14. Jun 12/13:15

For each installation job, the table shows the following information:

❖ Install type

This column shows the kind of installation job: **Normal install** or **Bootstrap devices**. The installation type is followed by the installation method in parentheses - **OMA DM**, **WAP/SMS Push** etc. For more information about install types (job types), see **Provisioning status** on page 446.

Furthermore, if a schedule icon  is shown in this column, it means that a schedule was defined for the current installation job. Point the mouse to the icon to view the schedule, for instance



❖ Software

This column shows which software was sent for installation, shown with name and device platform.

❖ **Started**

This column shows the date and time on which the installation job was initiated.

❖ **Progress**

This column shows a progress bar with information about the number of devices that have been installed. This gives you a quick overview of the number of installations in the installation job that have been completed.

Installing and Installed sub-tables

The entry for each installation job is further divided into two sub-tables: **Installing** and **Installed**. To see these two sub-tables, click the  button at the left-hand side of the **Install type** column.

The **Installing** sub-table shows how many devices from the installation job are currently being installed, or waiting in the scheduling queue for installation. The **Installed** sub-table shows how many devices from the installation job have already been installed.

The header part of the sub-tables shows how many devices are in each category. Just as the main table, you can limit the amount of rows (devices) you want to see in each sub-table, and browse between pages.

For each sub-table, you can see the following information:

❖ **Device**

The device on which the software is being or has been installed. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a device link, a box shows more information about the device. Click the device link to go to the settings page for that device.

❖ **User**

This column shows the user name of the user who owns the device. The user name is only shown when the user has made a successful login and system info synchronization - hence, it is not shown in the **Installing** sub-table in case of new installations of the DME client on as yet unknown devices.

❖ **Phone number**

The phone number of the device to which the installation job was sent.

❖ **Install type (fallback)**

The type of installation that was attempted on the current device, possibly followed by a fallback installation type in parentheses. The following installation types can be seen:

- ❖ **DM install:** If the installation job is sent to the device as an OMA DM installation job. The fallback option will be shown in parentheses after the **DM install** - either **WAP push** or **SMS**

push for new or existing devices, or **Mark for install** for existing devices. If the fallback method is written in a grey text, it means that the fallback was not used; otherwise, the fallback method was used because the OMA DM installation failed.

- ❖ **Mark for install:** A **Mark for installation** push was sent to the device. This applies to existing devices only. The next time the device synchronizes, the user will be prompted to upgrade the client.
- ❖ **WAP/SMS push:** A software download push was sent to the device by SMS or WAP. The link to download software expires after a certain amount of time, which is called the Time To Live (TTL) value. This value can be set in the **Client** section of the **Server configuration** panel (see **Client** on page 172). The download link expiry time (TTL) is shown after the installation type. If the TTL is written in red text, it means that the link is now invalid (and the user has not yet used the link to download the software). When this happens, you can use the action **Restart installation jobs** in the tab toolbar to send a new link to the device.
- ❖ **Bootstrap:** If the installation job is only a bootstrap, and no software will be installed.

❖ **Status**

This column shows the status of the installation job on the current device. If you let the mouse pointer rest on a status message to see a detailed, chronological sequence of events in the installation job for the current device.

Install type (fallback)	Status	Date
DM install (SMS push)	Installed - Waiting for verification	29. Sep 10/09:11

28. Sep 10/09:10	29. Sep 10/09:11 - DM job created 29. Sep 10/09:11 - Waiting for processing 29. Sep 10/09:11 - Operations sent to device 29. Sep 10/09:11 - Status received from device 29. Sep 10/09:12 - DM job succeeded	

These events can also be seen in the **Provisioning status** window. See **Provisioning status** on page 446.

For an overview of the general status messages, see the following section: **Installation status messages** on page 435.

❖ **Date**

This is the date and time on which the installation job was created. The Time To Live (TTL) value (used with WAP/SMS push) is calculated from this time.

Installation status messages

The **Status** column in the **Installing** and **Installed** sub-tables shows the current status of the installation job for the current device. The following table shows the flow of status messages in connection with the installation of **DME clients** and **Other software**, and an explanation of their meaning. The table shows one column for messages that apply only to installations using OMA DM, and one for *download links*. A download link is an installation using WAP / SMS push or *Mark for Installation* - in both cases, the client receives a download link and proceeds from there.

Installing	OMA DM	Download links
	Waiting for bootstrap A client is to be installed on a device which has not been bootstrapped. This message is shown for as long as the client has not been bootstrapped. If the bootstrap fails, the installation job falls back to the download link installation method. Applies to both <i>DME clients</i> and <i>Other software</i>.	Waiting for download A WAP or SMS push has been sent, but not opened by the client, or a Mark for Install notification has been sent but awaits the next sync by the user. Applies to both <i>DME clients</i> and <i>Other software</i>.
	Installing software The software is currently being installed. Applies to both <i>DME clients</i> and <i>Other software</i>.	
	Installed – Waiting for verification The software has been installed by the OMA DM client, but a verification has not been made. A software installation is <i>verified</i> when the version of DME reported by the client corresponds to the version installed by the current installation job. If you happen to install a version which already existed on the device, the installation will be verified immediately. Otherwise, the installation will be verified the first time the user performs a system info synchronization. Applies to <i>DME clients</i>.	Downloaded – Waiting for verification The software has been downloaded, but not yet verified (see to the left). Applies to <i>DME clients</i>.
Installed		
	Installed The software has been installed. The software cannot be verified because it is not a DME client. Applies to <i>Other software</i>.	Downloaded The software has been downloaded. The software cannot be verified because it is not a DME client. Applies to <i>Other software</i>.



Installed – Verified

The software has been installed by the OMA DM client and verified.
Applies to *DME clients*.

Downloaded – Verified

The software has been downloaded by the user and verified.
Applies to *DME clients*.

Errors

Installation failed - Unknown status

If either of these two messages is shown, an error has occurred. See the log for more information.

Jobs are removed from the **Installed** sub-table after 7 days.

Installation log



The **Installation log** panel section shows a subsection of the information shown in full in the **Log** tab. You only see information related to the installation of software on devices.

Software		Install log						
		Date	Location	Device	User	Category	Message	
1.	05. Oct 2010 - 11:10:53		DMESYNC	Nokia E72		Software install	Phone number:	+4530914222
							User-Agent:	Mozilla/5.0 (SymbianOS/9.3; Series60/3.2 NokiaE72-1/051.018; Profile/MIDP-2.1 Configuration/CLDC-1.1) AppleWebKit/525 (KHTML, like Gecko) Version/3.0 BrowserNG/7.2.6.2 3gpp-gba 900 Success
2.	05. Oct 2010 - 11:07:58		DMESYNC	Nokia E72	NIF	Software install	Software:	utility 1.0.0 (Symbian)
3.							Device ID:	355239032821279
4.	04. Oct 2010 - 12:37:28						Information:	Software installation through OMA DM.
5.			DMESYNC	-		Software install	Phone number:	+380632458233
							User-Agent:	SonyEricssonW910i/R1FA Browser/NetFront Profile/MIDP-2.1 Configuration/CLDC-1.1
6.	30. Sep 2010 - 14:38:46		DMESYNC	-	NIF	Software install	Text:	912 Deletion Notification
								Deleting software package DME client 1.0.0 ()

For more information about the individual messages, see **Software install** on page 144.

Device types



In this window you can see how each device in the DME system is registered with regard to DM and platform details.

DME ships with a list of pre-defined device models. Whenever a device is added to DME, the device model is reported to DME by the DME client installed on the device. The device model is matched against the list of models. If the model is found, the device will be given the settings (including a device image) that apply to the device model, and you cannot change those. If the model is not found, you will be able to specify which type of DME client that fits with the device model in question in this window, and you can assign an image to the device model.

You want to be sure that each device is registered with the correct device model for two reasons:

1. When you choose to bootstrap a device and install the default DME client on the device at the same time, DME needs to know which DME version type to install. Otherwise the client installation will fail.
2. When you install DME software on existing clients, one of the steps is to select the devices on which you want to install the DME client. The window in which you select devices is described in the section **Device filter** on page 428. In that window, you can choose to only see *validated devices*. A device is said to be validated if a value other than **Unknown** is listed in the field **DME version type**.

The device type table contains the following columns:

❖ **DME phone model**

This is the device model which is reported to DME by the DME client installed on the device, for instance **Nokia E51**. All phone models are matched against the list of device models built into DME. If found in the list, the other columns in this window are filled in from the device model list, a device image is assigned to the device model, and the device model is locked for changes (the selection boxes in the other columns are disabled).

If you let the mouse pointer rest on the model in this column, the **DM manufacturer** column, or the **DM model** column, and if the device model is known by DME, a picture of the device model in question is shown.

❖ **DM manufacturer**

This is the name of the manufacturer of the DM engine on the current device model, for instance **NOKIA**. If the current device model is locked, this information came from the built-in device model list; otherwise it is derived from the bootstrapping of a device of this model.

❖ **DM model**

This is the name of the DM engine model on the current device model, for instance **E51**. If the current device model is locked, this information came from the built-in device model list; otherwise it is derived from the bootstrapping of a device of this model.

❖ **Platform**

This is the hardware platform of the device model in question, for instance **S60 3rd. FPI**. If the current device model is locked, this information came from the built-in device model list; otherwise it is derived from information reported by the DME client. You may change the information in this field, but note that the field is not relevant in this version of DME.

❖ **OS**

This is the operating system of the device model in question, for instance **Symbian OS v9.2**. If the current device model is locked, this information came from the built-in device model list; otherwise it is derived from information reported by the DME client. You may change the information in this field, but note that the field is not relevant in this version of DME.

❖ **DME version type**

This is the DME client type that would be appropriate for installation on the device model in question, for instance **Symbian series 60**. If the current device model is locked, this information came from the built-in device model list; otherwise it is derived from information reported by the DME client. You may change the information in this field, but note that the field determines which clients can be installed on devices of this model.

DME version types

For DME 4.6, DME clients are built for the following platforms:

- ❖ Android
- ❖ Apple iOS devices - iPhone/iPad/iPod touch
- ❖ Windows Phone

However, clients built for 3.6 may also run on a 4.x server. In addition to Android, Apple iOS, and Windows Phone, the following platforms are supported:

- ❖ BlackBerry
- ❖ Java
- ❖ Symbian 3rd edition
- ❖ Symbian 5th edition
- ❖ Symbian^3
- ❖ Windows Mobile Pocket PC
- ❖ Windows Mobile Smartphone

Each of these clients is called a *DME version type*. For more information about individual devices, see **DME Resource Center** <http://resources.solitonsystems.com/support/supported-devices-search> (external link).

Tab actions

Two tab actions are associated with the **Device types** window:

- ❖  **Remove device type**
When you click this action, the selected device model is removed from the list. Note that you cannot remove device models that are already identified by DME's built-in list of device models.
- ❖  **Upload image for device type**
When you click this action, you can upload an image of the selected device model. Note that you cannot add or change the image of a device model that is identified in DME's built-in list of device models. For more information about adding an image to a device model, see the procedure **Uploading a picture of the device** in *Information* on page 86.

Access points

Select the **Access points** item in the page menu to see the list of GPRS or WLAN access points available for provisioning to the clients.



When installing the DME client on Symbian phones, the installer tries to set up three possible access points in the client settings automatically. This applies to client 3.0.2 and above only. The installation process evaluates any existing internet access points (IAP) on the DME client, and places three access points in the **General settings** page on the device. The IAPs are selected and placed based on their perceived cost, according to the following scheme:

- ❖ WLAN IAPs are selected first. A maximum of 2 WLAN IAPs are selected and placed as preferred access points 1 and 2.
- ❖ For the remaining access point (or *points*, if less than two WLAN access points were found), the installation process finds one or more IAPs where the name contains the word "internet" or "www", and uses it or them as subsequent access points.
- ❖ If no such IAP is found, then the first available IAP is used for the remaining access points.

With this scheme, the IAP incurring the lowest cost is probably picked first, namely the corporate WLAN, and then possibly the user's home WLAN is picked next. The third access point is then the general GPRS IAP.

- ❖ However, the administrator can choose to name a GPRS and/or WLAN access point as "**DME_AP_(something)**". If this access point is pushed to the phone along with the installation command, it will be installed *as first choice*. If more than one access point starts with "**DME_AP**", they will be selected in random order as first, second, and third access point.

The user can change the selections later.

The list of access points is divided into two *panel sections*, which are described in the following.

GPRS

In this panel section you can manage GPRS access points. You can define them on the DME server, remove them from the server, and distribute them to DME clients - see the following sections for information about this.

The list in the GPRS panel section consists of the following information:

- ❖ **Name**

This column shows the name of the access point. This is the name given to the access point when it was defined on the DME server. Clicking the access point name lets you edit the access point in question, using the same window as when the access point was originally defined.

See **Access points** above for the special meaning of access points where the name begins with **DME_AP**.

- ❖ **APN name**

This column shows the name of the mobile network to which the current access point gives access.

❖ **Proxy**

This column is reserved for future use.

❖ **Security**

If you specify Use authentication in the access point, this column will say PAP (which is the currently supported security model). Otherwise, this column will say None.

❖ **Last changed**

This column shows date of when the current access point was last changed.

New GPRS access point

When you click the **New GPRS access point** action, you can define a new GPRS access point to be stored the server. Please note that you should not define a WAP access point, as these will not work on the clients. Only define those with which a client can successfully access the Web. The access point definition window consists of the following fields:

❖ **Name**

In this field enter a descriptive name for the access point you are defining. This field is shown in the list of GPRS access points. See **Access points list** above for the special meaning of access points where the name begins with **DME_AP**.

❖ **APN name**

In this field enter the APN (access point name) supplied by the mobile operator. The APN could for instance be **internet**. This field is shown in the list of GPRS access points.

❖ **Use authentication**

If you select this check box, you specify that the current access point requires authentication, and the following two fields are enabled:

❖ **Authentication name:** Enter the name of the user

❖ **Authentication password:** Enter the password required for the user above.

If this information is completed, the list of GPRS access points shows **PAP** in the **Security** column.

Remove GPRS access point

If one or more GPRS access points are shown in the list, you can select one or more of them, and click this action to remove them from the list. You are asked to confirm your action.

Install access point



Click the **Install GPRS/WLAN access point** action when you want to send an access point to one or more new or existing devices. You must select the access point to install before selecting this action.

When installing on new or existing devices, the access point is installed using **OMA-CP** technology. This means that the user must accept a prompt to install the access point, and the user must enter the PIN code defined as **OMA PIN** in the **SMS modem** panel section of the **Server configuration** page in the **Server** tab (see **SMS modem** on page 186). The default PIN code is 12345.

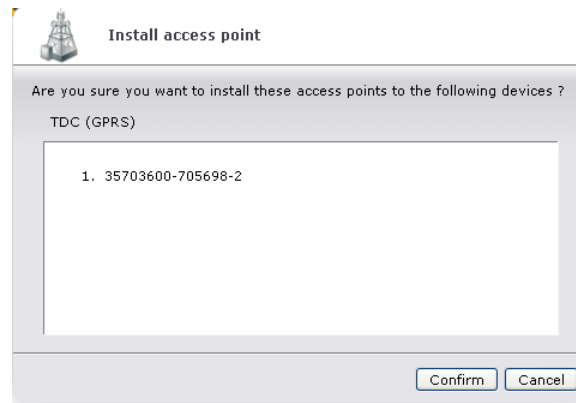
➤ *Installing an access point on new devices*

1. Select an access point in the **GPRS** or **WLAN** panel section in the **Access points** list.
2. Click the **Install GPRS/WLAN access point** action.
3. Leave the choice at **Install on new devices**, and click **Confirm**.
4. The **GPRS/WLAN access point installation** window is shown.
5. Add recipient devices by entering a phone number in the **Phone numbers** field and clicking **Add**. To remove a phone number from the list, click the number, and click **Remove**. You can Ctrl+click to select multiple numbers in the list.
6. Click **Install** to initiate the installation of the access point on the devices whose phone numbers you entered.

➤ *Installing an access point on existing devices*

1. Select an access point in the **GPRS** or **WLAN** panel section in the **Access points** list.
2. Click the **Install GPRS/WLAN access point** action.
3. Choose **Install on existing devices**, and click **Confirm**.
4. A **device filter** page is shown, in which you can select the devices you want to install the access point on. This page is similar to the page shown when installing software to existing devices - see **Device filter** on page 428. However, the **Device filter** box on the page only contains one option:
 - ❖ **Select all available devices:** If you select this check box, all devices that fit the criteria are selected, even if they are not shown on the page due to a restriction to the number of rows displayed in the table navigation bar.

5. Select the devices you want to install the access point on, and click the  or  action to continue.
6. A dialog such as the following is shown:



7. Click **Confirm** to initiate the installation on the selected device(s).

WLAN

In this panel section you can manage WLAN access points. You can define them on the DME server, remove them from the server, and distribute them to DME clients - see the following sections for information about this.

The list in the WLAN panel section consists of the following information:

❖ **Name**

This column shows the name of the access point. This is the name given to the access point when it was defined on the DME server. Clicking the access point name lets you edit the access point in question, using the same window as when the access point was originally defined.

See **Access points** above for the special meaning of access points where the name begins with **DME_AP**.

❖ **SSID**

This column shows the name of the WLAN connection's SSID as entered when you created the access point.

❖ **Security mode**

This column shows the security mode of the WLAN connection as entered when you created the access point - **None** or a **WPA** mode option.

❖ **Network mode**

This column shows the network mode of the WLAN connection as entered when you created the access point - **Infrastructure** or **Ad hoc**.

❖ **Last changed**

This column shows date of when the current access point was last changed.

New WLAN access point



When you click the **New WLAN access point** action, you can define a new WLAN access point to be stored the server. The access point definition window consists of the following fields:

❖ **Name**

In this field enter a descriptive name for the access point you are defining. This field is shown in the list of WLAN access points. See **Access points list** above for the special meaning of access points where the name begins with **DME_AP**.

❖ **SSID**

In this field enter the name of the network you are defining access to. This field is shown in the list of WLAN access points.

❖ **Network mode**

The DME access point definition supports two types of network:

- ❖ **Infrastructure:** This is the regular type of wireless network, which requires the use of access points.
- ❖ **Ad hoc:** This is a network mode called IBSS, which allows wireless devices to work peer-to-peer without access points.

❖ **Hidden SSID**

If the SSID of the network is hidden, select this check box.

❖ **Security mode**

In this drop-down list you can choose the security setting of the network you are defining access to. You can choose **None**, **WPA** and **WPA2** without a pre-shared key, or you can choose **WPA-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK** (with a pre-shared key). In case you choose one of the latter two options, a field is shown in which you can enter the pre-shared key. The security mode is shown in the list of WLAN access points.

- ❖ **Security key:** If the security mode is selected above involves a pre-shared key (PSK), enter the key in this field.

Remove WLAN access point



If one or more WLAN access points are shown in the list, you can select one or more of them, and click this icon to remove them from the list. You are asked to confirm your action.

Install WLAN access point



Click the **Install WLAN access point** action when you want to send an access point to one or more new or existing devices. You must select the access point to install before selecting this action. The installation process is similar as when installing GPRS access points. See **Install access point** on page 443 for more information.

Provisioning status

This window shows an overview of the installation jobs that have been created on the server. A collapsible event log records the detailed, chronological sequence of events for each device in the installation jobs.

*	Device ID	User ID	Phone number	Model	Job type	Status
☐	357663014358794		+381979479792	E51	Software install (DME client 3.5.2)	DM job succeeded Status received from device Operations sent to device Waiting for processing DM job created 29. Sep - 09:12:24 29. Sep - 09:11:34 29. Sep - 09:11:32 29. Sep - 09:11:23 29. Sep - 09:11:22
☐	351503040958470		+639178722676	C6-00	SMS/WAP Push (DME client 3.5.2)	Content downloaded SMS push sent Download link created 28. Sep - 11:31:12 28. Sep - 11:29:59 28. Sep - 11:29:59
☐	355239032821279 NIF		+4590964222	E72-1	(utility 1.0.0)	Content downloaded JAD file downloaded Download link created 28. Sep - 10:43:42 28. Sep - 10:42:50 28. Sep - 10:42:50
☐		123			Bootstrap device	Waiting for processing 05. Oct - 09:04:44

You can select one of more installation jobs to remove the job records, restart the installation, or send a notification to the DM client on the devices. See **Provisioning actions** on page 98.

A similar window shows installations job for individual devices. Click a device in the **Devices** tab, and click the **Provisioning** setup panel. See **Provisioning** on page 97 (Device).

The table shows the following information:

❖ Device ID

This column shows the device ID (typically IMEI number) of the device on which the installation job was carried out. The ID is only

shown when the device has been connected to the DME server through DM.

❖ **User ID**

This column shows the user name of the user who owns the device. The user name is only shown when the user has made a successful login and system info synchronization.

❖ **Phone number**

The phone number of the device to which the installation job was sent.

❖ **Model**

The phone model of the device to which the installation job was sent.

❖ **Job type**

The type of installation job. This can be the any of the following:

Software install (installed software): This is an installation job using DM.

SMS/WAP Push (installed software): This is an installation job using WAP/SMS download link.

Mark for install (installed software): This is an installation job using Mark for Install download link.

Bootstrap device - Software install (installed software): This is a bootstrap followed by the installation of software using DM, possibly the "Default DME client".

Bootstrap device - Using access point (AP name): This is a bootstrap followed by the installation of an access point.

Retrieve DM Tree: A DM request for the device DM tree (requested from the OMA DM panel section of the settings page of supported devices - see **OMA DM** on page 99).

Notify client job: A DM request to restart an OMA DM job. See Notify DM client.

❖ **Status**

This column contains an expandable event log which records the detailed, chronological sequence of events for each installation job.

For each log entry, the date and time are shown. Click  (if available) to view details, and  to collapse the details again. The icons have the following meaning:

 : The event/task is completed with success.

 : The task failed.

 : A task was created.

 : The server job was executed (such as creating a download link for the client), or the server is waiting for the device to process a DM job.

 : DM status received from the device.

 : DM operations instructions sent to the device.

 : An SMS push has been sent to the device.

Provisioning actions

The following actions are available for one or more selected installation job(s) in this list:

❖ **Remove provisioning jobs**

To clean up the provisioning status list, you can remove jobs by selecting them and clicking the **Remove provisioning jobs** action in the tab toolbar. You are prompted to confirm the deletion.

The installation jobs are automatically cleaned out from the list after 7 days.

❖ **Restart provisioning jobs**

If something has gone wrong with a provisioning job, for instance if a user did not use the software download link before the link timed out, you can select the job (or multiple jobs) and click the **Restart provisioning job** action in the tab toolbar. This will delete the original provisioning job, create an identical job, and send it again to the selected devices, including any options you have set for the job.

Note that DME cannot verify provisioning jobs of the type **Other software**.

❖ **Notify OMA DM jobs**

DME uses the standard push setting for notifying about OMA DM installation jobs. However, if the DME client is not available on the device, the DM engine on the device will never be notified of the installation job. Use this action to send a notification message by SMS directly to the DM engine on the device. Select the jobs that need special notification in this window (or the **Device setup > Provisioning** window), select this action, and click **Confirm** in the dialog that is shown.

This action is only shown if the selected installation job was created using OMA DM.

Send to device

The options in the **Send to device** page menu are identical to the options in the corresponding menu in the **Devices** tab.

For more information, see **Send to device** on page 63.

Appendix I: Other methods of deployment

This appendix describes other ways of obtaining or deploying the DME client than the ones described in **Installing software** on page 402. The information mainly applies to deprecated platforms: Symbian and Windows Mobile.

Ad-hoc installation

Ad-hoc installation refers to an unstructured, once-off way of installing DME on a client. For instance, if you work in the IT department and want to test a new version of DME on a device, you can choose to install the client directly on the device without first uploading it to the server and pushing it from there.

This method covers for instance:

- ❖ Transferring the client installation files to the device by means of Bluetooth or cable, and running it from there.
- ❖ Doing a remote installation from a desktop using Nokia Ovi Suite, Sony Ericsson PC Suite, Active Sync, or similar.
- ❖ E-mailing the client installation files as an attachment to the user, who downloads and executes the files from the DME client (upgrades only; full DME clients only).

This method has the drawback that you cannot supply a server path or an access point with the installation files, so the user will have to enter these. However, this is not a problem in case of a client upgrade.

As the name implies, ad-hoc installation should be the exception for use by testers or supporters. Any general roll-out should be performed using other deployment methods as outlined above.

Symbian auto-installation



It is possible to put together an installation kit on a memory card. This option enables you to install the DME client or the DME Basic MDM client on any Symbian 3rd and 5th edition and Symbian^3 device. The client must be version 3.5 or higher. This method typically applies to help desk or other personnel preparing a new device for a user. This is done in the following way:

1. Prepare a memory card with the following files:
 - ❖ The DME client installation file
 - ❖ A text file with setup instructions
2. Insert the memory card in the phone.
3. The DME client is installed silently, according to the options set in the setup file.

Preparing the memory card

To prepare the memory card for auto-installing DME on Symbian devices, do the following:

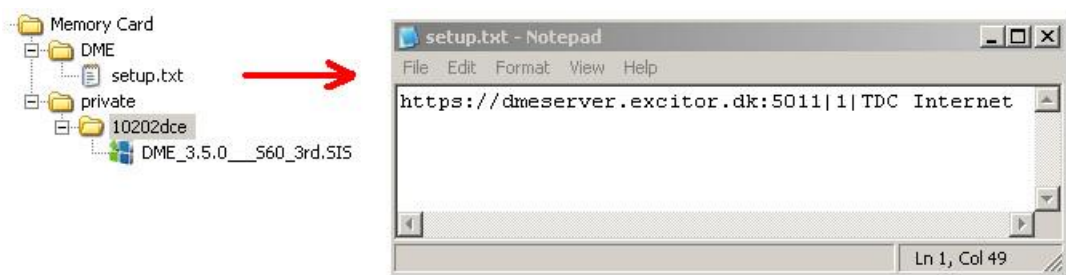
1. In the root of the memory card, create the folder `private`
2. In the `private` folder, create the sub-folder `10202dce`
3. Copy the DME installation file (`.sis`) to the folder `10202dce`
4. In the root of the memory card, create the folder `DME`
5. Prepare a text file called `setup.txt` (see below)
6. Copy `setup.txt` to the `DME` folder

The `setup.txt` file must be a plain text file with one line in the following format:

```
[serverpath] | [launch on startup 0/1] | [IAP 1] | [IAP 2] | [IAP 3]
```

- ❖ **serverpath:** This is the only mandatory option. Specify the server path to your DME server, including port number.
- ❖ **launch on startup:** Enter 0 for **No** or 1 for **Yes** (recommended). If enabled, the phone will automatically launch DME when the phone is rebooted, ensuring that the initial synchronization can be performed. If you do not wish to specify this, simply add a pipe character | before entering any access points.
- ❖ **IAP 1-3:** With these options you can specify access points 1 to 3 in DME. You can do this if you are certain that the access points in question exist on the phone. This way you can for instance ensure that your company WLAN access point is selected as first choice.

The illustration below shows the complete folder structure on the memory card and an example `setup.txt` file.



Auto-install process

To install DME using a memory card prepared as described above, do the following:

1. Turn the phone on.
2. Insert the memory card.
3. The phone detects the special setup on the memory card.
4. Wait until the DME installation is complete, and the DME client is started automatically.
5. When the login screen is shown, wait a few seconds for the configuration of DME to complete.
6. Remove the memory card.

The user may now log in and perform the initial synchronization.

Self-provisioning

DME supports the concept of *self-provisioning*, meaning that users can request software and OTA configurations on demand. To achieve this, a user needs to know four items of information: An **SMS Code**, the server's *phone number* (the phone number of the Kannel or NowSMS modem), a *download code*, and a *PIN code*.

Please note that self-provisioning by SMS is not supported on installations where the Kannel SMS gateway is installed on Windows servers. Only Kannel on Linux and NowSMS on Windows are supported.

Setting up

You can set up self-provisioning for software and for OTA configurations.

➤ **Setting up software for self-provisioning**

1. In the **Provisioning** tab, upload new software, or edit an existing software package by clicking the software in question. See Provisioning in the DME Web Administration Reference for more information.
2. In the **SMS Code** field in the **Software information** window, enter a short code which the users will use when requesting the software in question. This could for instance be **S60** for the latest DME client for Nokia S60 devices.
3. Specify whether the users should get the software as an **SMS** push or as a **WAP** push when they request the software by SMS.

When you click **Save**, the software is set up for self-provisioning.

➤ **Setting up OTA configurations for self-provisioning**

1. In the **Devices** or **Provisioning** tab, create a new configuration (for instance a bookmark or an access point), or edit an existing configuration by clicking the configuration in question. See Send OTA configuration in the DME Web Administration Reference for more information.
2. In the **SMS Code** field in the **Edit phone configuration** window, enter a short code which the users will use when requesting the configuration in question. This could for instance be **TDC** for the common configuration settings for the TDC phone operator.
3. As of DME 3.6, there are 2 reserved SMS codes for self-provisioning:

DME - Will send a bootstrap and install the default DME Client

DM - Will send a bootstrap and install the default Basic MDM Client

When you click **Accept**, the configuration is set up for self-provisioning.

Requesting software or configuration

In order to be able to request software or phone configurations from the DME server, a user needs to know the following information:

- ❖ **An SMS Code**

The SMS code is what you set up in the previous section.

- ❖ **The server's phone number**

You can find the phone number of the server's SMS server in the **Server** tab - click **Server configuration > SMS modem**. The field **Modem phone number** field contains the number you need. See **SMS modem** on page 186 in the DME Web Administration Reference.

- ❖ **A download code**

There are three different download codes: **TST**, **DWL**, and **CON**. For more information, see the examples below.

- ❖ **A PIN code**

A PIN code may be required by the SMS modem. A separate PIN code can be set for software (in the field **SMS Service PIN**) and for configuration downloads (in the field **OMA PIN**).

- **Testing that you have the right phone number for the SMS server**

1. Send the following SMS message to the number you believe belongs to the SMS modem:

TST

If the phone number is correct, the server will reply with the message "This is a TEST reply".

- **Requesting a software download**

1. Send an SMS to the server requesting a software download on the following form:

DWL <SMS code> [PIN]

The PIN code is only required if the SMS modem has been set up to require an SMS Service PIN.

The server will reply with an SMS and/or a WAP service message containing a temporary link to the requested software.

➤ **Requesting a phone configuration**

- I. Send an SMS to the server requesting a configuration download on the following form:

CON <SMS code> [PIN]

The PIN code is only required if the SMS modem has been set up to require an OMA PIN.

The server will reply with an SMS configuration message containing the requested configuration.

It is possible to send multiple requests in the same SMS - see the examples in the next section.

Examples

Use the examples below as a guide to using the SMS commands. The examples assume the following:

- ❖ Server modem phone number: **12345678**
- ❖ SMS code for DME software: **S60**
- ❖ SMS code for OTA configuration: **TDC**
- ❖ SMS service PIN: **1234**
- ❖ OMA PIN: **12345**

➤ **Sending a test message to the server modem**

Send

TST

to **12345678**. The server should respond with the message "This is a TEST reply".

➤ **Requesting DME software**

Send

DWL S60 1234

to **12345678**. The server should respond with a push to download the requested client.

➤ **Requesting OTA configuration**

Send

CON TDC 12345

to **12345678**. The server should respond with a push to install the requested OTA configuration.

➤ **Requesting both DME software and OTA configuration**

Send

DWL S60 1234
 CON TDC 12345

to **12345678**. Note that the commands must be on separate lines.

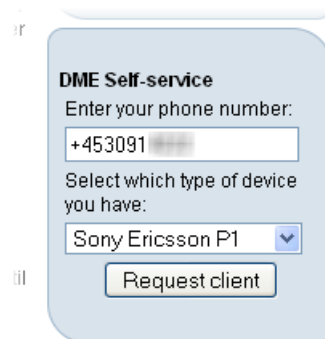
Web-based self-provisioning

In addition to SMS based self-provisioning, DME supports the use of the Web for self-provisioning. DME ships with a servlet called **dmePushInstall**, which can be used as a self-provisioning tool. By using this tool, a user can request a software push or an OTA configuration (such as an access point) without direct access to the DME Web Administration Interface.

The installation is received as an SMS push; OMA DM installation is not supported through this interface.

The typical use of the **dmePushInstall** tool is to let users, who have not yet been registered in the DME system, enter a phone number and select which device they have. Submitting the request will result in a software push from the DME server, effectively creating the user and his/her device in DME.

This mechanism will typically be published on a corporate intranet, branded as a DME self-service portal - such as below:



The screenshot shows a web form titled "DME Self-service". It contains the following elements:

- A label "Enter your phone number:" followed by a text input field containing "+453091".
- A label "Select which type of device you have:" followed by a dropdown menu showing "Sony Ericsson P1".
- A "Request client" button at the bottom.

Please be advised that using the **dmePushInstall** tool requires some skills in web programming.

Furthermore, for a software package or an OTA configuration to be accessible to this kind of self-service, it must have an associated **SMS code** - see **Self-provisioning** on page 453.

Accessing the service

The **dmePushInstall** tool can be accessed using a server-based scripting language, such as JSP, Perl, PHP, or Ruby, or any programming language that is able to establish an HTTP connection and post information - such as Java, C#, or C++. A complete example of how to use the service is available from the DME Resource Center. In order to make use of the features in **dmePushInstall**, you need to do the following:

1. Establish a secure HTTP connection with the server.

The way to do this depends on your choice of scripting language.

2. POST information to **dmePushInstall**.

The information collected from the HTML form should be posted to the **dmePushInstall** service, along with authentication information.

For the sake of authentication, a special local user should be created in DME. This credentials of this user will then be posted along with the other information to **dmePushInstall** and used to gain access to the DME server for sending the push. Of course, existing users could be allowed to enter their own credentials, but as the service is often used by those who have not yet been created as users in DME, this would often not make sense.

Acceptable POST parameters

The **dmePushInstall** tool accepts the following POST parameters:

- ❖ **phoneNumber**
Mandatory. Phone number of the device which should receive the DME install push.
- ❖ **swSmsCode**
Mandatory. Parameter selecting which software package to push - this is the "SMS code" shown in the **Provisioning** tab of the DME Web Administration Interface, which is also used for SMS based self-provisioning.
- ❖ **smsMessage**
Optional. A message sent to the device explaining what to do with the installation SMS.
- ❖ **otaSmsCode**
Optional. Select an OTA configuration to push to the device, such as GPRS settings needed for DME. The SMS code for this is shown in the **Provisioning** tab > **Send OTA configuration** page of the DME Web Administration Interface.
- ❖ **sendServerPath**
Optional. Choose whether an additional SMS with the DME server path should be sent to the device. Anything other than **no** or **false** results in this SMS being sent.

Note that these parameters correspond to the options which a DME administrator has when pushing a client to a device from the DME Web Administration Interface. Please see **Self-provisioning** on page 453 and other reference documentation.

An example script, written in JSP, is available from the **DME Resource Center**

<http://resources.solitonsystems.com/dl/support-files#dmePushInstall> (login required).

Appendix J: Custom graphics on Android and iOS

From version 4.0 of the DME clients for Android and Apple iOS, DME supports the use of custom graphics (also known as *white-label* graphics). You can replace the background graphic on the Desktop, the Login screen, the Swipe screen, and the AppBox desktop screen (iOS only) with graphics of your own, for instance showing your own logo.

The custom graphics will automatically replace the built-in graphics on the client if they are placed in the correct folder on the server, and if they are named and formatted in a certain way. This is explained for each client platform in the following.

Custom graphics on Android

To replace the built-in graphics on the DME 4.x client for Android with graphics of your own, you need to create the following folders in the directory specified in the **Local data directory** field. This path is specified in the **Server** tab > **Server configuration** > **Data** > **Data storage directories**. See **Data** on page 183.

`/whitelabel/android/drawable-ldpi/` - for low-resolution images
- at least 426dp x 320dp

`/whitelabel/android/drawable-mdpi/` - for medium-resolution images
- at least 470dp x 320dp

`/whitelabel/android/drawable-hdpi/` - for high-resolution images
- at least 640dp x 480dp

`/whitelabel/android/drawable-xhdpi/` - for extra high-resolution images
- at least 960dp x 720dp

For instance, if the path specified in the **Local data directory** field is `/usr/local/jboss-4.3.0.GA/server/base/filestore/`, then you must open a terminal and create the following folder for low-resolution images:

```
/usr/local/jboss-4.3.0.GA/server/base/filestore/whitelabel/android/drawable-ldpi/
```

-and so on. *Note that you must not change the value of the **Local data directory** field - the value in this field is for your information only so you know where to create the graphics folders.*

Different Android devices have different screen resolutions. The screen resolution of a device can usually be found on the manufacturer's homepage, but this is not always the case. We recommend that you create graphics matching all resolutions. The DME client will automatically pick the one that fits each device.

In each of the directories specified above, place images with the following names:

`background_desktop.9.png` - **Desktop** and **Login** screen background in portrait mode

`background_desktop_landscape.9.png` - **Desktop** and **Login** screen background in landscape mode

`background_swipe.9.png` - **Unlock pattern (Swipe)** screen (portrait mode only)

The Google Android specifications require that you use `png` graphics, which are formatted using a so-called 9-patch process. This is a mechanism that allows the Android OS to stretch and shrink the image without distorting it. The result of this process is a `.9.png` file. To create a 9-patch file, you draw straight, 1-pixel, black lines where Android is allowed to stretch the image, and save the file as `<filename>.9.png`. An explanation of the process can be found on the Internet, for instance here:

<http://radleymarx.com/blog/simple-guide-to-9-patch/>

<http://radleymarx.com/blog/simple-guide-to-9-patch/>. Google has a tool for doing this included in the Android SDK:

<http://developer.android.com/tools/help/draw9patch.html>

<http://developer.android.com/tools/help/draw9patch.html>.

What size should the images be? The 9-patch mechanism will automatically scale the images according to your specifications. Some areas can be stretched, and some areas will be padded. In principle, you can create just one image which you use for all screen resolutions and screen sizes, and place the image in each of the folders mentioned above. However, for greater flexibility you can create a different image per screen resolution. A description of screen resolutions and the `dp` unit can be found in the **Android developer's guide** http://developer.android.com/guide/practices/screens_support.html.

When you have created the `.9.png` files, they must be *compiled*. The built-in graphics in DME are already compiled; custom graphics must be pre-compiled as well before they can be used in an Android application. To compile the images, we recommend that you use **pngMagic** <http://www.curiousstech.net/pngmagic.html> by CuriousTech, which is freely available on the Internet. Instructions can be found at their website. We have compiled a small guide to using the **pngMagic** tool - see the next section.

Once the graphics have been created, patch-9 converted, and compiled, place them in their respective folders. The Android client will check for these graphics when the user logs in (but max. once a day).

Using pngMagic

To use the pngMagic tool by CuriousTech, first download it from the web: **pngMagic** <http://www.curiousstech.net/pngmagic.html>.

1. Unpack the program it to a folder.
2. In the same folder, create the following sub-folders and place the 9-patch images in these sub-folders accordingly:
`uncompiled/drawable-ldpi`
`uncompiled/drawable-mdpi`
`uncompiled/drawable-hdpi`
`uncompiled/drawable-xhdpi`
3. Launch the `PngMagic.exe` program.
4. Copy all the text below the +++++ line on this page, and paste it into the **PngMagic** window.
5. In **PngMagic**, click **Run**.

The `whitelabel` folder now contains the *compiled* 9-patch images, which can then be placed on the server as specified in the previous section.

```
+++++
// Batch compile pngs

// Takes 9-patch images from the folders:
// uncompiled/drawable-ldpi
// uncompiled/drawable-mpdi
// uncompiled/drawable-hdpi
```

```
// uncompiled/drawable-xhdpi

// and converts them as compiled 9-patch images in the
folders:

// whitelabel/android/drawable-ldpi
// whitelabel/android/drawable-mdpi
// whitelabel/android/drawable-hdpi
// whitelabel/android/drawable-xhdpi
// (Folders will be created, and existing files will be
overwritten)

source_parent = 'uncompiled'
dest_parent = 'whitelabel\\android'
folder_ldpi = 'drawable-ldpi'
folder_mdpi='drawable-mdpi'
folder_hdpi='drawable-hdpi'
folder_xhdpi='drawable-xhdpi'
var fso = new ActiveXObject('Scripting.FileSystemObject')

// ldpi
source_ldpi = fso.GetFolder( source_parent)
source_ldpi = fso.BuildPath( source_ldpi, folder_ldpi)
source_ldpi = fso.GetFolder( source_ldpi) // gets reference
to folder
Pm.Echo( source_ldpi)
var subFlds_ldpi = new Enumerator(source_ldpi.files)
for (; !subFlds_ldpi.atEnd(); subFlds_ldpi.moveNext())
    CompImage( subFlds_ldpi.item(), folder_ldpi )

// mdpi
source_mdpi = fso.GetFolder( source_parent)
source_mdpi = fso.BuildPath( source_mdpi, folder_mdpi)
source_mdpi = fso.GetFolder( source_mdpi) // gets reference
to folder
Pm.Echo( source_mdpi)
var subFlds_mdpi = new Enumerator(source_mdpi.files)
for (; !subFlds_mdpi.atEnd(); subFlds_mdpi.moveNext())
```

```

        CompImage( subFlds_mdpi.item(), folder_mdpi )

// hdpi
    source_hdpi = fso.GetFolder( source_parent)
    source_hdpi = fso.BuildPath( source_hdpi, folder_hdpi)
    source_hdpi = fso.GetFolder( source_hdpi) // gets reference
to folder
    Pm.Echo( source_hdpi)
    var subFlds_hdpi = new Enumerator(source_hdpi.files)
    for (; !subFlds_hdpi.atEnd(); subFlds_hdpi.moveNext())
        CompImage( subFlds_hdpi.item(), folder_hdpi )

// xhdpi
    source_xhdpi = fso.GetFolder( source_parent)
    source_xhdpi = fso.BuildPath( source_xhdpi, folder_xhdpi)
    source_xhdpi = fso.GetFolder( source_xhdpi) // gets
reference to folder
    Pm.Echo( source_xhdpi)
    var subFlds_xhdpi = new Enumerator(source_xhdpi.files)
    for (; !subFlds_xhdpi.atEnd(); subFlds_xhdpi.moveNext())
        CompImage( subFlds_xhdpi.item(), folder_xhdpi )

// CompImage
function CompImage( file, sub_folder) {
    Gdi.LoadImage(file)
    Pm.Echo( fso.GetFileName(file) )
    // increase screen size if needed
    if(Gdi.Width < Gdi.ImageWidth)  Gdi.Width =
Gdi.ImageWidth
    if(Gdi.Height < Gdi.ImageHeight)  Gdi.Height =
Gdi.ImageHeight
    Gdi.Clear(0xFFFFFFFF)
    Gdi.Clear(0)
    Gdi.DrawImage(0, 0)
    folder_file = fso.GetParentFolderName( file)
    base = fso.GetParentFolderName( folder_file)

```



```

        base = fso.GetParentFolderName( base) // Move up one
folder
        base = fso.BuildPath(base, dest_parent)
        base = fso.BuildPath(base, sub_folder)
        Pm.Echo( base)
        newfile = fso.BuildPath( base, fso.GetFileName(file) )

// Compile and save .9 file
        Gdi.Save( newfile, 0, 0, Gdi.ImageWidth,
Gdi.ImageHeight, 'Compile' )
    }

```

Custom graphics on Apple iOS

Replacing Apple iOS graphics

The DME 4.x client for Apple iOS supports the following alternative background images, in Portrait and Landscape orientation:

- ❖ For the **Unlock pattern (Swipe)** screen
- ❖ For the **Desktop**
- ❖ For the **AppBox** background screen
- ❖ For the **Login** screen (since version 4.0.3 of the client)

To replace the built-in graphics on the DME client for iOS with your own, you need to create a new folder in the directory specified in the **Local data directory** field. The Local data directory is specified in the **Server** tab > **Server configuration** > **Data** > **Data storage directories**. See **Data** on page 183. The name of the folder must be:

```
/whitelabel/ios/
```

For instance, if the path specified in the **Local data directory** field is `/usr/local/jboss-4.3.0.GA/server/base/filestore/`, then you must open a terminal and create the following folder:

```
/usr/local/jboss-4.3.0.GA/server/base/filestore/whitelabel/ios/
```

*Note that you must not change the value of the **Local data directory** field - the value in this field is for your information only so you know where to create the graphics folders.*

Place the graphics in this folder. The graphics must be named according to the pattern in the tables below to be recognized correctly by the different supported types of Apple iOS devices.

To fit the background below the ios status bar and the toolbar, the size of the Swipe, Desktop, and AppBox backgrounds must be adjusted in the height.

- ❖ In Portrait the height is the screen size minus 64 pixel from the top (minus 128 on Retina displays, and minus 192 on iPhone 6 Plus).
- ❖ In Landscape orientation it is minus 52 pixel (minus 104 on Retina displays), with the following exceptions: minus 64 on iPad, minus 128 on iPad w/Retina, and minus 192 on iPhone 6 Plus.

These adjustments have been included in the list of required image sizes in the table below:

Orientation	iOS device	Filename	Size (pixels)
Portrait	iPhone	background_{module}.png	320 x 416
	iPhone w/Retina	background_{module}@2x.png	640 x 832
	iPhone 5	background_{module}-568@2x.png	640 x 1008
	iPhone 6	background_{module}-667@2x.png	750 x 1206
	iPhone 6 Plus	background_{module}-736@3x.png	1242 x 2016
	iPad (incl. mini)	background_{module}~ipad.png	768 x 960
	iPad w/Retina	background_{module}@2x~ipad.png	1536 x 1920
Landscape	iPhone	background_{module}_landscape.png	480 x 268
	iPhone w/Retina	background_{module}_landscape@2x.png	960 x 536
	iPhone 5	background_{module}_landscape-568@2x.png	1136 x 536
	iPhone 6	background_{module}_landscape-667@2x.png	1334 x 646
	iPhone 6 Plus	background_{module}_landscape-736@3x.png	2208 x 1050
	iPad (incl. mini)	background_{module}_landscape~ipad.png	1024 x 704
	iPad w/Retina	background_{module}_landscape@2x~ipad.png	2048 x 1408

Replace the {module} part of the filename with the following:

- ❖ For the **Unlock pattern (Swipe)** screen: `swipe`. Note that there is no Landscape orientation for the **Unlock pattern** screen.
- ❖ For the **Desktop**: `desktop`
- ❖ For the **AppBox** background screen: `appbox`

The Login screen background fills the whole screen, with no status bar or toolbar, and therefore use these sizes:

Orientation	iOS device	Filename	Size (pixels)
Portrait	iPhone	background_login.png	320 x 480
	iPhone w/Retina	background_login@2x.png	640 x 960
	iPhone 5	background_login-568@2x.png	640 x 1136
	iPhone 6	background_login-667@2x.png	750 x 1334
	iPhone 6 Plus	background_login-736@3x.png	1242 x 2208
	iPad (incl. mini)	background_login~ipad.png	768 x 1024
	iPad w/Retina	background_login@2x~ipad.png	1536 x 2048
Landscape	iPhone	background_login_landscape.png	480 x 320
	iPhone w/Retina	background_login_landscape@2x.png	960 x 640
	iPhone 5	background_login_landscape-568@2x.png	1136 x 640
	iPhone 6	background_login_landscape-667@2x.png	1334 x 750
	iPhone 6 Plus	background_login_landscape-736@3x.png	2208 x 1242
	iPad (incl. mini)	background_login_landscape~ipad.png	1024 x 768
	iPad w/Retina	background_login_landscape@2x~ipad.png	2048 x 1536

When the graphics have been placed in the `/whitelabel/ios` folder, shut down the DME client completely, and start it again. The custom graphics will then be used by DME. The client will check every 24 hours if the custom graphics have changed on the server, and update them if they have.

Appendix K: Web Services

This appendix describes the API for DME Web Services. This is the API you use for creating DME administrator and user self-service features, for instance for embedding in a corporate intranet.

The DME Web Services API is published through Web Services Description Language (WDSL) files. There are two such WDSL files:

1. `DmeAdminWS.wdsl` - contains operations (methods) which can only be called by DME users with the role **DME_Admin**.
2. `MyDmeWS.wdsl` - contains operations (methods) which can be called by DME users of any role.

The location (URL) of these files are given in the description of each file.

Note that you must send the current user's username and password along with each request to the DME Web Services.

API versions

Soliton Systems may publish new versions of the API, typically bundled with upgrades of DME.

In a new version, parameters, types, and syntax may change, and new operations may be added. It is important that you update your functions to match the latest API.

The `MyDmeWS` operation `APIVersion` returns the version of the currently installed API. See **`getApiVersion`** on page 473.

Syntax

The syntax of the API operations is given in UML notation:

operationName(*parameter* : type) : returnType

Special return value types are described in the **Types** on page 476 section.

Exception types are described in the **Exceptions** on page 481 section.

DmeAdminWS operations

The methods of the DmeAdminWS WDSL file can be used for creating Web Service functions which the DME Administrator can use from any context.

The file is published from this URL:

`https://<dme_server>:5011/webservices/admin?wsdl`

To access the file, the user needs to have the DME role **DME_Admin**.

approveDevice

approveDevice(*deviceId* : string) : void

The **approveDevice** operation attempts to approve the device with the supplied device ID in connection with DME's two-step initial authentication scheme. This scheme is described in the **Security** part of the **Authentication** section - see **Authentication** on page 283.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

None.

Throws

MyDMEException if the device was not found or could not be approved. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

deleteDevice

deleteDevice(*deviceId* : string) : void

The `deleteDevice` operation attempts to decouple the device with the supplied device ID from DME. It is removed from the list of managed devices in DME Server Administration Interface. For information about the implications of deleting a device, see **Remove device** on page 58.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

None.

Throws

MyDMEException with `SOAP_EXCEPTION` if the device was found but could not be deleted. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

getLogEntries

getLogEntries(*maxResults* : integer) : List of LogEntry

The **getLogEntries** operation returns a number of entries from the server log. The log entries are returned as a list of type `LogEntry`.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
maxResults Type: integer	Maximum number of results to return from the server log.	Yes

Return value

List of type `LogEntry` (see **LogEntry** on page 480).

Throws

None.

removeClientSignature

removeClientSignature(*deviceId* : string) : void

The **removeClientSignature** operation is used for removing the client signature from a device. This is sometimes required when a device has been upgraded or a new user tries to log in to DME on the device.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

None.

Throws

MyDMEException with **INVALID_VALUE** if the signature could not be removed from the device. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

wipePhone

wipePhone(*deviceId* : string) : string

The **wipePhone** operation issues a wipe command to the device with the supplied device ID. The way a device will be wiped will differ depending on the device OS - see Destroy device data - by platform. It returns a string containing the device ID if the operation succeeded; it returns null if an error occurred. An error could be that a device with the ID in question was not found, or that no connection to it could be established.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

String containing the DME *deviceId* for the device that has was wiped.

Throws

MyDMEException if the device could not be wiped. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

MyDmeWS operations

The methods of the MyDmeWS WDSL file can be used for creating Web Service functions which DME users can invoke from any context.

The file is published from this URL:

`https://<dme_server>:5011/webservices/mydme?wsdl`

To access the file, the user needs to have the DME role **DME_User**, **DME_Admin**, or **DME_Superuser**.

approveDevice

approveDevice(*deviceId* : string) : void

The **approveDevice** operation attempts to approve the device with the supplied device ID in connection with DME's two-step initial authentication scheme. This scheme is described in the **Security** part of the **Authentication** section - see **Authentication** on page 283.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

None.

Throws

MyDMEException if the device was not found or could not be approved, for instance because the device does not belong to the current user. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

deleteDevice

deleteDevice(*deviceId* : string) : void

The **deleteDevice** operation attempts to decouple the device with the supplied device ID from DME. It is removed from the list of managed devices in DME Server Administration Interface. For information about the implications of deleting a device, see **Remove device** on page 58.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

None.

Throws

MyDMEException with **SOAP_EXCEPTION** if the device was found but could not be deleted. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

getApiVersion

getApiVersion() : string

The **getApiVersion** operation returns a string consisting of the version number of the current WS API.

Parameters

None.

Return value

String with the version number of the DME WS API currently installed on the DME server.

Throws

None.

getDevices

getDevices() : List of Device

The **getDevices** operation returns a list of the devices owned by the current user. The devices are returned as a list of type **Device**.

Parameters

None.

Return value

List of type **Device**. See **Device** on page 476.

Throws

None.

getLogEntries

getLogEntries(*maxResults* : integer) : List of LogEntry

The **getLogEntries** operation returns a number of entries from the server log. Only entries that pertain to the current user are returned. The log entries are returned as a list of type **LogEntry**.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
maxResults Type: integer	Maximum number of results to return from the server log.	Yes

Return value

List of type `LogEntry`. See **LogEntry** on page 480.

Throws

None.

getRoleIds

getRoleIds() : List

The `getRoleIds` operation returns a list of the roles to which the current user is assigned. The roles are returned as a list of strings. The roles can be one or more of the following:

- ❖ DME_User
- ❖ DME_Admin
- ❖ DME_Superuser

Parameters

None.

Return value

List of the roles to which the current user is assigned.

Throws

MyDMEException with `NULL` if the role could not be found from the current user ID. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

getSettings

getSettings(*deviceId* : string) : List of DeviceSetting

The `getSettings` operation returns a list of the settings for the device identified by `deviceId`. The settings are returned as a list of type `DeviceSetting` (see **DeviceSetting** on page 477).

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

List of type `DeviceSetting`.

Throws

None.

removeClientSignature

removeClientSignature(*deviceId* : string) : void

The **removeClientSignature** operation is used for removing the client signature from a device. This is sometimes required when a device has been upgraded or a new user tries to log in to DME on the device.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

None.

Throws

MyDMEException with **INVALID_VALUE** if the signature could not be removed from the device, for instance because the device does not belong to the current user. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

resetSettings

resetSettings(*deviceId* : string) : void

The **resetSettings** operation is used for resetting the client settings on a device. This can be done if the user needs to realign the device settings with the defaults from the DME server.

Parameters

Name	Description	Required
deviceId Type: string	The ID of the device to which the operation applies. The ID of a device can be found on its information page (see Information on page 86) or be returned using getDevices on page 473.	Yes

Return value

None.

Throws

MyDMEException with **SOAP_EXCEPTION** if the settings could not be reset on the device, for instance because the device does not belong to the current user. See **MyDMEException** on page 481.

Types

The following section describes the *return value types* that may be returned by different WS operations.

Device

Device (
 deviceId : string,
 platform : string,
 phoneNumber : string,
 currentOwnerUserId : string,
 imei : string,
 operatorCode : int,
 operatorName : string,
 operatorCountryCode : int,
 phoneModel : string,

```

operatorCountry : string,
lastUsed : date,
created : date,
buildNumber : string,
locked : LockState
)

```

The **Device** type is used for returning lists in **getDevices** (see **getDevices** on page 473).

For an explanation of the values returned, please see the section on **Columns** on page 47 in the **Device** tab. Only the following values may require more explanation:

Values

Name	Description
buildNumber Type: string	This is the build number of the DME client on the device in question.
locked Type: LockState	Can be one of four values: UNLOCKED : Device can be used. LOCKED : Device is locked (blocked). UNKNOWN : Device status unknown. TWO_STEP_LOCKED : Device has made the initial sync with the server as part of a two-step sign-on process.

DeviceSetting

```

DeviceSetting (
  settingID : integer,
  settingsCategory : string,
  settingRange : string,
  override : integer = 0,
  rangeLock : integer,
  deviceLock : integer,
  superuserLock : integer,
  settingName : string,
  settingValue : string,
  settingInheritance : string,
  inheritedFrom : string,
  changedDate : date,
)

```

The `DeviceSetting` type is used for returning lists of settings in `getSettings` (see **`getSettings`** on page 474).

The following values are returned:

Values

Name	Description
settingId Type: integer	The internal identifier of the setting in DME.
settingsCategory Type: string	The category of the current setting. A category could be " E-mail " (found in the E-mail and PIM group of settings). See also Appendix A: Device settings on page 312.
settingRange Type: string	The valid range of settings. For instance, a valid range of the setting Days back in the E-mail category of settings could be 0-99 .
override Type: integer	Whether the current setting is overridden (1) or not (0). An overridden setting has a value that is different from default. See Override in Settings on page 89. Default value is 0 .
deviceLock Type: integer	Whether the device is locked to the current setting. See Lock in Settings on page 89.
superuserLock Type: integer	Whether the current setting has been locked for superusers also. See Lock in Settings on page 89.
rangeLock Type: integer	Whether the range (settingRange) of the current setting is locked. See Lock in Settings on page 89.
settingName Type: string	The internal name of the setting in DME. Example: profile.email_sync_enable
settingValue Type: string	The value of the setting. Example: 5 for profile.email_sync_days_back
settingInheritance Type: string	From where does the setting derive: Default (default settings), Device (setting changed for the individual device), or any other value, which then signifies Group inheritance and consists of the type of the group (for instance Country).
inheritedFrom Type: string	A specification of where the setting came from. If settingInheritance = Default , this will be DefaultSetting . If Device , this will be the deviceId of the device. If a group type, this will be the ID of the group.

`changedDate`

Type: date

The date on which the current setting was last changed.

For an explanation of each setting in DME, please see **Appendix A: Device settings** on page 312.

LogEntry

```
LogEntry (
  id : integer,
  message : string,
  created : date,
  userId : string,
  category : string
)
```

The `LogEntry` type is used for returning lists in `getLogEntries` (see **getLogEntries** on page 469, on page 473).

Values

Name	Description
<code>id</code>	The ID of the log entry. Type: integer
<code>message</code>	The text part of the log entry. Type: string
<code>date</code>	The date on which the log entry was created. Type: date
<code>userId</code>	The ID of the user to whom the log entry pertains. When <code>getLogEntries</code> is called with <code>MyDmeWS</code> , only log entries of the current user are returned. Type: string
<code>category</code>	The log level of the log entry. One of the following values: <code>debug</code> , <code>error</code> , <code>warning</code> , <code>fatal</code> , <code>info</code> . Type: string

Exceptions

This section describes the *exception types* that may occur in the DME Web Services API.

MyDMEException

```
MyDMEException (  
    errorCode : enum,  
    message : string  
)
```

The `errorCode` codes may be one of the following:

- ❖ `NULL` : Thrown in case of a null exception.
- ❖ `INVALID_VALUE` : Thrown in case of invalid parameter.
- ❖ `SOAP_EXCEPTION` : Thrown in case of general error in web service framework.
- ❖ `ERROR_API_VERSION` : Thrown in case of WS API version mismatch.

List of procedures

➤ Switching a device to another user	80
➤ Uploading a picture of the device	87
➤ Locating a device	88
➤ Pushing Android client to known devices	107
➤ Pushing Android client to new devices	109
➤ Enrolling Apple iOS devices	117
➤ Uploading Apple iOS profiles to server	121
➤ Sending Apple iOS profile	123
➤ Uploading a new BIRT report to the server	167
➤ Editing BIRT report details and updating reports	167
➤ Setting notification options	207
➤ Setting and editing a notification scheme	209
➤ Adding an RSS feed	236
➤ To create a smart group:	240
➤ Managing APNS certificate	256
➤ Performing an automatic test	286
➤ MDM: Add new user in MobiControl and DME	352
➤ MDM: Add existing user in MobiControl to DME	353
➤ MDM: When a user leaves the company	353
➤ MDM: When a user gets new device	353
➤ MDM: When a user gets device from other user	353
➤ Defining a new synchronization rule - overall process	362
➤ Uploading new software	414
➤ Editing software properties	416
➤ Installing software on one or more new devices	421
➤ Installing DME on one or more existing devices	425
➤ Installing an access point on new devices	443
➤ Installing an access point on existing devices	443
➤ Setting up software for self-provisioning	453
➤ Setting up OTA configurations for self-provisioning	453
➤ Testing that you have the right phone number for the SMS server	454
➤ Requesting a software download	454
➤ Requesting a phone configuration	455

➤ Sending a test message to the server modem	455
➤ Requesting DME software	455
➤ Requesting OTA configuration	455
➤ Requesting both DME software and OTA configuration	455

Index

A

- Access points • 438
 - DME_AP • 438
- Adaptive push • 386
- Analyzer reports • 163
- Apple Push Notification • 221
- Automatic test • 284
- Auto-upgrade clients • 416

B

- BIRT reporting • 163
 - Upgrading • 163

C

- Central Services
 - Central Services log • 134
- Certificates • 406
- Change password • 281
- command stack • 216
- Configuring the server • 171
- Contacts
 - Contacts sync • 320
 - Suggested contacts • 320
- Custom reports • 165, 166

D

- Data statistics • 154
- Devices
 - Device notification schedule • 233
 - Device statistics • 169
 - Device users • 96
 - Provisioning • 401
- DME
 - About the product • 14
- DME users
 - Anonymous • 393
 - Basic MDM • 393
 - DME_Admin • 78
 - DME_Superuser • 78
 - DME_User • 78
 - SYSADM • 78

DME_AP • 438

Domino setup • 285

E

- Exchange event subscription • 208
- Exchange setup • 296
- Excitor - the company • 12

F

- Files • 360
- Follow referrals • See LDAP

G

- GPRS access points • 439
- GPRS statistics • 163
- Groups
 - Files • 360

I

- Installing software
 - By SMS • 451
 - Using OMA DM • See OMA DM
- Interface
 - Keyboard shortcuts • 43
 - Logging in • 31
 - Tabs • 32
 - Toolbars • 35
- iPhone
 - Certificates • 406
 - iPhone notifications • 220

L

- LDAP • 173
 - Secure LDAP • 173
- Lock • 57
- Log
 - Log entries • 133
- Logging in • 31

M

Messaging statistics • 163

MyDME • 378

N

Network push • 386

Notes encryption • 285

Notification framework • 201

- Apple Push Notification • 221

- Notification framework, • 203

- Pending notifications • 219

- Subscription • 208

O

OMA DM • 403

Operator usage • 161

P

Pre-caching • 177

Provisioning • 401

- Access points • 438

- Auto-upgrade clients • 416

- Removing software from server • 415

- Upgrade clients • 416

Push

- Notification framework • 201

- Server path • 63

R

Reporting with BIRT

- Custom reports • 165, 166

- Running reports • 165, 167

- Upgrading • 163

Roles • 78

S

Secure LDAP • 173

Self-provisioning

- By SMS • 451

- Setup • 450

Setting up devices

- In batch • 71

Shortcuts • 43

SmartLink • 344

SSL • See Certificates

Statistics

- Data statistics • 154

- GPRS statistics • 163

- Messaging statistics • 163

- Voice statistics • 160

Subscription • 208

Suggested contacts • 320

Superusers • 78

Synchronize

- Files • 360

SYSADM • 78

T

Tabs • 32

- Analyzer • 154

- Server • 171

Toolbars • 35

Traffic logging • 372

U

Users

- Device users • 96

- DME_Admin • 78

- DME_Superuser • 78

- DME_User • 78

- Manually created • 78

- Roles • 78

- SYSADM • 78

V

Voice statistics • 160

W

Web Services • 464

WLAN access points • 441